

FOR INTERMEDIATE STUDENTS

**READ**

**&**

**SPEAK**

**ENGLISH**

Т.Ю. Дроздова, В.Г. Маилова, В.С. Николаева

---

# **Read & Speak English**

КОМПЛЕКСНОЕ  
УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

Рекомендовано кафедрой  
методики преподавания иностранных языков  
РГПУ им. А. И. Герцена  
для студентов неязыковых вузов  
и учащихся средних школ

**АНТОЛОГИЯ**  
ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО  
Санкт-Петербург

**УДК 811.111**  
**ББК 81.2Англ**  
**Д75**

Рецензент: Филимонова О.Е., кандидат филологических наук,  
доцент, заведующая кафедрой английского языка  
РГПУ им. А.И. Герцена

**Дроздова Т. Ю., Маилова В. Г., Николаева В. С.**  
**Д75** Read & Speak English : учебное пособие. – СПб. : Антология, 2014. –  
320 с.

ISBN 978-5-94962-024-3

12 коротких адаптированных рассказов английских и американских авто-  
ров; упражнения для расширения словарного запаса; развитие речевых на-  
выков и навыков перевода; повторение грамматики; материал для дополни-  
тельного чтения; русско-английский словарь.

**УДК 811.111**  
**ББК 81.2Англ**

Художественный редактор *А. А. Неклюдова*  
Корректор *Е. В. Романова*  
Технический редактор *А. Б. Ткаченко*  
Компьютерная верстка *Д. В. Лемеш*

Подписано в печать 25.02.2014. Формат 70х90/16.  
Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 20. Заказ \_\_\_\_\_.

Издательство «Антология»  
199053, Санкт-Петербург, В.О., Средний пр., д. 4  
тел.: (812) 328-14-41  
[www.anthologybooks.ru](http://www.anthologybooks.ru)

Отпечатано в соответствии с предоставленными материалами  
в ООО «ИПК Парето-Принт», 170546, Тверская область  
Промышленная зона Боровлева-1, комплекс 3А  
[www.pareto-print.ru](http://www.pareto-print.ru)

ISBN 978-5-94962-024-3

© Дроздова Т.Ю., Маилова В.Г.,  
Николаева В.С., 2006–2014  
© ООО «Антология», 2014

## ОТ АВТОРОВ

Владение иностранным языком предполагает умение читать, строить собственное высказывание, воспринимать речь собеседника. Предлагаемый учебник "Read and Speak English" направлен на развитие этих навыков и умений и предназначен для учащихся средних школ, а также для студентов вузов негуманитарного профиля.

Основу учебника составляют 12 коротких адаптированных рассказов английских и американских писателей, дополненных словарями и разнообразными упражнениями для расширения словарного запаса. Рассказы подобраны таким образом, чтобы шаг за шагом создать прочные грамматические навыки владения языком. В работе над грамматикой используется оригинальная сопоставительная методика.

Большое внимание в учебнике уделяется развитию навыков и умений перевода с русского языка на английский, что в традиционных учебниках представлено в малом либо незначительном объеме.

Формирование речевых навыков и умений строится на «атематическом» принципе и предполагает их развитие и совершенствование через использование разнообразного в лексическом и структурном отношении языкового материала рассказов. В пособии представлены упражнения для развития монологической и диалогической речи, упражнения творческого характера, устные сочинения и темы для обсуждения.

Особое внимание уделяется специфическим трудностям английского языка: изучению идиоматики, употреблению предлогов, артиклей и служебной лексики.

Структурно построение учебника может быть представлено следующей схемой: Рассказ => Словарь => Лексические упражнения => Упражнения грамматического цикла => Речевые упражнения => Практика перевода. Учебник снабжен обширными приложениями, включающими контрольные задания, материалы справочного характера, тексты для дополнительного чтения и перевода, русско-английский словарь.

## CONTENTS

|   |    |
|---|----|
| <b>WHILE THE AUTO WAITS</b> ( <i>after O. Henry</i> ) ..... | 7  |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 8  |
| II. Comprehension .....                                     | 10 |
| III. Word Study .....                                       | 10 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....                                   | 16 |
| V. Grammar Review .....                                     | 18 |
| The Verbs <b>to be</b> and <b>to have</b> .....             | 18 |
| The Present Indefinite and Present Continuous .....         | 22 |
| The Use of the Indefinite Article ( <b>a/an</b> ) .....     | 25 |
| <b>SINGING LESSON</b> ( <i>by K. Mansfield</i> ) .....      | 29 |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 30 |
| II. Comprehension .....                                     | 31 |
| III. Word Study .....                                       | 32 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....                                   | 37 |
| V. Grammar Review .....                                     | 40 |
| The Past Continuous and Past Indefinite .....               | 40 |
| The Use of Articles in a Context .....                      | 43 |
| <b>LOVE FOR ART</b> ( <i>by O. Henry</i> ) .....            | 46 |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 47 |
| II. Comprehension .....                                     | 49 |
| III. Word Study .....                                       | 49 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....                                   | 54 |
| V. Grammar Review .....                                     | 57 |
| Questions and Negatives .....                               | 57 |
| Some Noun Determiners and the Use of Articles .....         | 68 |
| <b>GETTING KNOWN</b> ( <i>by D. Barber</i> ) .....          | 72 |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 74 |
| II. Comprehension .....                                     | 75 |
| III. Word Study .....                                       | 76 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....                                   | 83 |
| V. Grammar Review .....                                     | 86 |
| The Past Indefinite and Present Perfect .....               | 86 |
| The Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous .....    | 87 |
| The Use of Articles with Uncountable Nouns .....            | 92 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>BELLA FLEACE GAVE A PARTY</b> (by <i>E. Waugh</i> ) .....          | 94  |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 95  |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 97  |
| III. Word Study .....   | 98  |
| IV. Speech Practice .....   | 103 |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 105 |
| The Past Perfect Tense .....  | 105 |
| Models with Past Tenses .....   | 108 |
| Special Difficulties in the Use of Articles .....                     | 110 |
| <b>HOW WE KEPT MOTHER'S DAY</b> (by <i>S. Leacock</i> ) .....         | 116 |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 117 |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 119 |
| III. Word Study .....   | 120 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....   | 126 |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 129 |
| The Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Speech .....                         | 129 |
| The Use of Articles with Names of Persons .....                       | 135 |
| <b>THE MAN WHO TOOK NOTICE OF NOTICES</b> .....                       | 138 |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 139 |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 141 |
| III. Word Study .....   | 142 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....   | 146 |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 148 |
| The Passive Voice .....   | 148 |
| The Use of the Indefinite Article with Nouns in Set Expressions ..... | 156 |
| <b>A SAD STORY</b> (by <i>G. Sheffield</i> ) .....                    | 158 |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 159 |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 161 |
| III. Word Study .....   | 161 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....   | 165 |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 168 |
| Conditional Sentences .....   | 168 |
| The Use of the Definite Article With Nouns in Set Expressions .....   | 174 |
| <b>MABEL</b> (by <i>S. Maugham</i> ) .....                            | 176 |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 177 |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 179 |
| III. Word Study .....   | 180 |
| IV. Speech Practice .....   | 186 |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 188 |
| Modal Verbs and Their Equivalents .....                               | 188 |
| The Use of Articles with Geographical Names .....                     | 202 |

|   |         |
|---|---------|
| <b>NOISY NEIGHBOURS</b> .....   | 205     |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 206     |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 209     |
| III. Word Study.....  | 209     |
| IV. Speech Practice.....  | 214     |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 217     |
| Uses of Modals to Express Possibility, Certainty, Doubt .....         | 217     |
| Nouns in Set Expressions Used without an Article .....                | 222     |
| <b>THE FLYING DUTCHMAN</b> ( <i>A Dutch Legend</i> ) .....            | 225     |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 227     |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 229     |
| III. Word Study.....  | 229     |
| IV. Speech Practice.....  | 236     |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 238     |
| Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs .....                 | 238     |
| The Use of Articles with Some Adjectives and Numerals + Noun .....    | 245     |
| <b>WILLIAM TELL</b> ( <i>A Swiss Legend</i> ) .....                   | 247     |
| I. Vocabulary .....   | 248     |
| II. Comprehension .....   | 251     |
| III. Word Study.....  | 252     |
| IV. Speech Practice.....  | 258     |
| V. Grammar Review .....   | 260     |
| Pronouns ( <b>many/much, few/little</b> ) .....                       | 260     |
| The Use of the Definite Article with Some Nouns .....                 | 263     |
| <br>REVIEW OF TENSES .....  | <br>265 |
| REVIEW OF ARTICLES .....  | 273     |
| SUPPLEMENTARY READING .....   | 282     |
| APPENDIX 1. English Tenses (Active) .....                             | 298     |
| APPENDIX 2. Regular Verbs: Spelling Rules.....                        | 299     |
| APPENDIX 3. Irregular Verbs .....                                     | 300     |
| APPENDIX 4. Talking About the Future .....                            | 303     |
| APPENDIX 5. Expressions with the Verb <b>to be</b> .....              | 304     |
| APPENDIX 6. Adjectives for Appearance and Character Description ..... | 305     |
| APPENDIX 7. Connectives and Transitional Phrases.....                 | 307     |
| APPENDIX 8. Some Useful Verbs .....                                   | 308     |
| APPENDIX 9. Numbers .....   | 310     |
| Time .....  | 311     |
| РУССКО-АНГЛИЙСКИЙ СЛОВАРЬ .....                                       | 313     |
| LITERATURE .....  | 320     |

# WHILE THE AUTO WAITS

(adapted)

*after O. Henry*

The girl in grey comes to that quiet corner of the small park every day. Her simple dress fits her perfectly. The girl is slim and very beautiful.

The young man also comes to that park every day. He is eager<sup>1</sup> to get acquainted with the girl but he doesn't know how to introduce himself.

The girl is sitting on a bench reading a book. Suddenly she drops the book. The man picks it up and returns the book to the girl.



The girl is looking at him, at his ordinary coat and his common face. He is embarrassed<sup>2</sup>.

"Do you know that you are the most attractive girl I've ever seen?" he says.

But the girl interrupts him. "Whoever you are," she says in an icy tone, "you must remember that I am a lady."

"I beg your pardon," pleads the young man, "it is my fault."

"Stop excusing<sup>3</sup>, if you please. Let's better speak about these people who are passing by. Where are they going? Why are they hurrying so? Are they happy?"

"It is interesting to watch them," he replies. "It is the wonderful drama of life. Some are going to supper and some to – er – other places. I want to know their histories."

"I do not," says the girl; "I am not so inquisitive. I come here because it's the only place<sup>4</sup> where I can be among simple people. I am very rich, I am tired of money. I am sick of pleasure, of parties, of travel, of society."

The young man looks at her with interest and astonishment. "As to me, I always had an idea that money must be<sup>5</sup> a very good thing," he says.

"Not when you are very rich," returns the girl in grey. She is smiling. "You don't seem to be a rich man. It is such a comfort to speak with a man unspoiled by money<sup>6</sup>. By the way<sup>7</sup>, what is your profession?" she asks.

The young man hesitates for a moment. "I am a cashier in ..." – he looks at the brilliant electric sign "RESTAURANT" across the street – "I am a cashier in that restaurant you see there."

The girl looks at her watch and rises hurriedly.

"Why aren't you working then?" she asks.

"I am on the night turn today<sup>8</sup>," says the young man; "it is yet an hour before my work begins. May I hope to see you again?"



"I do not know. Perhaps. But now I must go quickly. There is a dinner, and a box<sup>9</sup> at the play – and, oh! I am so tired of all these things. Perhaps you noticed the white automobile, which is waiting for me at the entrance. I always come in that."

"May I accompany you to the auto? It is dark now," says the young man.

"If you respect my wishes," says the girl firmly, "you will remain here while I am going to my auto. I don't want my driver Pierre to see you." And she goes away.

The young man looks at her elegant figure and then goes after her. The girl is passing the white auto and quickly enters the restaurant with the brilliant electric sign. She takes the cashier's place. The young man smiles and walks slowly back. He gets in the white automobile and says two words to the driver:

"Club, Henry."

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> he is eager – ему не терпится

<sup>2</sup> he is embarrassed – он смущён

<sup>3</sup> stop excusing – прекратите извиняться

<sup>4</sup> ...the only place – единственное место

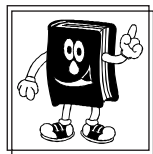
<sup>5</sup> ...must be – (здесь) должно быть

<sup>6</sup> ...unspoiled by money – неиспорченный деньгами

<sup>7</sup> by the way – между прочим

<sup>8</sup> I am on the night turn today – у меня сегодня ночная смена

<sup>9</sup> a box – (здесь) ложа в театре



## I. VOCABULARY

**fit** (v) – be the right size – быть впору, годиться (по размеру)

☐ The sweater **fits** (me) well.

**fit** (adj) – in good health – здоровый, бодрый

☐ He does morning exercises every day; that's why he is so **fit**.

**common** (adj) – ordinary; not special – обыкновенный, заурядный

☐ He is a **common** man.

**interrupt** (v) – break, stop someone's speech by saying smth – прерывать; вмешиваться в разговор

☐ Stop **interrupting** me, I'm trying to explain the situation.

**plead** (v) (with smb) – beg; ask very much – умолять, очень просить

☐ The little girl **pleads** (with her mother) to buy a doll.

**hurry** (v) (hurried, hurrying) – do very quickly, fast – спешить, торопиться

☐ Don't **hurry** when you answer at the examination.

**hurry up** – do more quickly – поспешить, поторопиться

☐ **Hurry up!** We are going to be late.

**in a hurry** – второпях

☐ You always make mistakes when you answer **in a hurry**.

**hurriedly** (adv) – very fast, quickly – поспешно

☐ Don't answer **hurriedly**. Think a little.

**inquisitive** [in'kwizitiv] (adj) – (a person) trying to know too many details about things and people – (слишком) любопытный

☐ You are very **inquisitive**. I don't like it.

**hesitate** (v) – pause before deciding, acting or speaking – колебаться, не решаться

☐ The old woman **hesitates** before crossing the street.

**accompany** (v) (accompanied, accompanying) – go with – сопровождать

☐ A bodyguard **accompanies** his client everywhere.

**respect** (n) (**for** smb/smith) – attention, care – уважение

☐ I have the greatest **respect for** my parents.

**respect** (v) – feel respect, show respect – уважать

☐ I feel she doesn't **respect** him.

## Study the following verbs and idiomatic expressions

1. **pick** smth (up) –

a) поднять что-то

☐ Please, **pick up the box**. It's not very heavy.

b) собирать, срывать (цветы, фрукты)

☐ The little girl **is picking** flowers.

c) заехать за кем-нибудь; захватить кого-нибудь

☐ I have to **pick up** Billy at school.

2. **in an icy tone** – ледяным тоном

☐ My mother speaks **in an icy tone** when she is angry.

3. **look at** – смотреть на кого-то/что-то

☐ He **is looking at** his son in great surprise.

☐ Jim **looks at** his work in a different way (иначе) now.

**look at someone cross-eyed** – смотреть косо на кого-то

☐ Don't **look at him cross-eyed**; he is right.

**look like** – быть похожим; походить

☐ I **look like** my father.

**look one's age** – выглядеть на свой возраст

☐ He doesn't **look his age**.

4. **take one's place** – занять место, сесть

☐ You always **take my place**.

**take place** – случаться, происходить

☐ The meeting will **take place** in Pushkin square.

**take offense (at)** smb/smith – обижаться (на кого-то/что-то)

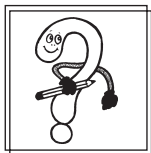
☐ Bill never **takes offense at** Mary for her remarks.

**take pains** (to do smth) – очень стараться, прилагать усилия; не пожалеть труда (сделать что-либо)

☐ Tom **is taking pains** to decorate the room nicely.

5. **get in/off** – входить, садиться/сойти (о транспорте)

☐ **Get in** the bus at the bank and **get off** at the station.



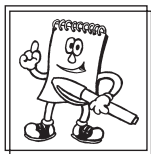
## II. COMPREHENSION

**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. How often does the girl come to the park? 2. How does she look like? 3. What is the girl doing in the park? 4. What does the man do when he sees the girl? 5. How does the man get acquainted with the girl? 6. How does the girl react to his compliment? 7. What does the girl tell about her life? 8. What does she think about the man? 9. What does the man say about his profession? 10. Where does the girl hurry? 11. What does the man see when he goes after her? 12. What is the girl in reality (на самом деле)? 13. What is the man in reality?

**Ex. 2.** Translate into Russian the following sentences from the text.

1. Her simple dress fits her perfectly. 2. He doesn't know how to introduce himself. 3. She drops the book. 4. The man picks it (the book) up. 5. Let's better speak about these people. 6. I'm sick of parties, of travel, of society. 7. Money must be a very good thing. 8. May I accompany you to the auto? 9. If you respect my wishes you will remain here. 10. She takes the cashier's place. 11. The young man walks slowly back. 12. He gets in the white automobile.



## III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 3.** Find Russian equivalents to the following:

the quiet corner; fits her; perfectly; is eager; returns the book; a common face; are passing by; are going to supper; astonishment; pleasure; across the street; rises hurriedly; notice the automobile; at the entrance; firmly; goes after her.

**Ex. 4.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. I want to buy these jeans, they (впору) me perfectly. 2. He is so (здоровый) because he runs five miles every morning. 3. He isn't a (обычный) visitor. 4. I'm trying to talk to your mother, but you (перебиваешь) me. 5. We aren't late, don't (спешить). 6. We'll have to (поторопиться). 7. I'm not going to tell you what I did yesterday. You are too (любопытный). 8. It's such a pleasure (разговаривать) with him. He knows everything about computers. 9. She always (колеблется) what to present. 10. She goes away (поспешно). 11. She (занимает своё место) at the table. 12. I promise (уважать) your feelings.

**Ex. 5.** Find in the text and translate the following expressions. Use them in the sentences below.

*Быть впору; познакомиться; представиться; вернуть книгу; прерывать; умолять; говорить о ком-то; спешить; устать от чего-то; колебаться; сопровождать; уважать; идти за кем-то; пройти мимо.*

1. Это пальто не подходит мне по размеру. 2. Ей не терпится познакомиться с этим певцом. 3. Я хочу представиться. Меня зовут Билл. 4. Ты возвращаешь книгу в библиотеку? 5. Ты всё время вмешиваешься в разговор. 6. Я умоляю сказать мне правду (tell the truth). 7. Весь день мы говорим о компьютерах. 8. Куда ты спешишь? 9. Я устала от дождя. 10. Она колеблется, какое платье (which dress) купить. 11. Джон хочет сопровождать нас в театр. 12. Она уважает моих родителей. 13. Опять он идёт за мной. 14. Когда я прохожу мимо этой витрины (shop-window), я всегда останавливаюсь.

**Ex. 6.** Match the words in column A with those in column B to form a phrase.

| A  | B   |
|--|---|
| 1. get acquainted<br>2. drop<br>3. common<br>4. be tired<br>5. stop<br>6. look<br>7. go<br>8. say<br>9. wait | a. excusing<br>b. in an icy tone<br>c. for the girl<br>d. at the watch<br>e. the book<br>f. the cashier's place<br>g. face<br>h. the automobile<br>i. with the girl |

- 10. take
- 11. get in
- 12. enter

- j. the restaurant
- k. of money
- l. after the girl

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |

**Ex. 7.** Translate the following phrasal verbs and idiomatic expressions.  
Use them in the translation below.



*Pick up; hurry up; in an icy tone; look at; look at someone cross-eyed; look like; look one's age; take place; take offense at smb; take pains; get in; get off.*

1. Доктору необходимо (needs) взглянуть на твою руку. 2. Он смотрит на эти вещи как учёный (scientist). 3. Приходи за мной в 12 часов. 4. Когда она обижается на друзей, она разговаривает ледяным тоном. 5. Пожалуйста, не носи (wear) этот ужасный костюм; все смотрят на тебя. 6. Посмотри, он занимает наше место. 7. Вы садитесь в автобус? 8. Ей действительно (really) 20 лет? 9. Почему ты так косо смотришь на меня? Я только (just) хочу тебе помочь. 10. Эта собака похожа на мою собаку. 11. Поспеш! Она ждёт твоего звонка (call). 12. Вы выходите на следующей остановке (next stop)?

**Ex. 8.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

### among – between



“among” – in the group of; being **one of many** – среди, между

☐ The cottage is **among** the pine-trees.

“between” – **two** things are separated – между

☐ I am standing **between** Mary and Helen.

- 1. I see her ... the people in the hall.
- 2. There's a regular air service ..... St. Petersburg and London.
- 3. He is the youngest ..... us.
- 4. It's hard to choose (выбирать) ..... these two pictures. I like them both.
- 5. I avoid (избегаю) eating ..... breakfast and lunch.
- 6. There are quite a few talented artists ..... the people I know.
- 7. The cafe is ..... the bank and the supermarket.
- 8. He is trying to find his dictionary ..... the books on the shelf.

9. We are going to meet ..... two and three o'clock.
10. I don't see Mary ..... the students. Where is she?

### quiet – quite



*"quiet"* – calm; not noisy – спокойный; тихий; бесшумный.

- ☐ We live in a **quiet** street.

*"quite"* – completely; rather; perfectly – вполне; совершенно; полностью.

- ☐ I am **quite** happy at my new school.

1. Professor Brown's lecture is ..... brilliant.
2. The sea is ..... this morning.
3. Sit ..... for a moment.
4. This sauce (соус) is ..... perfect.
5. The children are ..... today.
6. Your answer is ..... wrong.
7. Are you ..... sure?
8. I'm not ..... ready to answer.
9. Your house is very .....
10. It is ..... good, but not excellent.

### fit – suit – match



*"fit"* – be the right size – подходить по размеру.

- ☐ This jacket really **fits** you at the shoulders.

*"suit"* – look good on smb – быть к лицу, подходить.

- ☐ Blue colours **suit** me.

*"match"* – be suitable with each other; have the same (тот же) colours – подходить, соответствовать друг другу по цвету (форме, стилю); гармонировать.

- ☐ This tie **matches** your shirt.

1. I think, this suit ..... you perfectly.
2. Please, put on your green blouse. It ..... the skirt.
3. Do the shoes ..... you?
4. Your dress is very nice. This fashion (фасон) ..... you.
5. These colours don't .....
6. Put off this awful hat. It doesn't ..... you.
7. The hat and shoes perfectly ..... (each other).
8. I have to change my trousers. They are of a smaller size and don't ..... me.
9. The T-shirt doesn't ..... your trousers.
10. I'm not going to buy that white blouse. It is too small. It doesn't ..... me.
11. She always wears pink. It ..... her greatly.
12. This blouse doesn't ..... your skirt.

**Ex. 9.** Choose the right expression and insert it in the proper form:



*get acquainted with smb* – познакомиться с кем-нибудь.

☐ He is eager **to get acquainted with the girl.**

*introduce oneself to smb; introduce smb to smb* – представиться кому-то; представить кого-то кому-то.

☐ He doesn't know how **to introduce himself.**

1. Я хочу представить тебя моим родителям.
2. Он легко знакомится с людьми.
3. Представьтесь, пожалуйста. Мы не знаем ваших имён.
4. Она хочет познакомиться с тем молодым человеком.
5. Ему нравится та девушка. Он просит представить его ей.
6. Они хотят познакомиться с нами.
7. Ты можешь представить меня своей сестре?

**Ex. 10.** Translate the sentences using the following speech patterns.



Давай(те) лучше поговорим об этих людях.

*Let's better speak about these people.*

1. Давайте лучше познакомимся.
2. Давайте лучше поспешим. Подъезжает наш автобус.
3. Давайте лучше поедem в Париж вместо (instead of) Берлина.
4. Давай лучше подождём его у входа в театр.
5. Давайте лучше останемся здесь. Я не хочу идти за ним.
6. Давай лучше сядем на свои места.



Приятно (Хорошо) поговорить с человеком, не испорченным деньгами. – *It's a comfort (a pleasure) to speak with a man unspoiled by money.*

1. Приятно познакомиться с красивой девушкой.
2. Приятно знать много интересных людей.
3. Приятно быть богатым человеком и помогать друзьям.
4. Приятно выглядеть очень хорошо.
5. Приятно иметь много друзей.
6. Приятно смотреть на стройную девушку.
7. Приятно быть похожим на своих родителей.

**Ex. 11.** Translate the following sentences using:

**A** *(not) seem to be* – (не) казаться кем-л./чем-л.

☐ You **(don't) seem to be** a rich man. – Вы (не) кажетесь богатым человеком.

1. Девушка кажется очень скромной (modest).
2. «Это, кажется, моя ошибка», – сказал он.
3. Вы не кажетесь человеком, испорченным деньгами.
4. Она кажется уставшей от путешествий.
5. Он кажется очень интересным человеком.
6. Эта задача кажется трудной.

**B** *(not) want smb to do smth* – (не) хотеть, чтобы кто-то сделал что-то

☐ I **don't want my driver Pierre (him) to see** you. – Я не хочу, чтобы мой шофёр Пьер (он) видел Вас.

1. Он хочет, чтобы девушка рассказала о своей жизни.
2. Я хочу, чтобы ты поспешила. Мы опаздываем.
3. Девушка не хочет, чтобы он сопровождал её к автомобилю.
4. Она хочет, чтобы юноша пригласил ее в театр.
5. Девушка хочет, чтобы юноша уважал её чувства.
6. Я не хочу, чтобы ты ушла.
7. Я хочу, чтобы Вы заняли своё место.

**Ex. 12.** Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. The girl ..... grey comes ..... the park. 2. He is eager to get acquainted ..... the girl. 3. She is sitting ..... a bench. 4. She interrupts him ..... an icy tone. 5. It's the wonderful drama ..... life. 6. I'm tired ..... money, ..... pleasure, ..... travel, ..... society. 7. The young man hesitates ..... a moment. 8. There is a dinner and a box ..... the play. 9. The white automobile is waiting ..... me ..... the entrance. 10. I want to accompany you ..... the auto. 11. The girl is going ..... and some time later the man goes ..... her. 12. He gets ..... the auto and says ..... his driver to go ..... the club.





## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 13.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. Poverty is no sin. *Бедность – не порок.*
2. To throw dust in one's eyes. *Пускать пыль в глаза.*
3. Poverty is not a shame, but the being ashamed of it is.  
*Не стыдно быть бедным, а стыдно стыдиться бедности.*

**Ex. 14.** Retell the story according to the plan using the words and expressions given below.

1. *The girl and the young man come to the park*  
The quiet corner; simple dress; fit; every day; get acquainted with; introduce oneself; sit on a bench; drop the book; pick the book up; return the book.
2. *The girl and the young man get acquainted*  
Look at; common face; be embarrassed; attractive girl; in an icy tone; plead; fault; speak about; hurry.
3. *The girl tells about her life*  
Inquisitive; the only place; simple people; be rich; be tired of smth; have an idea; smile; seem to be; such a comfort.
4. *The young man tells about his work*  
Profession; hesitate; a cashier; across the street; be on the night turn.
5. *The girl goes away*  
A watch; rise hurriedly; a dinner; a box; notice; wait for smb; at the entrance; accompany smb to; respect; remain; want smb to do smth.
6. *The young man learns (узнаёт) the truth*  
The elegant figure; go after smb; pass; enter quickly; take smb's place; walk back; get in; say to smb.

**Ex. 15.** Look through the text once again and find the words and expressions describing emotions and feelings. Use them in the sentences of your own.

**Ex. 16.** Give the gist (суть) of the story in three sentences.

**Ex. 17.** Tell the story as if you were a) the girl; b) the young man;  
c) the driver of the white automobile.

**Ex. 18.** Topics for discussion and essays.

1. What impression do you form of a) the girl; b) the young man?
2. Good name is better than riches.
3. Do you approve of the girl's behaviour?

**Ex. 19.** Give a free translation of the text.

**Банковский билет в 1 000 000 фунтов стерлингов  
(The J 1 000 000 Bank-Note)**

*по Марку Твену*

(В Сан-Франциско жил молодой человек Генри Адамс. Он служил клерком в конторе.

Однажды, когда он катался на паруснике (go under sail), он оказался (find oneself) в открытом море (on the open sea). Бриг (brig), который направлялся в Лондон, спас (rescue ['reskju:]) его.

Когда он сошел на берег (go ashore), в его кармане был всего один доллар.

На следующее утро, он, голодный, бродит по городу. Вдруг за спиной (behind his back) он слышит голос:

– Подойдите сюда, пожалуйста.

Лакей (a footman) открывает дверь и сопровождает (take) Генри в комнату, где сидят два пожилых богатых джентльмена. Это два брата, которые заключили между собой пари на (bet to) двадцать тысяч фунтов (pounds). Один из них уверен, что любой «честный и неглупый иностранец», может прожить в Лондоне без друзей и без денег, имея только билет в 1 000 000 фунтов. Они начинают расспрашивать Генри и узнают всю его историю (life story).

– Вы вполне подходите нам.

Один из них протягивает ему конверт (an envelope). Они не разрешают его распечатать (unseal) и хотят, чтобы Генри сделал это позже.

Генри выходит на улицу, распечатывает конверт и находит там банковский билет и письмо. Он бежит в дешевый (cheap) ресторан пообедать.

Он хочет расплатиться (pay off), достаёт билет и видит фантастическую сумму (fantastic sum). Вскоре он приходит в себя (come to one's senses), даёт хозяину ресторана билет и говорит спокойным тоном:

– Разменяйте (change), пожалуйста.

Конечно, хозяин не может этого сделать и говорит, что может подождать.

Генри возвращается к дому богатых братьев, чтобы вернуть билет. Но лакей говорит, что их нет дома (be out). Он вспоминает (recall) о письме, читает его и узнает (learn) о пари (bet). После недолгого смущения (embarrassment) он начинает чувствовать себя превосходно.

Наступает новая жизнь: Генри везде принимают за (take for) миллионера (millionaire) и предлагают ему неограниченные кредиты (unlimited credits).

Весь город называет его «миллион в кармане». Пользуясь ссудой (loan) братьев, он открывает счет (open an account) в банке.

В одном из богатых домов, на приеме, он знакомится с красивой молодой девушкой, и они влюбляются друг в друга (fall in love with each other).

Через месяц братья возвращаются. Генри идёт к ним, чтобы вернуть билет. Там он узнаёт, что его любимая девушка – дочка одного из братьев.

В день свадьбы (wedding) отец дарит им этот билет.



## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### The Verbs *to be* and *to have* Глаголы *to be* и *to have*

|   | Present  | Past                          | Future           |
|---|--|-------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>to be</b><br>1) « <i>быть</i> », « <i>являться</i> »,<br>« <i>находиться</i> »<br>2) вспомогательный<br>глагол | I <b>am</b><br>he <b>is</b><br>they <b>are</b>   | <b>was</b><br><br><b>were</b> | <b>will be</b>   |
| <b>to have</b><br>1) « <i>иметь</i> »<br>2) вспомогательный<br>глагол   | I <b>have</b><br>he <b>has</b><br>we <b>have</b> | <b>had</b>                    | <b>will have</b> |

☐ They **are** at home now. **Are** they at home now?

☐ He **is** a doctor. **Is** he a doctor?

- ☐ They **are not (aren't)** students, they **are** young teachers.
- ☐ He **was** twenty yesterday.
- ☐ We **were** in London last month.
- ☐ He **has** three brothers. Do you **have** a brother?
- ☐ I **don't have** a brother, but I **have** two sisters.
- ☐ We **had** a meeting last night.
- ☐ **Did** you **have** a car when you lived in London?

**Ex. 20.** Complete the sentences according to the model.

**Model** I am a singer. (my brother)  
*My brother is an actor.*

1. We were students. (they)
2. She will be a nurse. (I)
3. Nick and Mary are painters. (their parents)
4. They are chemists. (my sister)
5. His brother is a doctor. (he)
6. You will be a book-keeper. (she)
7. He is a physicist. (his wife)
8. George and John are photographers. (Helen and Ann)

**Ex. 21.** Transform these sentences into general questions. Give full and short answers.

**Model** His friends are students. (No)  
 – *Are his friends students?*  
 – *No, they aren't. They are not students.*

1. My friends were students. (Yes)
2. She is an actress. (No)
3. These girls are pretty. (Yes)
4. Those boys are handsome. (No)
5. The hat was old. (No)
6. The trees will be green. (Yes)
7. These pictures were expensive. (No)
8. The film was new. (Yes)
9. The test will be easy. (No)

**Ex. 22.** Transform the sentences according to the models.

**Model 1**

Her daughter has a friend.

*Her daughter doesn't have a friend.*

1. They have a lot of problems.
2. You have a chance to win the prize.
3. She had a good idea where to go.
4. They have some English magazines.
5. We have breakfast at 8.
6. He has a brand-new computer.
7. We have a lot of friends in Germany.
8. Jane has two brothers.

**Model 2**

John has a son. (Yes) (No)

– *Does John have a son?*

– *Yes, he does. (No, he doesn't.)*

1. We have a little juice in our glasses. (Yes)
2. Ann has enough coffee in her cup. (No)
3. They have a large family. (Yes)
4. She has lunch at home. (No)
5. My brother has a pretty girl-friend. (Yes)
6. George has a cat. (Yes)
7. John has three children. (No)
8. She has two computers. (No)

**Model 3**

Do you have a black or a white cat?

– *I had a black cat but now I have a white cat.*

1. Do you have two or three sisters?
2. Does she have many or few exams to take?
3. Do they have friends in Paris or in London?
4. Do you have a TV set or a VCR?
5. Does he have many or few problems?
6. Does she have her breakfast at 7 or at 9?
7. Do you have tea or coffee in the morning?
8. Do they have much or little time to read these books?

**Model 4**

Ann had a dog.

*Did she have a bird?*

1. He had some English books.
2. We had a holiday in Bulgaria.
3. I had a cup of tea for breakfast.
4. They had a good time in London.
5. She had coffee with her friends.
6. He had a Japanese camera.
7. We had a lot of relatives in Estonia.
8. She always had white jeans in the summer.

**Ex. 23.** Open the brackets using the proper tense form of the verbs “to be” and “to have”.

1. “How many French books he (to have) at home?” “Last year he (to have) only three books, now he (to have) a lot.” 2. Today Nick (to be) very busy but tomorrow he (to have) more time to call you. 3. Usually she (to be) very nervous at the exam. 4. Last week he (to be) ill. 5. I hope I (to have) enough money in the future to go to Australia. 6. They (not to have) any pictures on the walls. 7. George’s wife (not to be) a teacher, she (to be) a writer. 8. Yesterday she (to be) very tired and (not to have) dinner. 9. Next week he (to be) free and (to have) some rest. 10. “Where you usually (to have) lunch?” “I (to have) lunch at home.” “And your sister?” “She (not to have) lunch at home. She (to have) lunch at the University.” 11. “What (to be) their children’s names?” “Their names (to be) Peter and Helen.” 12. Ann (to be) fond of mathematics and I (to be) fond of geography. 13. “How often you (to have) English classes?” “I (to have) English classes twice a week. Last year I (to have) them three times a week.”

## Present Indefinite (Simple) and Present Continuous

| Характеристика действия |   |  |
|-------------------------|---|--|
|                         | Present Indefinite  | Present Continuous   |
| Как?                    | Обычное, регулярное, повторяющееся действие. Факт.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">Глагол</div>  | Длительное действие, процесс, протекающий в определенный момент или период времени.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">be + -ing</div>   |
| Когда?                  | 1) <i>usually, generally, always, never, often, seldom, every day, sometimes</i><br>2) будущее действие, связанное с графиком, расписанием.   | 1) <i>now, at present, at the moment</i><br><i>Listen! Look!</i><br><i>I see... I hear...</i><br>2) будущее запланированное действие.  |
| Примеры                 | <input type="checkbox"/> The Earth <b>moves</b> round the Sun.<br><input type="checkbox"/> She <b>lives</b> in London.<br><input type="checkbox"/> I <b>work</b> in my garden every day.<br><input type="checkbox"/> The next train <b>leaves</b> in an hour. | <input type="checkbox"/> Look, it <b>is moving</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> She <b>is living</b> in that flat <i>now</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>is working</b> in the garden <i>at present</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>is leaving</b> for Moscow <i>tomorrow</i> . |
| Вопрос                  | <b>Do</b> you <b>work</b> on Sundays?<br><b>Does</b> he   | <b>Are</b> you <b>working</b> now?<br><b>Is</b> he   |
| Отрицание               | They <b>don't</b> <b>speak</b> French.<br>He <b>doesn't</b>   | They <b>aren't</b> <b>working</b> now.<br>He <b>isn't</b>  |

(For Spelling Rules see Appendix 2).

**Ex. 24.** Fill in the empty boxes with the examples from text and explain the use of tenses.

| Present Indefinite | Present Continuous |
|--------------------|--------------------|
|                    |                    |

**Ex. 25.** Use *the Present Indefinite* or *the Present Continuous Tenses* of the verbs in brackets.

1. The telephone (to ring). Someone (to want) to talk to you. 2. Jane (to like) reading. She often (to borrow) books from the library. 3. The postman (to walk) up the path. He (to come) twice a day. 4. John (to have) a lot of things to do. He (to read) papers, (to write) business letters and (to receive) visitors. 5. What (to be) this dreadful smell? – Something (to burn) in the kitchen. 6. He always (to get) good marks in his examinations. 7. "What Nick (to do) now?" "He (to do) his homework. It usually (to take) him an hour and a half to do his homework". 8. When Peter (to read) a book in English, he always (to keep) a dictionary near him. When he (not to know) the meaning of a word, he (to open) the dictionary and (to look up) the word. 9. Come in and join me. I (to have) a cup of coffee. I usually (to have) one about this time. 10. "Look, the guests (to put) their hats and coats on." "Yes, because they (to leave)". "Why they (to leave) so early?" "Early?! It's midnight!" 11. My friend always (to tell) me the truth, but I see that he (to tell) a lie now. 12. You (to drink) coffee every day? What's the brand of the coffee you (to drink) with such pleasure? 13. "You sometimes (to go) abroad?" "I (to travel) inside the country, as a rule." 14. "Michael (to walk) to his college?" "I (not know). I think generally he (to walk) but today he (to go) on his motorbike."

**Ex. 26.** Translate into English.

1. Пожалуйста, не говори так громко. Я занимаюсь. 2. «Ты пишешь открытку Мэри?» «Да, я всегда поздравляю ее с праздниками.» 3. «Почему ты молчишь?» – спросил он. «Потому что я предпочитаю молчать в таких ситуациях.» 4. «Посмотри, идет дождь. Мы не можем поехать за город.» «Что касается меня (as for me), я не боюсь дождя. Я езжу за го-



род в любую погоду.» 5. Ученые постоянно изучают погоду. Климат становится (get) теплее. 6. «Я иду на концерт поп-музыки. Джейн идет со мной. Хочешь пойти с нами?» «С удовольствием!» 7. Становится темно. Я хочу попросить Марка включить свет. 8. Она очень рассеянная. (absent-minded). Она всегда оставляет свою сумку в аудитории. 9. «Он опять занят сегодня?» «Нет, у него выходной (day off).» 10. «Почему он играет на компьютере? Я всегда прошу его не играть по вечерам.» «У него нет уроков, поэтому он играет.» 11. По вечерам, когда она приходит с работы, она обычно готовит ужин. Сегодня она очень устала. Она сидит у камина и читает. 12. «Приходи к нам на чашку кофе.» «Я не могу. Я ремонтирую (repair) свою машину.» 13. «Что ты здесь делаешь?» «Я покупаю новые туфли. Я обычно покупаю туфли в этом магазине.»

**Ex. 27.** Translate the jokes from Russian into English using *the Present Indefinite* and *the Present Continuous Tenses*.

**1**

А: Почему ты к нам никогда не приходишь?

Б: Мне очень жаль, но я очень занят. Я играю в оркестре (band), и мы даем концерты в ночном клубе каждый вечер (perform/every night).

А: Тогда ты свободен днем, не так ли?

Б: Конечно нет, каждое утро у нас репетиции (rehearsals).

А: Тогда ты отдыхаешь (have a rest) между репетициями и концертами?

Б: Нет, я даю уроки музыки в это время (in between).

А: Когда же ты спишь?

Б: Во время репетиций.

**2**

Мама: Ты совсем не интересуешься домашним хозяйством, а тебе уже 15 лет. Твоя учительница говорит, что ты пропускаешь (miss) уроки кулинарии.

Мэри: Да, я правда ненавижу готовить и иногда пропускаю эти уроки.

Мама: Но ты же хочешь выйти замуж (get married), не так ли? Только плохая жена не умеет готовить.

Мэри: Да, ты права, мама, но ты же слышала об обучении во время работы. (on-the-job-training).

**3**

Пожилый человек с гордостью сообщает своему врачу:

«Я не пью, не курю, я никогда не хожу в кино или театр, я никогда не занимаюсь пустой болтовней (idle talk), рано ложусь спать, придержива-

уюсь диеты (keep to a diet). Завтра я буду праздновать свой 80-й день рождения.»

«Но как?» – удивленно спрашивает врач.

**4**

Капитан корабля кричит своим матросам: «Кто внизу?» «Это я, Билли, сэр,» – отвечает один. «Что ты там делаешь, Билли?» «Я делаю ... мм ... ничего, сэр.» «А Том там?» «Да, сэр.» «А что ты там делаешь, Том?» «Я помогаю Билли, сэр.»

**5**

- Почему ты идешь под зонтом? (carry an umbrella). Ты думаешь, идет дождь?
- Нет.
- Но солнце тоже не печет (shine).
- Нет.
- Тогда почему же ты идешь под зонтом?
- Видите ли, когда идет дождь, папа берет зонтик; когда печет солнце, мама хочет использовать его. Сейчас единственный случай (the only time), когда я могу взять зонтик.

## The Use of the Indefinite Article (a/an) Неопределенный артикль *a/an*

**1.** Неопределенный артикль **a/an** может употребляться только с исчисляемыми существительными, стоящими в единственном числе (во множественном числе артикль **a/an** не употребляется).

Следующие примеры помогут понять, какие существительные называются *исчисляемыми*, а какие *неисчисляемыми*.

| Исчисляемые  | Неисчисляемые  |
|--|--|
| Предметы можно сосчитать   | Вещества или абстрактные существительные, для счета которых вводятся специальные единицы   |
| a boy – many boys<br>a book – a lot of books<br>a dog – five dogs<br>a car – hundreds of cars<br>a house – many houses | bread – a loaf of bread<br>butter – a pound of butter<br>excitement – much excitement<br>money – a lot of money<br>beauty – great beauty |

Запомните, нижеприведенные существительные в английском языке, как правило, *неисчисляемые*, они не употребляются во множественном числе и с артиклем **a/an**.

Например: *advice, furniture, money, news, information, progress, trouble, weather*.

- ☐ No news is good **news**.
- ☐ Preparations are in **progress**.
- ☐ **Money** is a good servant but a bad master.
- ☐ Her **hair** is beautiful.

Однако в отдельных случаях некоторые неисчисляемые существительные могут становиться исчисляемыми (*paper, hair, beauty, work, etc.*) и тогда употребление артикля подчиняется общим правилам.

- ☐ It is **a work** of art.
- ☐ She is **a real beauty**.
- ☐ There is **a hair** on your jacket.

**2. Неопределенный артикль a/an** (с исчисляемыми существительными) всегда употребляется в следующих конструкциях:

**It is a book.**

**This is a bird and that is an animal.**

**There is a table at the window.**

**I have a dog and he has a cat.**

**He is a teacher and I am a doctor.**

**She is a nice girl.**

**I saw an unusual bird.**

**What a clever man!**

**BUT: What nasty weather!**

**Ex. 28.** Supply *a/an* or *–*.

**Model**

What's this? (juice) It is juice.

What's this? (box) It is **a** box.

1. What's this? (water); 2. What's this? (bread); 3. What's this? (taxi); 4. What's this? (bag); 5. What's this? (suitcase); 6. What's this? (perfume); 7. What's this? (chocolate); 8. What's this? (glass); 9. What's this? (glass of water); 10. What's this? (box of chocolates); 11. What's this? (bar of chocolate); 12. What's this? (passport).

**Ex. 29.** Fill in the blanks with *a/an* where necessary.



1. What ... strange answer!
2. What ... good children!
3. What ... beautiful eyes she has!
4. What ... long hair she has!
5. What ... interesting information!
6. What ... wonderful news!
7. What ... dull article!
8. What ... lovely blouse!
9. What ... slender girls!



1. The students are making ... good progress.
2. He bought ... expensive car.
3. They are short of ... money and cannot buy ... dog for their child.
4. I don't think I'll go to ... work tomorrow.
5. He likes ... modern furniture and his wife prefers ... ancient furniture.
6. Let me give you ... piece of ... advice.
7. We had ... fine weather in England.
8. He is full of ... interesting bits of ... information.
9. He has ... rich collection of ... unusual exotic butterflies.
10. She always gives ... advice on how to survive.
11. This is ... welcome news.
12. This film is making ... lot of money in America.
13. "Who wants ... cake?" "I'd like ... piece of ... cake, please."
14. I usually have ... breakfast at 8.
15. I found ... kitten in the street and brought it home.
16. "Would you like ... cup of ... tea?" "Oh, yes and can I have ... ice-cream?"
17. In the living room there are ... armchairs and ... sofa.
18. He met ... nice girl at the disco. She was ... wonderful dancer. She had ... blond hair.
19. He was ... lawyer by ... profession.

**Ex. 30.** Rewrite these sentences changing the words in *italic type* from the singular to the plural and from the plural to the singular. Make other necessary changes.

1. There is *a bridge* over the river.
2. Is there *a plate* on the table?

3. There was *a cake* on the plate.
4. There were *covers* on the typewriters.
5. Are there *desks* in those classrooms?
6. What *a bright student* he is!
7. There is *a glass* on the tray.
8. She is *a smart* girl.
9. There is *a sheet of paper* on the table.
10. They are *students* and we are laboratory assistants.
11. He is *a school-boy* and she is a school-girl.
12. Do you have *pencils*?
13. There is a stamp on *the envelope*.
14. Were there empty *boxes* in the corner?
15. She has *a flower* in her hand.
16. There is *a row* of hooks on the wall.

# SINGING LESSON

(adapted)

by Katherine Mansfield

With a heavy heart Miss Meadows<sup>1</sup> was walking along the cold corridors that led to the music hall.

Forms Four, Five and Six were waiting for her there. She struck the piano with her baton. "Silence, please! Immediately!" Her voice sounded cold and hard. She was still thinking of the letter she had received that morning. It filled her with unhappiness. "... I feel more and more strongly that our marriage could be a mistake. Not that I do not love you. I love you as much as it is possible to love a woman, but I don't think I am a marrying man." Alone in the world again! Oh, how painful it is! Hadn't she known that nothing would come of it?



Miss Meadows said in a voice of ice: "Page fourteen, please. A lament<sup>2</sup>."

What could be more tragic than a lament! How she had always looked forward to their meetings! How good-looking Basil<sup>3</sup> was! And he knew it, too.

"The headmaster's wife keeps inviting me to dinner. I never get an evening to myself."

"But can't you refuse?"

"Oh, well, I can't hurt her. And then it may ruin my chances."

The voices were silent, the piano was waiting.

"Quite good," said Miss Meadows, but still in such a voice that the younger girls felt frightened.

Suddenly the door opened. A little girl in blue came up to her.

"Well, Monica, what is it?"

"Oh, if you please, Miss Meadows," said the little girl, "Miss Wyatt<sup>4</sup> wants to see you."

The headmistress was sitting at her desk. "I sent for you just now because this telegram has come for you. I hope it isn't bad news." Too excited to say anything, Miss Meadows opened the telegram.

"Don't think about letter was mad bought hatstand today Basil." She rose. She half ran towards the door.

"Oh, just one minute, Miss Meadows," said Miss Wyatt firmly. "I must say I don't like my teachers to receive telegrams in school hours."

Filled with hope, love and joy she ran back to the music hall.

"Page 32," she sang out and turned away so that nobody could see that she was smiling.

*We come here today with flowers and joy ...*

"Stop! Stop!" cried Miss Meadows. "This is awful. What's the matter with you today? Think, think of what you're singing. Use your imagination. It should sound warm, happy and eager. Once again. Quickly. Now then!"

And this time Miss Meadows voice sounded over all the other voices – full, deep and rich.

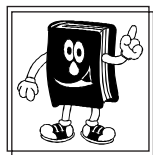
### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Meadows ['medouz]

<sup>2</sup> Lament – элегия

<sup>3</sup> Basil ['beizil]

<sup>4</sup> Wyatt ['waɪət]



## I. VOCABULARY

**strike** [straɪk] (v) (struck)

1. hit – ударять, бить

□ He **struck** (on/upon) the table.

2. поражать, производить впечатление, казаться; привлекать внимание

□ That **strikes** me as rather silly.

□ His attention was **struck** by the unusual change.

3. приходить в голову; понимать

□ An idea suddenly **struck** him.

□ It **struck** me immediately that I had made a mistake.

**strike hands** – ударить по рукам

**striking** (adj) attracting attention – поразительный, замечательный

□ **striking** likeness

**strikingly** (adv) in a striking manner – поразительно, удивительно

□ a **strikingly** beautiful woman

**Strike the iron while it is hot; strike while the iron is hot.** (proverb) –

Куй железо, пока горячо.

**look forward to** – ожидать чего-л. с нетерпением (с удовольствием)

□ We are **looking** forward to seeing you again.

**look after** – заботиться о ком-л., чем-л.; присматривать, ухаживать за кем-л., чем-л.

□ Who will **look after** the children?

**look for** – искать

☐ Are you still **looking for** a job?

**Look before you leap.** (proverb) – Сначала посмотри, а потом прыгай.

**good-looking** (adj) beautiful, attractive – красивый, интересный

☐ a **good-looking** girl

**invite** (v) ask (smb to do smth, come somewhere, etc.) – приглашать, звать, просить

☐ **to invite** a friend to one's house

**hurt** (v) (hurt)

1. offend (больно) задевать, обижать; оскорблять

☐ He was rather **hurt** by their criticism.

2. cause bodily pain to; damage – причинять боль; повредить, ушибить

☐ It **hurts** the eyes to look at the sun.

☐ He **hurt** his back when he fell.

**ruin** [ˈruɪn] (v) destroy; damage – разрушать; уничтожать; портить, губить

☐ The storm **ruined** the crops.

☐ **to ruin** one's career (one's life)

**come up to** (v) approach – подходить

☐ A man **came up to** us.

**news** (n) (будучи по форме существительным мн. числа, в конструкциях оно используется в форме ед. числа) (new information) – новость, новости; известие, весть

☐ Here *is* the **news**.

**No news is good news.** (proverb) – Отсутствие вестей – хорошая весть.

**Bad news travels quickly; ill news flies fast.** (proverb) – Худые вести не лежат на месте.

**excited** [ɪkˈsaɪtɪd] (adj) взволнованный

☐ We were very **excited** to hear the news.

**eager** [ˈiːgə] (adj)

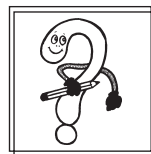
1. энергичный, напряженный

☐ **eager** fight

2. (for, after, about) страстно стремящийся; нетерпеливый

☐ He is **eager** for fame.

## II. COMPREHENSION



**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

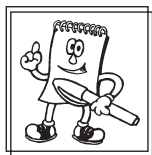
1. How was Miss Meadows walking along the corridors? 2. Where was she going? 3. How did she begin the singing lesson? 4. What was she still thinking of? 5. From whom was the letter she had received that morning? 6. Why did



the letter make her feel unhappy? 7. What were the girls going to sing and why? 8. Did Miss Meadows love Basil with all her heart? 9. Why couldn't he refuse to have dinner at the headmaster's? 10. Why did the headmistress send for Miss Meadows during the lesson? 11. How did Miss Meadows feel when she was opening the telegram? 12. What did the telegram say? 13. What were Miss Meadows' feelings when she returned to the music hall? 14. How did her voice sound this time?

**Ex. 2.** Translate into Russian the following expressions and sentences from the text.

1. Her voice sounded cold and hard.
2. She kept thinking of the letter.
3. It filled her with unhappiness.
4. to feel more and more strongly.
5. I love you as much as it is possible to love a woman.
6. painful
7. Nothing would come of it.
8. The headmaster's wife keeps inviting me to dinner.
9. to ruin one's chances
10. She half ran towards the door.
11. I don't like my teachers to receive telegrams in school hours.
12. It should sound warm, happy and eager.



### III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 3.** Give the translation and the three forms of the following verbs:

Lead, walk, wait, strike, sound, think, receive, fill, feel, love, know, hurt, come, invite, say, get, want, sit, send, see, rise, run, turn, sing.

**Ex. 4.** Find in the text and translate the following expressions. Use them in the sentences below.



*С тяжелым сердцем; идти по коридору; ждать кого-л.; ударить что-л. чем-л.; сказать ледяным тоном; с нетерпением ждать встречи; постоянно приглашать кого-л. на ужин; повредить (будущей) карьере; почувствовать испуг; подходить (приближаться) к кому-л.; слишком*

*взволнованный; получать телеграмму; полный надежды; быть одной (одинокой).*

1. Я шел по коридору, когда увидел своего друга. 2. Он был слишком взволнован, чтобы говорить. 3. Такое поведение может повредить твоей будущей карьере. 4. Он произнёс это ледяным тоном, и мы почувствовали испуг. 5. С тяжелым сердцем он покидал родной город. 6. Мы с нетерпением ждем встречи с нашими друзьями. 7. Я ждал тебя с двух до трех вчера. 8. Ко мне подошел незнакомец. 8. Он получил телеграмму и срочно выехал в другой город. 9. Он ударил кулаком по столу. 10. Полные надежды, мы принялись за новую работу. 11. Ей не нравится быть одной, и поэтому она постоянно приглашает на ужин своих друзей.

**Ex. 5.** Find in column B the translation for the words and phrases in column A.

| A               | B                 |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. good-looking | a. твердо         |
| 2. joy          | b. молчаливый     |
| 3. refuse       | c. радость        |
| 4. hope         | d. воображение    |
| 5. hurt         | e. испуганный     |
| 6. silent       | f. отказываться   |
| 7. frightened   | g. отворачиваться |
| 8. firmly       | h. симпатичный    |
| 9. turn away    | i. надеяться      |
| 10. imagination | j. энергичный     |
| 11. eager       | k. обижать        |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |

**Ex. 6.** Replace the italicized parts of the sentences with words and phrases from the text.

1. *Sad and disappointed* Miss Meadows was walking along the cold corridors. 2. The letter *made her unhappy*. 3. I am not a man *who can get married*. 4. It *gives you so much pain*. 5. But can't you *say no*? 6. *Filled with too many emotions* to say anything, Miss Meadows opened the telegram. 7. I don't like *it when my teachers receive* telegrams in school hours.

**Ex. 7.** Put the following adjectives, describing Miss Meadows and her feelings, into two groups:

1. before the telegram;
2. after the telegram.

cold, excited, heavy, rich, deep, tragic, hard, smiling, unhappy, eager, warm, alone, happy, painful, icy.

**Ex. 8.** Find in column B the opposites to the adjectives in column A.

| A               | B             |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. heavy        | a. cold       |
| 2. happy        | b. ugly       |
| 3. possible     | c. good       |
| 4. tragic       | d. light      |
| 5. good-looking | e. poor       |
| 6. silent       | f. unhappy    |
| 7. bad          | g. comic      |
| 8. awful        | h. impossible |
| 9. warm         | i. noisy      |
| 10. rich        | j. wonderful  |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |

**Ex. 9.** Translate the following sentences into English using the words:

a) *news*;

b) *to strike*.

(For reference see the I. Vocabulary)

**A**

1. Она только что получила телеграмму. Надеюсь, в ней нет плохих вестей.  
 2. Мы боимся, что это известие сильно расстроит её. 3. Новости, которые я собираюсь вам сообщить, очень интересные. 4. У тебя есть какие-либо вести от твоих друзей? 5. Вот те новости, которые мы только что получили.

**B**

1. Он ударил по двери кулаком. 2. Мне показалось, что он не говорит правды. 3. Я понял, что еду в неправильном направлении. 4. Эти новости

показались мне странными. 5. Они ударили по рукам, как только достигли соглашения.

**Ex. 10.** Translate the following sentences, using *(not) like smb to do smth*.

1. Мне не нравится, когда наши учителя получают телеграммы во время занятий. 2. Я люблю, когда дети смеются. 3. Она не любила, чтобы мы приходили поздно. 4. Отец любит, когда его сын говорит по-английски. 5. Ему не нравится, когда я опаздываю. 6. Бабушка любит, когда её внучка играет на рояле.

**Ex. 11.** Paraphrase the following sentences according to the model, using *"keep (on) doing smth"*. Translate the sentences.

**Model**

He interrupted me all the time while I was telling the story.

He **kept (on) interrupting** me while I was telling the story.

1. On our way home she asked him a lot of questions about his journey. 2. All through dinner they talked about the experiment. 3. The headmaster's wife invites me to dinner each day. 4. As he drove about the town he watched the traffic lights all the time. 5. He stood at the doors of the theatre and looked at his watch now and again. 6. She smiled while reading the book.

**Ex. 12.** Choose and insert the correct word or verb-adverb combination in the proper form.

**raise – rise**



*"raise (smth)"* – поднимать (что-либо)

☐ They **raised** the sunken ship.

*"rise"* – подниматься

☐ He **rose** to welcome me.

1. The sun ... in the East and sets in the West. 2. She read the telegram, ... and half ran towards the door. 3. In class students usually ... their hands when they want to ask a question and when they answer. 4. May I ... my glass to your health, madam? 5. He is very weak after the flu. He can hardly ... from his bed. 6. He ... his head and sees that a visitor is entering his office. 7. Early to bed and early to ... makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

### look after – look for – look forward to

(For reference see the I. Vocabulary)

1. What are you doing? – I'm ... my spectacles. – They are on the table. 2. How she had always ... their meetings! 3. Who is going to ... your children while you are away? 4. They say that they ... seeing us some day. 5. They are ... a new teacher for their children.

**Ex. 13.** Study the following phrases and a) translate them into Russian, b) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text and c) use them in sentences of your own.

Walk **along** the corridor (the street, etc.); lead **to**; wait **for** smb/smth; think **of/about** smth; filled **with** smth; look **forward to** smth; come **up to** smb; sit **at** one's desk; run **back to** the hall (room).

**Ex. 14.** Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Where does this corridor lead ... ? 2. ... a heavy heart I had to tell her about the accident. 3. A man is waiting ... you downstairs. 4. The news filled us ... enthusiasm. 5. He was working hard though he did not know if anything would come ... his efforts. 6. He was speaking with us ... very angry voice. 7. We are invited ... dinner at our friends' tonight. 8. I did not want to hurt ... you. 9. I hope it won't ruin ... your chances. 10. She was sitting ... her desk when this man came ... her. 11. He rose and went ... the door. 12. I turned ... to hide my smile.

**Ex. 15.** Translate the following sentences into Russian paying special attention to the use of the italicized connectives and transitional phrases of comparison.

(For reference see Appendix 7)

1. *Unlike* her sister she was a real beauty. 2. *On the one hand*, we were very busy that night, *on the other hand*, we wanted to meet with our friends whom we had not seen for a long time. 3. *Similarly to* all his friends he was fond of football. 4. *By contrast to* the first part of the book, the second part is much more interesting. 5. *On the one hand*, we wanted to teach him a lesson, *on the other hand*, we felt sorry for him.

**Ex. 16.** Translate the parts of the following sentences using the connectives and transitional phrases of comparison.

(For reference see Appendix 7)

1. *В отличие* от своего отца, he became a painter. 2. *С одной стороны*, she wanted to stay at home, *а с другой стороны*, she did not want to hurt the headmaster's wife. 3. *Подобно* своим братьям, he works very hard. 4. *С одной стороны*, мы были очень уставшими, *а с другой стороны*, we wanted to see the play till the end. 5. *В отличие* от фильма, the book is much more interesting. 6. *Как и* все другие его дети, his younger son is very talented.

**Ex. 17.** Talk on your feelings before and after your summer vacations using the connectives and transitional phrases of comparison.

## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE



**Ex. 18.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. Beauty lies in lover's eyes. *Красота в глазах любящих. Не по-хорошу мил, а по-милу хорош.*
2. Marriages are made in heaven. *Браки совершаются на небесах, кому как на роду написано.*
3. be over head and ears in love; be head over ears in love; be up to the ears in love – *быть безумно влюбленным, быть влюбленным по уши.*

**Ex. 19.** Retell the story according to the following plan using the words and expressions given below.

**1** *The beginning of the singing lesson*

With a heavy heart; walk along the cold corridors; wait for smb; strike the piano with a baton; ask for silence; sound cold and hard; think of the letter; fill with unhappiness; feel more and more strongly; be a mistake; love smb with all one's heart; not to be a marrying man; alone; painful; nothing; come of smth.

**2** *Miss Meadows thinks about her marriage*

Look forward to the meetings; good-looking; keep inviting smb to dinner; not to get an evening to oneself; cannot refuse; hurt smb; ruin one's chances.

**3** *The telegram from Basil*

Come up to smb; want to see smb; sit at one's desk; send for smb; too excited; open the telegram; rise; half run towards the door; say firmly; not to like smb to receive telegrams; school hours.

**4** *Miss Meadows comes back to the music hall*

Hope; love; joy; run back to; sing out; turn away; smile; awful; imagination; warm; happy; eager; sound over all the other voices.

**Ex. 20.** Look through the text once again and find the expressions and sentences describing Miss Meadows' emotions (a) before and (b) after she received the telegram from Basil. Speak about the change in her feelings using these expressions.

**Ex. 21.** Tell the story as if you were: a) Miss Meadows; b) Basil; c) one of the pupils present at the singing lesson.

**Ex. 22.** Topics for discussion and essays.

- 1) What impression do you form of a) Miss Meadows; b) Basil?
- 2) Describe the relationship between Miss Meadows and Basil?
- 3) Your idea of a happy marriage.

**Ex. 23.** Give a free translation of the following text.

(For the Past Continuous Tense see V. Grammar Review)

### **Роман биржевого маклера**

*по О. Генри*

Питчер (Pitcher), клерк в конторе биржевого маклера (a broker) Гарви Максвелла (Harvey Maxwell), был удивлен, когда в половине десятого утра Максвелл вошел в контору в сопровождении молодой стенографистки (stenographer).

Молодая стенографистка служила у Максуэла уже год, но в это утро в ней было что-то особенное (special). Она вся светилась (glow) каким-то мягким светом, и глаза ее мечтательно поблескивали (sparkle).

Вела (behave) она себя также необычно, она не сразу пошла в комнату, где стоял ее стол, а остановилась у стола мистера Максуэла и смотрела на него с улыбкой.

Но человек, сидевший за столом, уже перестал быть человеком. Это была машина, разговаривающая по телефону, продающая и покупающая акции (shares).

«Ну? В чем дело?» – резко спросил он. Его глаза смотрели почти раздраженно (look irritated). «Ничего,» – ответила стенографистка и отошла с легкой улыбкой.

«Мистер Питчер, – сказала она клерку, – мистер Максуэл говорил вам вчера о приглашении новой стенографистки?»

«Да, и я вчера позвонил в агентство (agency),» – ответил мистер Питчер.

«Тогда я буду работать как всегда, – сказала молодая женщина, – пока не придет новая стенографистка».

У Гарви Максуэла был горячий день (busy day). Люди входили и выходили, вбегали и выбегали (run in and out) посыльные (messengers) с телеграммами, непрерывно звонил телефон.

Его работу неожиданно прервал (interrupt) Питчер, представив (introduce) ему новую стенографистку. Мистер Максуэл был очень удивлен: «Как я мог дать такое распоряжение (order)? Мисс Лесли (Leslie) весь год отлично работала. У нас нет никаких вакансий (vacancy)». Новая стенографистка в негодовании покинула (leave) контору.

Когда приближался час завтрака, в работе наступило затишье (relaxation). Максуэл стоял у своего стола с полными руками писем и телеграмм, волосы падали ему на лоб (hang over his forehead). Окно было открыто, и через него в комнату заглянула весна. Мистер Максуэл почувствовал запах сирени (smell of lilac). Этот аромат напомнил ему о чем-то. Мир бизнеса мгновенно исчез (disappear).

Она была в соседней (next) комнате. «Клянусь честью, я сделаю это. Спрошу ее сейчас же,» – сказал Максуэл и бросился в комнату стенографистки.

«Мисс Лесли, – сказал он торопливо, – будьте моей женой. Я вас люблю, я давно хотел вам это сказать и вот улучил минутку, когда в конторе маленькая передышка. Отвечайте скорее, меня зовут к телефону.»

Стенографистка повела себя очень странно. Сначала она изумилась, потом из глаз ее потекли слезы (tears run), а затем она улыбнулась и обняла (put her arms round his neck) Максуэла. «Я поняла, – сказала она мягко. – Работа заставляет тебя забыть обо всем. Неужели ты забыл, Гарви, что мы обвенчались (marry) вчера в маленькой церкви за углом?»





## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### The Past Continuous and Past Indefinite (Simple)

|         | Past Continuous   | Past Indefinite   |
|---------|---|---|
| Как?    | <p>Действие протекало в определенный момент или период в прошлом.</p> <div>was doing<br/>were doing</div>   | <p>Повторяющееся действие, факт в прошлом.</p> <div>did</div>   |
| Когда?  | <p><i>at 5 o'clock yesterday; from 3 to 6 yesterday; for 3 hours yesterday; the whole evening; on Monday last week; all day long/during the war; when I came in</i></p>   | <p><i>yesterday<br/>last week<br/>in 1990<br/>5 years ago</i></p>   |
| Примеры | <p><input type="checkbox"/> I <b>was watching</b> TV <i>at 5 o'clock (from 3 to 6/for 3 hours/the whole evening) yesterday.</i></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>was reading</b> a book <i>when I came in.</i></p> | <p><input type="checkbox"/> We <b>went</b> to the theatre <i>yesterday.</i></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>visited</b> his friends <i>each weekend last year.</i></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> They <b>arrived</b> here <i>5 years ago (in 1990).</i></p> |

(For Spelling Rules see Appendix 2.  
For Irregular Verbs see Appendix 3).

**Ex. 24.** Make up sentences, using *the Past Continuous Tense*.

|           |                                 |                                  |
|-----------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| I         | to play badminton in the garden | when we arrived.                 |
| Mother    | still to rain                   | when the telegram came.          |
| We        | to get dark                     | when he returned to her.         |
| It        | to make coffee in the kitchen   | when suddenly it began to rain.  |
| He        | to come into the station        | when the door bell rang.         |
| She       | to write business letters       | when we returned home.           |
| The train | to smile                        | when I looked out of the window. |

**Ex. 25.** Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* or *the Past Continuous Tense*.



1. We (sing) a song when George (come) into the room. 2. The house was quiet. The boys (play) chess and Mary (read) a book. 3. He (write) a letter when I (see) him. 4. Harry (do) his work while his brothers (play) games. 5. When you (see) him last? 6. My hat (fall) off when I (cross) the bridge. 7. Jack (do) his homework when his father (come) home from work. 8. Mary (wear) her new dress when I (meet) her yesterday. 9. The sick child (sleep) when the doctor (come). 10. I (read) the newspaper the whole evening yesterday. 11. It (rain) hard when I (go) out this morning. 12. Who (speak) over the telephone at five yesterday? The line (be) busy for an hour at least.



1. When I (go) out this morning, the sun (shine) and the birds (sing). It was a beautiful morning. I (walk) to the nearest park and sat down on the grass. But while I (sit) there, black clouds gathered and (hide) the sun. It (begin) to rain heavily, so I (run) home. My hat (fall) off as I (run).

2. Jack's father (read) a book last night when he (hear) a noise in the garden. He (open) the window and looked out. It (be) a dark night and at first he could see nothing. But just as he (shut) his window, he (see) a man. The man (try) to climb over the garden wall. He was a thief. When he saw Jack's father at the window, he (jump) off the wall and ran away. Jack's father (run) after him. There was a car at the end of the street. The thief reached the car but just as he (get) into it, Jack's father (catch) him.

3. Last Sunday one of my friends (celebrate) his birthday. When I (arrive), I (see) that his apartment (be) full of guests. I (enter) the sitting-room. Some people (dance). Several guests (sing) a merry song and the hostess<sup>1</sup> (play) the piano. A group of girls (listen) to music and other people (watch) the television. My friend (introduce) me to his guests when the hostess (invite) everybody to the table. The party ended late in the evening. I had a very good time there.

**Note:**

<sup>1</sup> hostess [ˈhoustɪs]

**Ex. 26.** Translate the following sentences into English using *the Past Indefinite* or *the Past Continuous Tense*.

1. Вчера в это время я гулял в парке. 2. В воскресенье с двух до четырех мы работали в саду. 3. Они занимались английским весь день. 4. Мы

шли в кино, когда она нас встретила. 5. «Что вы делали в прошлую субботу вечером?» «Мы смотрели телевизор, а они слушали радио.» 6. Был вечер. Моя сестра читала книгу, а я писал письмо. 7. Катя вышла из института, села в автобус и поехала домой. Когда она пришла домой, её сын готовил уроки. Пока он занимался, она готовила ужин. 8. «Что ты делал вчера в это время?» «Я писал доклад в библиотеке.» 9. Когда мисс Медоуз вошла в музыкальный зал, там её ожидали четвертый, пятый и шестой классы. 10. Когда она начала петь, она все еще думала о письме от Бэзила. 11. Директор школы сидела за своим письменным столом, когда мисс Медоуз вошла в ее кабинет. 12. Когда мисс Медоуз вернулась в музыкальный зал, она улыбалась.

**Ex. 27.** Translate the jokes from Russian into English.

**1**

Однажды Марк Твен пришел (visit) к художнику Вистлеру в его мастерскую (study). Он рассматривал картины. Вдруг он прикоснулся к одному полотну (canvas). «О, – вскричал Вистлер, – не прикасайтесь к нему! Разве вы не видите, оно еще не высохло (not to be dry)?»

«Ничего страшного (I don't mind), – сказал Марк Твен. – Я в перчатках (have gloves on).»

**2**

Однажды утром в лондонском автобусе ехал в школу мальчик. Он был очень простужен (have a bad cold) и чихал (snif) все время так громко, что все пассажиры смотрели на него и качали (shake) головами. Рядом с мальчиком сидел пожилой джентльмен. Он спросил мальчика: «У тебя есть носовой платок (handkerchief<sup>1</sup>)?»

«Да, у меня в кармане есть чистый носовой платок, – ответил мальчик. – Но я не могу дать его вам. Мама говорит, что невежливо просить у кого-либо носовой платок. Вы должны пользоваться своим собственным.»

**Note:**

<sup>1</sup> handkerchief [ˈhæŋkətʃɪf]

**3**

**Озорник**

Однажды пожилой джентльмен прогуливался по улицам. Он увидел маленького мальчика у двери одного из домов. Мальчик стоял у двери и пытался дотянуться (reach) до звонка (door-bell), который находился

слишком высоко для него. Пожилой джентльмен был добрым человеком, поэтому он остановился, чтобы помочь мальчику. «Я позвоню в звонок за тебя,» – сказал он и дернул (pull) за звонок. Маленький мальчик посмотрел на него и сказал: «А теперь нам надо убежать.»

Пожилой джентльмен не понял, что происходит. Мальчик исчез (disappear) за углом, а старику пришлось объяснять (explain to) рассерженному хозяину (owner of the house), почему он звонил в звонок.

### The Use of Articles in a Context Употребление артиклей в контексте



Неопределенный артикль **a (an)** употребляется, когда речь идет о *каком-нибудь одном* лице или предмете, *упоминаемом впервые*.

Определенный артикль **the** употребляется, когда лицо или предмет, названный ранее, *снова упоминается* в беседе или тексте.

☐ I bought **a book** yesterday.

☐ **The book** is very interesting.

**Ex. 28.** Insert articles where necessary.

1. This is ... house. ... house is big. 2. I can see five ... boys. ... boys are playing.  
3. They wrote ... dictation yesterday. ... dictation was long. 4. Suddenly the door opened. ... little girl in blue came up to her. "Well, Monica, what is it?" "Oh, if you please, Miss Meadows," said ... little girl, "Miss Wyatt wants to see you."  
5. Once there lived ... old doctor in ... small town. ... doctor was known to everybody in ... town as a very kind man. 6. When I entered the room I saw ... girl. ... girl was quite young.

**Ex. 29.** Combine the following sentences according to the model.

#### Model

This is **a** notebook. It's thick and black.

**The** notebook is thick and black.

1. This is an apple. It's big and red.
2. That is a lamp. It's new and bright.
3. This is a pen. It's long and yellow.
4. These are magazines. They're old and interesting.
5. Those are armchairs. They're small and cosy.
6. This is an apartment. It's big and light.
7. These are pencils. They're long and sharp.

**Ex. 30.** Insert articles where necessary. Comment on their use.

Once ... rich farmer had ... friend who grew very good apples. One day this friend gave ... farmer ... fine young tree and told him to take it home and plant it. ... farmer was pleased with ... present, but when he came home, he did not know where to plant ... tree. He thought: "If I plant it near the road, strangers will steal the apples. If I plant it in my field, my neighbours will come at night and rob me. If I plant it near my house, there will be no apples either: my children will eat them."

At last he planted ... tree deep in ... wood where nobody could see it. But ... tree could not grow without sunlight and died in ... wood.



Определенный артикль **the** употребляется при наличии *индивидуализирующего определения*, отличающего данное лицо или предмет (лица или предметы) от всех других лиц или предметов того же класса.

- ☐ I liked **the film** *that I saw yesterday*.
- ☐ **The telegram** *brought by the secretary* was very important.
- ☐ I have lost **the key** *to my room*.

*Индивидуализирующее определение* не следует путать с *описательным определением*, которое служит для описания лица или предмета, либо для сообщения о нем *дополнительных сведений*. Описательное определение не влияет на выбор артикля.

- ☐ I have **a wonderful painting**, *which is one hundred years old*.
- ☐ We went to **the sea**, *which was very stormy that day*.

**Ex. 31.** Write out sentences containing individualizing attributes and explain the use of articles in them.

**Robert:** Don't use that brush, it'll be dirty. That's the brush with which Mother painted the stove.

**Mrs Parker:** No, this is the brush I did the stove with. That one's only been used for the screen paint.

**Mr Parker:** Which of you is the villain who's hidden my special tin of paint?

**Robert:** Not me. But I think I know where it is.

**Mrs Parker:** Harry, let Robert do the parts high up under the roof. He is lighter than you are on the ladder.

**Mr Parker:** No. That's all right. You know, Nora, I've been wanting to paint these windows since the day we moved in.

**Mrs Parker:** Me too.

- Robert:* Is this the tin you were looking for? It was in the very place where you put it, in the shed.
- Mr Parker:* Hand it up to me. That's right. This side of the house needs a lot of paint. It's the side which catches all the wind and rain!
- Mrs Parker:* It's very difficult to do the parts that are close to the glass.
- Mr Parker:* Yes, they are the parts that need special care.
- Mrs Parker:* It's beginning to look nice, isn't it?
- Mr Parker:* Yes, but it's the beautiful green streak you've in your hair which I admire most. Look out! I'm falling!
- Mrs Parker:* Harry! Harry! Are you hurt?
- Mr Parker:* No, I don't think so.
- Mrs Parker:* What on earth was it you thought you were doing?
- Mr Parker:* I just stepped back to admire the piece I'd painted. I forgot I was up a ladder.
- Mrs Parker:* Think of my heart, Harry!
- Mr Parker:* I am the person whose heart needs attention, not you!
- Mrs Parker:* It's not your heart that's wrong, dear. It's your brain.

**Ex. 32.** Insert articles where necessary. Comment on their use.

1. I cannot find ... letter which you gave me this morning. 2. Yesterday I spoke to ... man who had just returned from the Arctic expedition. 3. ... clock in the hall is slow. 4. I have received ... letter of great importance. 5. I have bought ... overcoat with a fur collar. 6. She was still thinking of ... letter she had received that morning. 7. ... magazine which you lent me is very interesting. 8. This is ... picture which you will like. 9. Yesterday I met ... old friend, whom I recognized at once. 10. This morning the postman brought me ... letter without ... stamp. 11. I know ... man who lives in ... house where you live. 12. Is that ... man whom they are looking for? 13. My son has ... very good German teacher, who knows ... language perfectly. 14. ... person who is sitting next to me is ... famous painter.

**Ex. 33.** Translate the following sentences into English paying special attention to the use of articles.

1. На прошлой неделе я прочел рассказ, который мне очень понравился. 2. Рассказ, который я прочел на прошлой неделе, очень интересный. 3. Люди, которые занимаются спортом, обычно очень здоровые. 4. Дом, который строится на этой улице, будет одним из самых высоких в нашем городе. 5. Прошлым летом мы жили в деревне, расположенной на берегу Волги, в маленьком домике, окруженном большим садом. 6. Дом, в котором мы жили летом, был окружен большим садом.

# LOVE FOR ART

(adapted)

by O. Henry



Joe Larry was from the Middle West. At six he painted his first picture. At twenty he left for New York. His dream was to take lessons and become a great painter.

Delia Silver lived in a pine-tree village in the South and played the piano rather promisingly. Her relatives gave her some money to go "North" and "finish".

Joe and Delia met in a studio where a number of art and music students spoke about Wagner<sup>1</sup>, music, Rembrandt's<sup>2</sup> works, pictures and many other things.

Soon Joe and Delia got married. They lived in a very small flat, but they were happy. They loved each other. Joe was painting in the class of one great painter. His fees<sup>3</sup> were high. Delia was studying under a very famous pianist. They were very happy as long as their money lasted. But one day they found they had no more money to pay the teachers. Their life became hard. There were days when they had nothing to eat.

One day Delia said she had to give music lessons. A few days later she came home and told her husband that she would teach music to a general's daughter. The girl's name was Clementina<sup>4</sup>. But Joe did not seem to like this idea. "Do you think I can see you work and do nothing myself? I must work, too. I may sell some of my pictures," said Joe.

And so Delia went to the general's house to teach music to his daughter Clementina. And every morning Joe went to Central Park to paint his pictures. After a week Joe brought home 20 dollars. "Where did you get the money, Joe?" asked Delia. "Yesterday I sold one of my pictures to a gentleman from the country," he said. "Is he going to buy some more pictures?" "Yes, he is. He asked me to paint another one for him." "Oh, Joe, how glad I am," answered Delia.

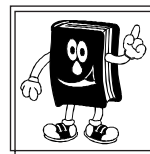
Next week Delia came with her right hand bandaged<sup>5</sup>. "What's this?" asked Joe, taking the hand tenderly. Delia began to laugh. "Oh, it's such a funny story! Clementina spilt some sauce on my hand. She was very sorry about it. But it's nothing. It doesn't hurt much. Why are you looking so, Joe?" Joe took her hand in his, looked into her eyes and asked: "What do you do every day, Delia? Do you really teach a general's daughter? Can you tell me the truth?" Delia sat

looking at the floor for a while. Then she said, "I could not get any pupils but I didn't want you to give up your lessons. And I got a place ironing shirts in one big laundry. Today one of the girls burned my hand with an iron." "Why didn't you tell me about it earlier?" asked Joe. "I didn't want you to know it. But how did you guess that I did not give any music lessons?" "I suspected nothing until tonight, when I saw the bandages. I had to send these bandages upstairs for a girl in the laundry." "How did you happen to be there?" asked Delia. "You see, I work in the machine-room of the same laundry where you work."

### Notes:

- <sup>1</sup> Wagner [ˈvɑːɡnər] – знаменитый немецкий композитор (1813–1883)
- <sup>2</sup> Rembrandt [ˈrembrænt] – великий фламандский художник (1606–1669)
- <sup>3</sup> fee – плата за учение; гонорар доктору, юристу
- <sup>4</sup> Clementina [ˌklemənˈtiːnə]
- <sup>5</sup> with her right hand bandaged – с перевязанной рукой

## I. VOCABULARY



### paint (v)

1. make (a picture of) smb or smth – писать красками, заниматься живописью  
☐ She **painted** her mother's and father's portraits.
2. put paint on (a surface) – красить, окрашивать  
☐ He **is painting** the kitchen blue.

### dream (n) – something imagined and desired – мечта

- ☐ It's my **dream** to win a Nobel Prize.

### dream (v) (dreamed or dreamt [dremt]) – have a dream about smth – мечтать

- ☐ Many people **dream** about living on an island

### last (v) – go on; continue – продолжаться, длиться

- ☐ The hot weather **lasted** until September.

### last (adj) – the person or thing after all the others – последний

- ☐ He was **the last** guest to leave.

### last year/month/week – в прошлом году/месяце/на прошлой неделе (обратить внимание на отсутствие предлога в английском языке)

### at (long) last – after a long time; in the end – наконец, в конце концов

- ☐ Oh, there he is **at last**!

### pay (v) (paid) – give (money) to (someone) for smth – платить

- ☐ He **paid** a lot for his computer.

### pay attention to smb/ smth – обратить внимание на кого-то/что-то

- ☐ She **pays much attention to** what her friends say.



**spill** (v) (spilt or spilled) – pour out accidentally (случайно) – проливать, разливать

☐ He **spilt** milk on the floor.

**hurt** (v) (hurt)

1. cause (причинять) pain or damage – ушибить, повредить

☐ I **hurt** my hand on that broken glass.

2. feel pain – болеть, испытывать боль

☐ My tooth **hurts** (me).

3. feel unhappy (by someone's behaviour) – обидеть, обидеться

☐ He was rude and it **hurt** me.

**burn** (v) (burned or burnt)

1. the effects of fire or heat – обжечь(ся)

☐ I **burned** my hand.

2. be on fire – гореть

☐ Wet sticks (сырые палки) do not **burn** easily.

**iron** (n) – утюг

☐ Yesterday I burned a hole in my dress with **the iron**.

**iron** (v) – make clothes smooth – гладить

☐ I **was ironing** all morning yesterday.

**guess** (v) – say smth without knowing all the facts – угадать, отгадать

☐ If you don't know the answer, try **to guess**.

**happen** (v) – take place – происходить, случаться

☐ **What** happened to **Helen last night**?

## Study the following phrasal verbs and idiomatic expressions

1. **take a bus** (a taxi, a train, etc.) – ездить на автобусе (такси, поездом и т.д.)

☐ I'm **taking the next train** to London.

**take care of** smb – заботиться о ком-то

☐ Jane **takes care of** her old mother.

**take smb for** smb – принимать за кого-то

☐ They often **take** me **for** my sister.

**take lessons** – брать уроки

☐ She **was taking lessons** from a great pianist.

**take medicine** – принимать лекарства

☐ He never **takes medicine** when he is ill.

**take part in** smth – принимать участие в чём-то

☐ My brother **took part in** the final competition.

**take a picture** – фотографировать

☐ He **took a picture** of a castle.

**take (someone's) temperature** – измерять (чьё-то) температуру

☐ The nurse **took the patient's temperature**.

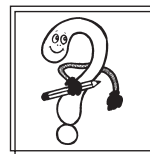
2. **give a lesson** – давать урок/преподавать

☐ She **gives music lessons**.

**give up** – бросать привычку, отказаться (от чего-либо)

☐ The doctor told Harry **to give up** smoking.

## II. COMPREHENSION



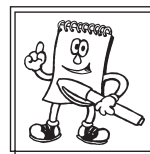
**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. Why did Joe and Delia come to New York? Where from? 2. Where did they meet? 3. Where did they live when they got married? 4. What were they doing in New York? 5. Why did their life become hard? 6. What did Delia decide to do? 7. Why didn't Joe like her idea to work? 8. What did Joe do in his turn (в свою очередь)? 9. Where did Joe get 20 dollars? 10. What happened to Delia a week later? 11. How did Delia explain why her hand was bandaged? 12. Did Joe believe her? 13. Why couldn't Delia tell the truth earlier? 14. How did Joe guess the truth?

**Ex. 2.** Translate into Russian the following sentences from the text.

1. His dream was to take lessons. 2. Joe and Delia met in a studio where a number of art and music students spoke about many things. 3. They had no more money to pay the teachers. 4. Their life became hard. 5. Joe did not seem to like this idea. 6. I could not get any pupils. 7. I got a place ironing shirts in one big laundry. 8. Today one of the girls burned my hand with an iron. 9. I suspected nothing until tonight.

## III. WORD STUDY



**Ex. 3.** Give the translation and three forms of the following verbs. Find in the text sentences with these verbs.

Be, leave, take, give, meet, speak, get, find, become, tell, sell, go, bring, begin, spill, see.

**Ex. 4.** Find in column B the translation for the words in column A.

| A          | B              |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. seem    | a. подозревать |
| 2. famous  | b. платить     |
| 3. sell    | c. покупать    |
| 4. hard    | d. отвечать    |
| 5. buy     | e. казаться    |
| 6. iron    | f. тяжёлый     |
| 7. suspect | g. знаменитый  |
| 8. leave   | h. спрашивать  |
| 9. pay     | i. продавать   |
| 10. ask    | j. уехать      |
| 11. answer | k. уют         |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |

**Ex. 5.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. Who was the (художник) of this portrait? 2. He is going to (покрасить) the outside of the house. 3. Delia (мечтала) of being a great pianist. 4. I always (принимаю) him for his brother. 5. In the morning I usually (езжу на автобусе) to the University. 6. The father's help (длилась) until she got married. 7. It's time to (платить) debts [dets] (долги). 8. He (бросил) singing when he became old. 9. Why is the girl crying? – The mother (перевязывает) the daughter's finger. 10. Yesterday Joe (пролил) some paint on the carpet. 11. When did you (ушибла) your arm? 12. I can't wash up the dishes today. I (обожгла) my hand. 13. He could easily (угадать) the right answer.

**Ex. 6.** Find in the text and translate the following words and phrases. Use them in the sentences below.



Стать художником; обещающе (наречие); говорить о музыке; пожениться; несколько дней спустя; преподавать; попросить; нежно; смеяться; проливать; действительно/на самом деле; сказать правду; смотреть; подозревать.

1. Джо нежно посмотрел на свою жену. 2. Он хотел стать знаменитым художником. 3. Несколько дней спустя он продал свою первую картину.

4. Она мечтала преподавать музыку. 5. Осенью они собирались пожениться. 6. Она не подозревала, что Джо не берет уроки рисования. 7. По вечерам они говорили о музыке. 8. Его слова звучали (to sound) обещающе. 9. Она смотрела на свою подругу и смеялась. 10. У него действительно не было денег купить эту картину. 11. Дети часто проливают чай на скатерть (a tablecloth). 12. Я попросила подругу сказать мне правду.

**Ex. 7.** Match the words in column A with those in column B to form a phrase.

| A            | B                         |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| 1. paint     | a) lessons                |
| 2. become    | b) shirts                 |
| 3. study     | c) some milk              |
| 4. leave for | d) pictures               |
| 5. give      | e) the truth              |
| 6. spill     | f) about art              |
| 7. iron      | g) London                 |
| 8. tell      | h) under a famous painter |
| 9. speak     | i) a pianist              |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

**Ex. 8.** Translate the following words and idiomatic expressions. Use them in the translation below.



*Take care of; give lessons; give up; hurt; tell the truth; happen (to); pay attention to*

1. Врачи посоветовали ему бросить курить. 2. Мой друг даёт уроки по информатике. 3. Пора (It's time) сказать правду о своей работе. 4. Он не хочет заботиться о своем младшем (younger) брате. 5. Вчера он опять обидел меня. 6. Она уделяет много внимания гостям. 7. В субботу что-то случилось с моей машиной, и я не смог поехать за город.

**Ex. 9.** Translate the sentences into Russian paying attention to the meaning of the verb "take".

1. We are going to take a flat in London. 2. Do you take a bus or a train when you go home? 3. When I was in Paris I was taking a lot of pictures. 4. You

never take my advice. 5. Did you take your medicine? 6. The city was taken by the enemy. 7. She took his arm and led him across the road. 8. Jane took the second place in the competition. 9. He never takes part in arguments. 10. If you take 5 from 7 you get 2. 11. He took all my money. 12. He took the news calmly. 13. Take the second road on the left. 14. She always takes lessons before examinations. 15. Do you take me for a child? 16. I forgot to take your temperature in the morning. 17. I'm sorry, I was rude; I take back what I said. 18. It took a lot of time to paint the outside of the house.

**Ex. 10.** Translate the following sentences using:



*happen to...* – случайно оказаться; случиться так, что ...

- ☐ How did you **happen to** be there? – Как ты оказался там?
- ☐ I **happened to** meet him at the theatre. – а) Я случайно встретил его в театре. б) Случилось так, что я встретил его в театре.

1. Они случайно оказались в одной (the same) студии. 2. Случилось так, что Джо и Дилия встретились в Нью-Йорке. 3. Джо и Дилия, оказываются, познакомились в студии. 4. Она случайно оказалась там, когда мы приехали. 5. Он случайно оказался в парке. 6. Ты, случайно, не знаешь генеральскую дочку? 7. Он случайно оказался в прачечной, когда Дилия обожгла руку. 8. Случилось так, что меня не было дома (be out), когда ты звонил. 9. Когда я позвонил (call), он случайно оказался дома.

**Ex. 11.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

### to become – to come



*“become”*

1. grow to be, begin to be – становиться
  - ☐ He **became** a doctor.
  - ☐ He **has become** a famous man.
2. happen – случаться
  - ☐ What **will become** of the children if their father loses his job?
3. suit – подходить (к внешности)
  - ☐ This dress really **becomes** her.

*“come”* – move to a place – приходить, прибывать, идти (к) ... ..

- ☐ **Come** here!
- ☐ **Are** you **coming** to the party?
- ☐ The train **came** to the station at 5.

1. Christmas is ... soon.
2. The sky again ..... cloudy.

3. Her coat ..... rather old-fashioned.
4. She is ..... to the dance.
5. It ..... clear that he was lying.
6. My work is ..... more and more interesting.
7. I recognized him as soon as he ..... towards me through the door.
8. What will ..... of the boy if he fails his examinations?
9. The train ..... slowly into the station.
10. My new blouse does not ..... me.

### good – well



*“good”* (adj)

1. having the right qualities – доброкачественный, хороший

☐ a **good** fire; a **good** soil

2. efficient, competent – умелый, искусный

☐ a **good** programmer/driver

**be good at** (mathematics, etc.) – хорошо знать/владеть чем-либо

☐ He **is good at** programming.

3. pleasing, advantageous – хороший, приятный

☐ It's **good** news.

4. Запомните выражения:

a) *It's good for you (to do smth)...* – Вам полезно (делать что-либо) ...

b) *It's not good for you (to do smth)...* – Вам вредно (делать что-либо) ...

☐ Sun is **good** for you.

*“well”* (adv) – in a right or satisfactory manner – хорошо

☐ The children behaved **well**.

☐ He is a **well**-known painter.

1. The view of the garden is very ..... from the window.
2. Peter can... understand ... the enthusiasm of huge crowds at stadiums.  
He is a football fan.
3. She is ... ..prepared for the test. She is such a ..... student.
4. She looks ..... after a long journey.
5. The test is ... ..done. You are a ..... researcher.
6. It is a ... ..known fact that this resort is ..... for health.
7. Everybody likes ..... news.
8. We deserve a ..... rest after so much hard work.
9. It isn't ..... for you to have everything you want.
10. We met this ... ..dressed young man at the meeting.
11. It is ..... for him to go in for sport.

**Ex. 12.** Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Delia was going to teach music ..... a general's daughter. 2. Joe left ..... New York when he became twenty. 3. The young people met ..... a studio. 4. He wanted to give ..... lessons and begin to work. 5. A number ..... students spoke ..... composers, painters and many other things. 6. Delia was studying ..... a famous pianist. 7. Joe went ..... Central Park to paint pictures. 8. The general's daughter spilt milk ..... her hand. 9. ..... a week Joe sold one picture and brought home some money. 10. Delia came home ..... her hand bandaged. 11. Joe worked ..... the machine-room ..... the same laundry.

**Ex. 13.** Translate the following sentences into Russian paying special attention to the use of the temporal connectives and transitional phrases.

(For reference see Appendix 7)

1. They'll be here soon. *Meanwhile*, let's have a cup of coffee. 2. She had her supper and *then* went to bed. 3. *At long last* we found out what had really happened. 4. *Initially*, she didn't like the plan, but *afterwards* she changed her mind. 5. He tried many times to pass the examination, and *in the end* he succeeded. 6. He will be here *in a while*. 7. He wanted to listen to his story *from the very beginning* once again. 9. Just wait a little and *later* I'll help you.

**Ex. 14.** Translate the parts of the following sentences using the temporal connectives and transitional phrases.

(For reference see Appendix 7)

1. When Joe was twenty he left for New York *наконец-то*. 2. The relatives gave Delia some money and *вскоре* she went to New York. 3. They fell in love *с самого начала*. 4. *Вначале* they took lessons but *впоследствии* they had to give up the lessons. 5. Delia told her husband that she would teach music. *Тем временем* she worked in one big laundry. 6. *В конце концов* Delia told the truth to her husband. 7. Joe took her hand in his and *затем* asked what had happened.



## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 15.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. To make both ends meet. *Сводить концы с концами*.
2. A light purse is a heavy curse. *Легкий кошелек – тяжелое проклятие*.

**Ex. 16.** Retell the text according to the plan.

- I. Joe and Delia meet in the studio.
- II. Joe and Delia get married.
- III. Joe and Delia have to give up the lessons.
- IV. Delia begins to work.
- V. Joe paints his pictures in Central Park.
- VI. Joe and Delia have to tell the truth.

**Ex. 17.** Give the gist of the story in three-four sentences.

**Ex. 18.** Tell the story as if you were:

- a) Joe;
- b) Delia.

**Ex. 19.** Now when you've read the story, could you change its title?

**Ex. 20.** Topics for discussion and essays.

1. What impression do you form of a) Joe; b) Delia?
2. Sacrifice or Love? Do you approve of Joe's and Delia's idea to give up their lessons?
3. Have you ever heard or known about such love before?

**Ex. 21.** Give a free translation of the text.

### **Дары волхвов**

*по О. Генри*

Один доллар восемьдесят семь центов. Делла пересчитала (count) три раза. Завтра Рождество, а у неё только один доллар восемьдесят семь центов на подарок Джиму! Долгие месяцы она сэкономила (save) каждый цент, но расходы (expenses) оказались больше, чем она думала. Много часов она провела, придумывая (plan) что-нибудь особенное для её Джима.

Делла стояла у окна и грустно смотрела на улицу. Вдруг она бросилась (rush) к зеркалу. Глаза её сверкали. Она быстро распустила (pull down) волосы<sup>1</sup>.

Необходимо сказать, что у четы Диллингхем было два сокровища (possessions). Они были их гордостью. Одно – золотые часы Джима,



унаследованные от деда и отца, другое – прекрасные длинные волосы Деллы. Делла стояла перед зеркалом. Ее волосы блестели, переливались (ripple) и спускались ниже колен (reach below her knee). Потом она снова их подобрала (do up) и побежала вниз (down the stairs) на улицу. Она остановилась у вывески: «Изделия (goods) из волос».

– Вы купите мои волосы? – спросила она.

– Снимите шляпу, – ответила мадам.

Она посмотрела на волосы и сказала: – Двадцать долларов.

Следующие два часа Делла рыскала по магазинам (ransack the stores) и искала подарок для Джима. Наконец она нашла. Это была платиновая цепочка для часов (platinum fob chain). Она была достойна (be worth of) Джима и его часов. Делла заплатила двадцать один доллар и поспешила домой. Она приготовила ужин и стала ждать Джима с работы. Он никогда не опаздывал. Вскоре она услышала его шаги. Дверь отворилась, Джим вошел. Его глаза остановились на (fix upon) Делле. Он молча смотрел на неё.

Делла подошла к нему.

– Джим, милый, – закричала она, – не смотри на меня так (that way)! Я остригла волосы (have one's hair cut off) и продала их. Я должна была что-нибудь подарить (give smb a present) тебе к (for) Рождеству. Они опять отрастут (grow out). Ты ведь не сердишься (be angry with) на меня, правда? Посмотри на мой подарок (gift)! Он такой чудесный!

И Делла показала ему цепочку для часов.

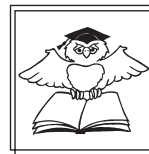
Через некоторое время Джим вышел из оцепенения (wake out of trance). Он достал из кармана сверток и дал его Делле. Это был его подарок для Деллы к Рождеству. Когда она раскрыла сверток, она увидела набор гребней (the set of combs). Она всегда хотела их иметь, но они были очень дорогие.

– Делла, – сказал Джим, – Я продал часы, чтобы купить тебе эти гребни.

### Note:

<sup>1</sup> волосы (в русск. яз. – мн. ч.) – hair (в англ. яз. – ед. ч.) – о правилах употребления этого слова см. стр. 26.

□ Her hair **is** beautiful.



## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### Questions and Negatives

#### Вопросительные и отрицательные предложения

С точки зрения построения вопроса и отрицания все глаголы можно разделить на две группы:

I. Глаголы, образующие вопрос путем простого изменения порядка слов в предложении.

II. Глаголы, которым для образования вопроса и отрицания требуется вспомогательный глагол.

#### I. Глаголы, образующие вопрос путем простого изменения порядка слов — выдвигания глагола на место перед подлежащим

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>be</b> (am, is, are, was, were)<br><b>be</b> working<br><br><b>be</b> done<br><b>have</b> (has, had) только для Perfect Tenses* | <input type="checkbox"/> He <b>is</b> a student. – <b>Is</b> he a student?<br><input type="checkbox"/> They <b>are working</b> now. – <b>Are</b> they <b>working</b> now?<br><input type="checkbox"/> It <b>is</b> well done. – <b>Is</b> it well done?<br><input type="checkbox"/> They <b>have finished</b> the work. – <b>Have</b> they <b>finished</b> the work? |
| <b>Can, could, may, must, will, would, shall, should</b>   | <input type="checkbox"/> He <b>can</b> swim well. – <b>Can</b> he swim well?<br><input type="checkbox"/> We <b>must</b> come at 5. – <b>Must</b> I come at 5?<br><input type="checkbox"/> They <b>will</b> go to the country tomorrow. – <b>Will</b> they go to the country tomorrow?  |
| Отрицательные предложения образуются путем добавления частицы <b>not</b> к соответствующей форме глагола                           | <input type="checkbox"/> He <b>was not (wasn't)</b> at home at that time.<br><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>has not (hasn't)</b> come yet.<br><input type="checkbox"/> You <b>may not (mayn't)</b> leave the camp after sunset.  |

\* Глагол **have** в значении *иметь, быть вынужденным*, а также в составе устойчивых выражений типа **have dinner, have a rest**, etc. образует вопрос с помощью вспомогательного глагола **do (does, did)** соответственно)

- ☐ **Does** she **have** a car?
- ☐ **Do** you **have** to go to the library to find the book?
- ☐ **Do** you **have** any money?
- ☐ **Do** you **have** to get up early every day?

- ☐ What time **do** you **have lunch**?
- ☐ **Did** you **have a walk** this morning?

Вопрос такого типа называется **общим вопросом** (general question) и предполагает краткий положительный или отрицательный ответ.

- ☐ **Is** he sleeping? — Yes, he **is**/No, he **is not**.
- ☐ **Do** you have a dog? — Yes, I **do**/No, I **don't**.

**Ex. 22.** Ask questions according to the model. Make use of the words in brackets.

**Model 1** – Masha's Russian. (John)  
– *Is John Russian too?*

1. Jane's pretty. (Mary). 2. These boys are students. (those girls). 3. This kitten is funny. (that puppy). 4. I'm happy. (he). 5. We are busy. (they). 6. St.Petersburg is a beautiful city. (Moscow).

**Model 2** – She has a daughter. (her sister)  
– *Does her sister have a daughter?*

1. I have little milk in my glass. (Paul). 2. London has many good museums. (Liverpool). 3. This artist has few pictures. (that artist). 4. That doctor has many patients. (this doctor). 5. We have a computer. (You). 6. Towns have many places of interest. (villages).

**Model 3** – I have to pass exams.  
– *Do you have to pass exams?*

1. He has to meet his mother. 2. They had to send a telegram. 3. You have to answer my question. 4. I have to help her. 5. She had to go there. 6. We have to visit our director.

**Model 4** – He is working in the garden.  
– *Is he working in the garden?*

1. I'm writing a letter. 2. He is locking the door. 3. She is smoking again. 4. It is raining. 5. We are cooking dinner. 6. He is brushing his shoes. 7. The tourists are looking at the picture.

**Model 5** – You can go now.  
– *Can you go now?*

1. We can buy new furniture here. 2. She can buy a dress in the new department. 3. He can go there by bus. 4. She can lend me a book by O. Wilde. 5. They can call us now. 6. I can take you to the airport.

- Model 6** – I must stay here.  
– *Must I stay here?*

1. He must write a letter to his parents. 2. We must borrow some money from him. 3. She must answer immediately. 4. They must sign the contract. 5. You must believe him. 6. We must remember his address.

- Model 7** – We have ordered a taxi.  
– *Have you ordered a taxi?*

1. I have forgotten her address. 2. He has locked the garage. 3. They have decorated the hall. 4. He has received the prize. 5. She had bought a new flat. 6. We have seen the film.

**Ex. 23.** Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

- Model 1** – Have you been to Chicago? (London).  
– *No, I haven't been there. But I have been to London.*

1. Have you sent a letter to John? (a postcard). 2. Has he translated that poem? (a story). 3. Have you eaten the soup? (salad). 4. Has she washed up the pans? (the dishes). 5. Have they bought a new car? (a cottage). 6. Has she married Pete? (Jack).

- Model 2** – Is Gary still delivering the lecture?  
– *No, he isn't. He has already delivered it.*

1. Are you still going to tell him the truth? 2. Are they still repairing the flat? 3. Is she still cooking? 4. Is he still speaking to Mary? 5. Are you still discussing the film? 6. Are they still having their in breakfast?

- Model 3** – They are going to the country. (John; to invite).  
– *Will they invite John?*  
– *No, they won't.*

1. He is going to water flowers in the garden. (you; to help). 2. I'm going to visit the Hermitage. (Mary; to join). 3. She is going to see her friend. (her friend; to meet). 4. He is going to play the piano. (you; to sing). 5. She is going to wash the floor. (her daughter; to wax). 6. We are going to make a cake. (they; to help).

**Model 4**

- We went to Oxford last Sunday. (to have dinner).  
– Did you have dinner there?

1. She went to the country a month ago. (to have a rest). 2. I slept well last night. (to have a dream). 3. We went to a restaurant the day before yesterday. (to have a good time). 4. He was at the University in the morning. (to have a lecture). 5. They were in the office after work. (to have a meeting). 6. She went to bed at 9 yesterday. (to sleep). 7. I felt sick two days ago. (to take a temperature).

**Ex. 24.** Translate the following questions from Russian into English. Give negative answers.

1. Джо был с юга?
2. Он мечтал стать великим пианистом?
3. Джо и Дилия жили в большой квартире?
4. Плата за уроки была низкая?
5. У Джо и Дилии были деньги платить за уроки?
6. Могли они найти деньги, чтобы заплатить за уроки?
7. Продал Джо свою картину?
8. Дилия действительно учила музыке дочку генерала?
9. Смогла Дилия сказать правду Джо?
10. Пролила Клементина соус на руку Дилии?
11. Дилия хотела, чтобы Джо знал правду?
12. Джо был в прачечной, когда Дилия обожгла руку?

---

**II. Глаголы, которым для образования вопроса требуется вспомогательный глагол. Эти глаголы имеют форму:**

---

| Глаголы типа     |               |               | Отрицательная форма                         |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---|
| I, you, we, they | <b>work</b>   | ⇒ <b>do</b>   | <b>don't</b>                                |
| she, he, it      | <b>works</b>  | ⇒ <b>does</b> | <b>doesn't + глагол</b> (в начальной форме) |
| все лица         | <b>worked</b> | ⇒ <b>did</b>  | <b>didn't</b>                               |

---

## Порядок слов в вопросительном предложении

| Вопросительное слово* | Вспомогательный глагол | Подлежащее  | Сказуемое в начальной форме | Второстепенные члены предложения |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Who*                  | —                      | —           | <b>brought</b>              | the letter?                      |
| What(что)             | <b>do</b>              | you         | <b>have</b>                 | for breakfast?                   |
| When                  | <b>did</b>             | they        | <b>arrive</b>               | to Moscow?                       |
| Where                 | <b>does</b>            | your father | <b>work?</b>                |                                  |
| Why                   |                        |             |                             |                                  |
| How                   | <b>do</b>              | you         | <b>make</b>                 | it?                              |

\* Вопрос к подлежащему является исключением и совпадает по структуре с вопросом в русском языке (без вспомогательного глагола).

- ☐ Who **works** here? – Кто работает здесь?
- ☐ What **happened**? – Что случилось?
- ☐ Which **is** the best restaurant in the town?

Ответы на вопросы к подлежащему обычно даются в краткой форме.

- ☐ Who **is** standing at the window? – My sister **is**.
- ☐ Who **can** do it? – I **can**.

После вопросительных слов **what** (какой), **how many/much**, **whose**, **which of the** ставится соответствующее существительное.

- ☐ **How many brothers** do you have?
- ☐ **Whose answer** did you like best?
- ☐ **What books** do you usually read?
- ☐ **How much money** do you need?

Вопросы, начинающиеся с вопросительного слова (**where? how?** etc.) и требующие развернутого ответа, называются **специальными вопросами** (special questions).

- ☐ **What** story are you reading? – I am reading a short story by Maugham.

Разновидностью общего вопроса является **альтернативный вопрос** (alternative question).

- ☐ Is he a student **or** a teacher? He is very young. – He is our new teacher.

**Ex. 25.** Read the story and compose the dialogue between the Frenchman and the waiter.

### A Frenchman in England

A Frenchman was once travelling in England. He could speak English, but not very well. His vocabulary was not large.

One day he was eating in a small country hotel and he wanted to order some eggs. But he couldn't remember the word for eggs.

Suddenly, through the window, he saw a rooster walking in the yard. He immediately asked the waiter what the bird was called in English.

The waiter told him that it was called a rooster.

The Frenchman then asked what the rooster's wife was called.

The waiter told him that she was called a hen.

The Frenchman then asked what the hen's children were called.

The waiter told him that they were chickens. The Frenchman then asked what the chickens were called before they were born.

The waiter told him that they were called eggs.

"Fine!" said the Frenchman. "Please bring me two and a cup of coffee."

Do you think the Frenchman found a clever way out?<sup>1</sup>

#### Note:

<sup>1</sup> found a clever way out – нашел удачный выход из положения

**Ex. 26.** Ask questions according to the model.

#### Model 1

There is a lake not far from the town. (rivers)

*Are there any rivers there?*

1. There are plenty of apples on the trees this year. (plums)
2. There is a good story in the book. (fairy tales)
3. There are nice curtains in the room. (carpet)
4. There is a vacant single room. (double room)
5. There are many books about this historical place. (films)
6. There is a colour TV set in the room. (some pictures)
7. There are a lot of wardens in the Tower. (visitors)

#### Model 2

His father has a swim every morning.

*Does he have a swim every morning?*

1. Bill has a glass of milk in the evening.

2. The children have a walk in the park every day.
3. Mary always has a good time at the party.
4. They have a party every Sunday.
5. She has a shower in the mornings.
6. He has a high temperature.
7. They have a serious talk every evening.
8. We have a good idea.

**Ex. 27.** Ask the questions indicated in brackets.

**Model**

He lives in Kiev. (Where?) *Where does he live?*

1. She usually goes to the theatre alone. (where?)
2. I generally go to bed late at 1 a.m. (when?)
3. He returned home late yesterday. (who?)
4. She has coffee twice a day. (how often?)
5. He prefers watching educational programmes. (what programmes?)
6. I try to follow his advice. (whose advice?)
7. Jane works as a manager. (who?)
8. I go to work at 8 o'clock. (what time?)
9. He visits the Hermitage very often because he likes to see the pictures. (why?)
10. They come to London by car. (how?)
11. We study computers. (what?)
12. Every day she has a date. (what?)
13. He needs a lot of money to buy a computer. (how much?)
14. St. Petersburg is the most beautiful city in the world. (which?)
15. She has a few friends to help her. (how many?)
16. They go to Komarovo on weekends. (where?/when?)
17. He learns German and I learn French. (who?)

**Ex. 28.** Make up questions to which the following sentences might be the answers.

**I**

1. This box is large.
2. Charles can sing this song.
3. He wants that bag.
4. The children have a walk in the park every day.
5. They spent the holidays in the mountains.
6. He is working at present.
7. They have finished the work.
8. It was snowing hard all day yesterday.
9. He will repair the TV tomorrow.
10. She speaks English well.
11. He has a toothache.
12. I have a haircut every month.





1. Joe was from the Middle West. 2. He painted his first picture when he was six. 3. Delia played the piano rather promisingly. 4. They had no more money to pay the teachers. 5. Delia had to give music lessons. 6. After a week Joe brought home some money. 7. The gentleman was going to buy some pictures. 8. Delia could not get any pupils. 9. Delia didn't want Joe to give up his lessons. 10. One of the girls burned Delia's hand with an iron. 11. Joe had to send bandages for a girl in the laundry. 12. Joe worked in the machine-room of the same laundry.

**Ex. 29.** Translate these questions from Russian into English.

1. Кто говорит по телефону?
2. Где живут твои друзья?
3. Как зовут этого музыканта?
4. Какие книги ты любишь читать?
5. Ты сейчас занят?
6. Сколько времени ты проводишь в библиотеке?
7. Что случилось с компьютером?
8. Какие книги ты читал в детстве?
9. Ты знаешь голландский язык?
10. Какой язык ты хочешь изучить?
11. Когда ты можешь уехать в отпуск?
12. Почему он хотел вернуться?
13. Зачем я должна прощать его?
14. Где ты хочешь работать?
15. Чьи песни ты любишь петь?
16. Что ты думаешь о вечеринке?
17. Где был его сын неделю тому назад?
18. Ты узнал его новый адрес?

### **Disjunctive Questions** **Разделительные вопросы**

Разделительный вопрос представляет собой **повествовательное предложение + краткий общий вопрос**.

Задавая разделительный вопрос, говорящий ожидает получить подтверждение своим словам (*не правда ли? не так ли? да?*).

Краткий общий вопрос строится по законам образования общего вопроса, выбор вспомогательного глагола зависит от глагола-сказуемого повествовательного предложения (see pp. 60, 61).

### Структура вопроса/ответа

Ответ на вопрос также зависит от того, является ли повествовательное предложение утвердительным или отрицательным.

| Повествовательное предложение   | Краткий общий вопрос                                   | Ответ  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
|   |  | Согласие   | Несогласие  |
| <b>Утвердительное</b>   | <b>Отрицательный</b>                                   |  |   |
| She is very busy,<br>You can swim,<br>Peter works hard,<br>Your sister went to Kiev,  | isn't she?<br>can't you?<br>doesn't he?<br>didn't she? | Yes, she is.<br>Yes, I can.<br>Yes, he does.<br>Yes, she does. | No, she isn't.<br>No, I can't.<br>No, he doesn't.<br>No, she doesn't. |
| <b>Отрицательное</b>  | <b>Положительный</b>                                   |  |   |
| You won't go to Moscow,<br>He hasn't finished his work,<br>You shouldn't stay in bed, | will you?<br>has he?<br>should you?                    | No, I won't.<br>No, he hasn't.<br>No, I shouldn't.             | Yes, I will.<br>Yes, he has.<br>Yes, I should.                        |

**Ex. 30.** Add question-tags and give short answers according to the models.

#### Model 1

You've got a brother.

*You've got a brother, **haven't you?** – **Yes, I have.** (**No, I haven't.**)*

1. You've got little sugar in your tea.
2. He's got plenty of time to spare.
3. You've got a kitten.
4. She's got a little baby.
5. Your brother's got a wife and two children.
6. We've got a lot of cups here.

**Model 2**

There's a good film on TV tonight.

– *There's a good film on TV tonight, **isn't there?***

– **Yes, there is. (No, there isn't).**

1. There are a lot of people at the stadium.
2. There's a bus at the bus stop.
3. There are a few changes in the text.
4. There are plenty of glasses in the cupboard.
5. There isn't anything on the plate.
6. There isn't anybody in the room.

**Model 3**

a) I have to ask for permission to leave.

*I **have to** ask for permission to leave, **don't I?***

b) He mustn't take the books in your absence.

*He **mustn't** take the books in your absence, **must** he?*

1. I must write to her at once.
2. The man has to return the documents.
3. You don't have to paint the doors green.
4. I must help Mary to cook dinner.
5. They must tell their friends about the plan.
6. They have to prepare it for Sunday.

**Ex. 31.** Translate the questions from Russian into English.

1. Джо уехал в Нью-Йорк в 20 лет, не так ли? 2. Дилия мечтала стать знаменитой пианисткой, не правда ли? 3. Джо и Дилия поженились, не так ли? 4. Они были счастливы, правда? 5. У них не было больше денег платить за уроки, не так ли? 6. Они не могли брать частные уроки, не правда ли? 7. Дилия должна была давать уроки музыки, не так ли? 8. Джентльмен собирался купить ещё одну картину, не правда ли? 9. Дилия была очень рада, правда? 10. Она не могла сказать правду Джо, не так ли? 11. Джо должен был (had to) догадаться, что она не давала уроки музыки, не так ли? 12. Дилия узнала, что Джо работал в той же прачечной, не так ли?

**Ex. 32.** Ask questions with question-tags on the text.

**Ex. 33.** Translate these jokes from Russian into English.

**1**

*Молодая жена:* Я хорошо готовлю, дорогой?

*Муж:* Я думаю, что прекрасно.

*Жена:* А какое из моих блюд тебе нравится больше всего?

*Муж:* Банка консервированной фасоли (a can of beans), дорогая.

**2**

– Ты разорвал (to break off) помолвку с Мэри?

– Да.

– Ты рассказал ей о своем богатом дяде?

– Да, теперь она моя тетя.

**3**

### Коротко и ясно

Один американец увидел объявление в газете о продаже фермы в отдаленном месте (remote area). Он написал в рекламное агентство и задал несколько коротких вопросов:

1. Кто владеет фермой?
2. Из чего она построена?
3. Какая почва?
4. Какая погода преобладает?
5. Какие животные там обитают?
6. Что является основной пищей?
7. Есть какие-нибудь друзья?

Ответ был даже короче вопросов. Он гласил: «Семья Могов; бревна; болота; туманы; лягушки; барашки; собаки».

**4**

Жена господина Рейна возвращается домой из магазина вся в слезах (in tears).

– Что случилось, дорогая?

– Это ужасно. У нашей соседки точно такое пальто, как у меня. Я этого не переживу (live through it).

– Уж не думаешь ли ты, что я должен купить тебе новое пальто?

– Но это все-таки будет гораздо дешевле (much cheaper), чем переезжать на новую квартиру, не так ли?

**5**

На последней лекции перед экзаменом профессор сказал:  
– Экзаменационные билеты сейчас в типографии у печатника. Есть какие-нибудь вопросы?  
После недолгой тишины голос с задних рядов (from the rear) спросил:  
– А кто печатник?

### **Some Noun Determiners and the Use of Articles** **Использование артикля, обусловленное некоторыми** **словами-определителями существительного**

Артикль **a/an** используется с исчисляемыми существительными после **such** (такой), **rather**, **quite** (довольно).

- ☐ She is **such a** kind girl.
- ☐ It is **quite a** warm day today.
- ☐ He is **rather a** dull person.

Определенный артикль **the** ставим перед такими определителями существительного как:

|              |              |  |
|--------------|--------------|--|
| <b>same</b>  | такой же     | <input type="checkbox"/> Again you're asking <b>the same</b> question.           |
| <b>wrong</b> | неправильный | <input type="checkbox"/> We went in <b>the wrong</b> direction.                  |
| <b>right</b> | правильный   | <input type="checkbox"/> He is not <b>the right</b> man for this job.            |
| <b>very</b>  | тот самый    | <input type="checkbox"/> At <b>the very</b> minute the door opened.              |
| <b>next</b>  | следующий    | <input type="checkbox"/> Who is <b>the next</b> on the list?                     |
| <b>last</b>  | последний    | <input type="checkbox"/> He has <b>the last</b> guest to leave.                  |
| <b>only</b>  | единственный | <input type="checkbox"/> It is <b>the only</b> book of its kind.                 |
| <b>whole</b> | целый        | <input type="checkbox"/> We spent <b>the whole</b> week sunbathing on the beach. |

**Ex. 34.** Supply *a* or *the*.

1. ... last thing I want is to hurt anyone. 2. The child gave ... wrong answer.  
3. That's rather ... silly question. 4. Is that ... right answer to the question. 5. She always must have ... last word. 6. He is quite ... good artist. 7. At ... very top of the tree there was a stork's nest. 8. I've never done such ... thing before. 9. It's ... last thing you would think of looking for. 10. He is not ... right man for this job. 11. ... very first thing you must do is to ring the police. 12. It was ... last straw (последняя капля). 13. ... next person to arrive late will be sent away.

14. She is such ... good teacher that the headmaster asked her not to leave.  
 15. He always wears shirts of ... same colour. 16. They swallowed ... whole biscuit. 17. It is ... wrong way of thinking. 18. She met ... same girl in two days.  
 19. ... next question I'd like to ask is rather ... routine one. I'm sure you are quite ... polite person and will answer ... only lady here.

**Ex. 35.** Translate the following sentences from Russian into English.

1. Как хорошо иметь такого трудолюбивого сына!
2. Библиотека – совершенно неподходящее (wrong) место в такой солнечный день.
3. Слон – довольно большое и сильное животное.
4. Когда будет подходящее время задать такой вопрос?
5. Вы тот самый человек, которого я хочу видеть.
6. Он забыл самый конец рассказа.
7. Это был единственный раз, когда она опоздала.
8. Ты обещаешь дать мне денег в следующий раз?
9. К сожалению, это неправильное решение.
10. Он задал совершенно ясный вопрос и ждал такого же ответа.
11. У нее была такая высокая температура, что она осталась дома на целый день.
12. Он такой трудолюбивый человек. Весь год он работал без выходных дней.
13. Новый Год – единственный праздник, когда не хочешь спать с вечера до самого утра.

**Ex. 36.** Translate the sentences into English paying attention to the use of articles with the italicized words.

1. *Единственной мечтой* Джо было стать знаменитым художником. 2. Я прошу выслушать мой рассказ до *самого конца*. 3. Он принял *неверное решение* (take a decision). 4. Это был *тот самый* художник, который рисовал портреты. 5. Диля была *последней ученицей* знаменитого пианиста. 6. На *следующий день* она пошла работать в прачечную. 7. *Целый день* он рисовал картины в Центральном парке. 8. Это *правильный ответ* на ваш вопрос? 9. Мужчина был *единственным покупателем* (customer). 10. Они случайно встретились в *той самой прачечной*, где работали. 11. Это *единственная картина* Рембрандта, которая мне нравится. 12. Я видел *такую же картину* в Эрмитаже (the Hermitage). 13. Она принимала участие в *последней выставке* (exhibition). 14. Он поехал домой на *следующем поезде*.

**Ex. 37.** Translate the jokes from Russian into English.

**1**

Молодой человек подошел к прилавку, где продавались открытки, и спросил:

- Есть у вас что-нибудь сентиментальное?
- Вот замечательная открытка, – ответила продавщица, – взгляните: «Единственной девушке, которую я люблю».
- Прекрасно, возьму четыре – нет – шесть таких.

**2**

### **Каков отец, таков и сын**

*Клиент:* Я слышал, мой сын должен (to owe) вам за костюм уже три года.

*Портной:* Да, сэр. Вы пришли заплатить за него?

*Клиент:* Нет, я бы хотел костюм для себя на тех же условиях (terms).

**3**

Двое мужчин едут в поезде. Один из них спрашивает другого:

- Вы едете на лекцию Брауна?
- Да, – ответил другой.
- Я хочу дать вам верный совет: не идите на лекцию. Я слышал, он такой плохой лектор.
- К сожалению, у меня единственный выход – идти на лекцию. Я тот самый Браун.

## **Revision**

**Ex. 38.** Supply *a* or *the*.

(For reference see p. 43–44)

1. I saw ... beautiful hat in the shop, but ... hat was too expensive for me to buy it. 2. We are going to write ... test in mathematics. ... test consists of fifteen tasks. 3. She has a new boy-friend. ... boy-friend is an artist. 4. They bought ... table. ... table is made of oak. 5. My mother baked ... cake yesterday. ... cake was very delicious and tasty. 6. She presented ... dictionary to me. ... dictionary gives 50.000 words. 7. We asked him ... question but ... question was difficult and he couldn't answer. 8. They are going to ... party this Saturday. I think we should buy something for ... party. 9. The boy put ... record on the gramophone. ... record was old. 10. Then I heard ... voice asking if I was in. ... voice was familiar. 11. He was listening to ... song on the radio. He liked ... song. 12. He carried ... wooden spade in his hands. ... spade was small.

**Ex. 39.** Supply the required articles in the following text. (**Revision**).

... man once built ... house for his dwelling. ... house was pretty, but very small. He invited ... friends to visit him, as he wanted them to see ... house.

... friends came and looked at ... house. All of them said something bad about it:

- ... front of ... house is very bad.
- There are not enough ... windows.
- ... windows are very small.
- ... roof is not ... good one.
- ... doors are too narrow.
- ... ceilings are too low.
- ... rooms are not big enough for anyone.

... man heard everything ... friends said about his home and then answered:

– Indeed, it may be true. ... house is small; but I have not enough true friends to fill even this small house.

**Ex. 40.** Translate the following sentences from Russian into English.

1. Вчера в театре я смотрел пьесу. Пьеса была очень смешная. 2. Я вошел в комнату и увидел незнакомую девушку. Девушка разговаривала с моей сестрой. 3. Я собираюсь на лекцию. Лекция будет в большом зале. 4. Осенью многие театры едут на фестиваль. Фестиваль проходит в Эдинбурге. 5. Он опять пишет новую книгу. Я надеюсь, книга будет, как всегда, интересной. 6. Мы купили новый телевизор. Экран телевизора очень большой и плоский. 7. После делового визита необходимо написать письмо. Письмо должно быть коротким и вежливым. 8. Мы едем на семинар в Японию. Семинар будет очень интересным. 9. Анна стояла на остановке с юношей. Юноша держал ее за руку. 10. Завтра я сдаю экзамен. Экзамен будет трудным. 11. Из окна автобуса я увидел мост. Я узнал мост. Мост находится недалеко от Тауэра. 12. Она показала мне картину. Картину подарила ей бабушка. 13. В комнате стояло пианино. Он сел поиграть. Пианино оказалось расстроенным. 14. Они попросили меня написать статью. Статья будет опубликована во французском журнале. Журнал очень популярный.



# GETTING KNOWN

(adapted)

*by D. H. Barber*



The latest book of my poems has not been selling very well – in fact 122 of my personal friends and relations tell me they’ve bought it, but the publishers say only 84 copies have been sold.

“The trouble is,” said Edith<sup>1</sup>, “that nobody has ever heard of you. What you need is a little advertisement<sup>2</sup>. Let people know that you exist and that you write poetry, and they will rush along to the libraries and ask for your latest book.”

“But I can’t just put an advertisement in the newspaper saying I’m a poet.”

Edith thought for a moment and then she said she had a bright idea.

“Why not put an advertisement in ‘The Times’<sup>3</sup>,” she said, “saying that you recommend as butler in a small family a man who has been in your employment for twenty years?”

“But I haven’t had anybody in my employment for twenty years,” I said. “And I’ve never kept a butler of any sort, as you know very well. And how can I sell more copies of my poems by pretending that I wanted to find work for a nonexistent butler who hasn’t been in my employment for twenty years?”

“You’re not very bright this morning,” said Edith. “Don’t you know that the most successful sort of advertisement is the sort that doesn’t look like an advertisement? You ought to do something like this.”

She got a piece of paper and a pen and wrote the following: “Mr L. Conkleshill<sup>4</sup>, the poet (author of Raspberry Bushes<sup>5</sup> and Other Poems), strongly recommends as butler in a small family his present head man, who has been with him for twenty years.”

“The idea is not bad,” I said. “but I refuse to do anything so dishonest. I absolutely forbid you to do it ...”

As a matter of fact I secretly rather liked the idea; and I thought that when I absolutely forbade Edith to do it, she would pay the money herself and send in the advertisement.

For some days, however, she did nothing, although I was careful to keep reminding her that I absolutely forbade her to send the advertisement.

Nearly always this sort of treatment produces the desired effect. Although I looked in “The Times” every morning, the advertisement didn’t

appear. Edith went away to stay with a sick aunt, and I forgot all about the matter.

Then came the event of The Man With The Dog.

He was a big man, and the dog was a big dog, and they both stood outside the front door and made noises at me.

"I'll take the money now," said the man in a bad-tempered voice.

"What money is this?" I said politely. "Something due for milk supplied?"

"Nonsense," said the man. "Two pounds I want for the dog."

"I don't want a dog," I said uncertainly. Ours was a lonely sort of road, and the man was a big sort of man, and it would perhaps be wiser to buy the dog.

"Don't want the dog!" said the man in an unpleasant voice.

At last I bought the dog for thirty shillings. I was weak, perhaps, but Edith had been saying for a long time that we ought to have a dog.

I gave the dog some meat and locked him in the kitchen, and went back to my poem. Then the bell rang again, and I found two men on the step, both with large dogs.

This time I didn't argue. I just shut the door and went and looked at myself in the glass. I was worried. Were the dogs real, or were they the result of that last glass of whisky?

I went up to my bedroom and looked down the long road that leads to the station. I could see six men with six dogs.

Then the solution of the problem came to me, and I looked at "The Lost and Found advertisements"<sup>6</sup> in "The Times". "Mr L. Conkleshill offers J2 reward for the return of faithful dog Ogo, who first awakened the ideas in Faithful Eyes in his new book of poems."

Edith said afterwards that I hadn't told her she mustn't put in an advertisement about a dog.

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Edith [ˈiːdɪθ]

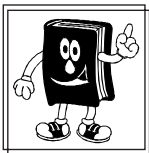
<sup>2</sup> advertisement (ad) [ədˈvɜːtɪsmənt] – рекламное объявление

<sup>3</sup> The Times – ежедневная лондонская газета

<sup>4</sup> Conkleshill [ˈkɒŋkləʃɪl]

<sup>5</sup> Raspberry Bushes [ˈrɑːzbəriˈbʊʃɪz]

<sup>6</sup> Lost and Found advertisements – специальная колонка объявлений об утерянных вещах



## I. VOCABULARY

### receive (v)

1. get – получать  
☐ When did you **receive** the letter?
2. welcome, entertain (guests) – принимать  
☐ Lady Snooks **receives** on Monday afternoons.

### rather ['rɑ:ðə] (adv) – somewhat – довольно

- ☐ This book is **rather** difficult for him.

### exist (v) [ɪg'zɪst] – be real – существовать

- ☐ Do you believe that life **exists** on Mars?

### existence (n) – существование

- ☐ He leads a happy **existence**.

### existent (adj) – существующий

### bright [braɪt] (adj)

1. shining – яркий  
☐ She loves **bright** colours.
2. clever, talented – умный, талантливый  
☐ He is a **bright** boy, he learns quickly.

### brightly (adv) – ярко

### see the bright side of things – видеть все в розовом свете

### forbid (v) (forbade, forbidden) – not allow – запрещать

- ☐ The parents **forbade** the girl to marry him.

### keep (v)

1. remain in a specific position or place – держаться, сохраняться  
☐ This autumn the weather **keeps** fine.
2. держать, удерживать  
☐ They **kept** him in prison for murder.  
☐ You may **keep** the book for a month.
3. continue doing smth – продолжать делать что-либо, поддерживать  
☐ He **kept** laughing the whole evening.
4. hold, possess – хранить, сохранять  
☐ She **kept** her things in order.

### keep in mind – запомнить

### remind (v) (of smb) cause to remember or think of smth – напоминать

- ☐ Please, **remind** me to post the letter.

### obey (v) – do what one is told – слушаться, повиноваться

- ☐ The children didn't **obey** the teacher.

### treat (v)

1. act or behave towards smb – относиться

☐ He **treats** his friends well.

2. consider – рассматривать, считать

☐ We'd better **treat** it as a joke.

3. give medical care – лечить

☐ Which doctors are **treating** her?

**treatment** (n) – 1) отношение; 2) лечение

**catch** (v) (caught)

1. capture, seize – поймать

☐ The police **caught** the thief.

2. be in time for – успеть

☐ We took a taxi and **caught** the 5 o'clock train.

**solve** (v) – find the answer, way out of – решать

☐ He helped me **to solve** the problem.

**offer** (v) – say what one wants to give/pay/exchange – предлагать

☐ They **offered** \$200,000 for the house.

(syn. **suggest, propose**)

### Mind the difference:

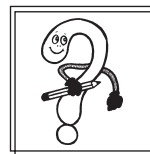
**offer** – smth real

☐ He **offered** them two tickets to the theatre.

**suggest** [səˈdʒest] – an idea; doing smth

☐ He **suggested** going to the country.

## II. COMPREHENSION

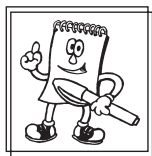


**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. How did the public receive the author's latest book?
2. How did Edith explain his failure?
3. What kind of advertisement did Edith advise him to put in "The Times"?
4. What objections did the author have to the plan?
5. What were the author's secret hopes?
6. Why did he get worried when he saw a man with a big dog on his doorstep?
7. What made the author think of looking up the Lost and Found advertisements in "The Times"?
8. Who put that advertisement in "The Times"?

**Ex. 2.** Translate the sentences from the text.

1. You are not very bright this morning.
2. Don't you know that the most successful sort of advertisement is the sort that doesn't look like an advertisement?
3. Nearly always this kind of treatment produces the desired effect.
4. Something due for milk supplied?
5. Ours was a lonely sort of road, and the man was a big sort of man.
6. Then the solution of the problem came to me.



### III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 3.** Give the translation and the three forms of the following verbs.

Buy, sell, hear, know, write, rush, put, say, look, mean, think, forbid, stand, come, tell, catch, ring, shut, go.

**Ex. 4.** Find in the text the equivalents for the following words and phrases. Use them in the sentences below.



*Фактически; издатели; вся беда в том, что; реклама; пусть люди узнают; рекомендовать в качестве; категорически запретить; не подчиниться указаниям; полагаться на кого-либо; событие; недовольным голосом; предлагать вознаграждение.*

1. Фактически никто никогда не слышал о таком поэте. 2. Издатели сказали ему, что продано только 84 экземпляра. 3. Вся беда в том, что мистер Конклешил ничего не понимал в рекламе. 4. Пусть люди узнают, что издана твоя книга. Тогда они будут спрашивать ее в магазинах и библиотеках. 5. Его рекомендовали как отличного издателя, но он ничего не смыслил (не знал) в рекламе. 6. Он категорически запретил своей жене посылать такое объявление. 7. Он знал, что жена не подчинится его указаниям. 8. Я ничего не слышал об этом событии. 9. Человек говорил недовольным голосом. Я понял, что он рассержен (angry). 10. Он предложил вознаграждение тому, кто найдет его собаку.

**Ex. 5.** Match the words in column A with the translation in column B.

| A                   | B                       |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. the latest book  | a. не повиноваться      |
| 2. the publishers   | b. притворяться         |
| 3. exist            | c. появляться           |
| 4. bright idea      | d. последняя книга      |
| 5. be in employment | e. замечательная идея   |
| 6. keep a butler    | f. отказываться         |
| 7. pretend          | g. отношение            |
| 8. refuse           | h. существовать         |
| 9. disobey          | i. издатели             |
| 10. treatment       | j. работать у кого-либо |
| 11. appear          | k. держать дворецкого   |
| 12. desired         | l. желаемый             |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |

**Ex. 6.** Translate the words in the brackets.

1. He (получил) a good education. 2. The idea (существует) only in the minds of poets. 3. The leaves on the trees are (ярко) green in spring. 4. He (видел все в розовом свете). 5. If your hands are cold, (держи) them in your pockets. 6. Please, (поддержи) the fire burning. 7. The hotel is now open (принять) guests. 8. He arrived very late last night or (довольно) early this morning. 9. The teacher (запретил) the students to use dictionaries during the test. 10. Will you (сохраните) these things safe for me? 11. She (хранила) all her papers in great order. 12. He (напоминает) me of his brother. 13. He could not (решить) the problem the teacher gave them. 14. You must (обращаться) them with great care. 15. We'd better (рассмотреть) the problem seriously and find (решение). 16. It was about midnight and I (предложил) going home. 17. I threw the ball to him and he (поймал) it. 18. I want (успеть) the 5 o'clock train. 19. How would you (лечить) a person ill with influenza? 20. She (предложила) me a cup of tea but I refused.

**Ex. 7.** Translate the sentences from English into Russian. Use a dictionary and study the phrases with the verb *keep*.

1. Who *keeps house* for you? 2. That was a fine piece of work! *Keep it up!* 3. You can always depend on her to *keep a secret*. 4. *Promises* are usually made to *be kept*, not broken. 5. Where *have you been keeping yourself*? I haven't seen you for ages! 6. Surprisingly enough he *kept his head*. He never gave way to fear or panic. 7. The neighbour promised to *keep an eye* on our place while we were away. 8. It's a constant wonder to me how he *keeps* all those facts and figures *in his head*.

**Ex. 8.** Give a word for the definition.

1. a clever, talented person
2. hold in a definite place
3. find a way out of a difficulty
4. be in time for a bus, train
5. do what you are told
6. behave in a definite way toward smb
7. propose smth, give smth
8. capture smb
9. not allow to do smth
10. live, to be real

**Ex. 9.** Translate the following sentences into English using the words *keep*, *treat*, *bright*.

1. Она хранила свои вещи в старом сундуке (the trunk). 2. Не держите руки в карманах. 3. Вы сохраните эти вещи для меня? 4. Ребенок продолжал плакать всю ночь. 5. Сильный ветер продолжал свирепствовать (дуть) несколько дней. 6. Врачи держали его в больнице целый месяц. 7. Он прекрасно относится к своей приемной дочери. 8. Его лечили от гриппа, а у него было воспаление легких. 9. Лечение было неправильным, и он долго болел. 10. Я могу рассматривать эти слова как угрозу (threat). 11. Для нее не существует проблем, она видит все в розовом свете. Это значит, или что она оптимист, или что она не очень умна. 12. Туземцы (natives) одеваются в очень яркие одежды. 13. Огонь в камине (fireplace) ярко горел. 14. Я не получил вашу телеграмму. 15. Он пришел довольно поздно вчера. 16. Листья и трава весной ярко-зеленые. 17. Ты веришь, что феи (fairies) существуют? 18. Она довольно умна и талантлива. 19. Мы любим принимать гостей. 20. Он получил хорошее образование. 21. Отель открыт и принимает гос-

тей. 22. Мы не можем существовать без воды и еды. 23. Солнце сегодня светит ярко. 24. Это напоминает мне о нашем детстве в деревне. 25. Вы солдат и должны повиноваться моему приказу (order). 26. Он задержался на работе (detain) и не успел на последний поезд. 27. Папа всегда помогает мне решать задачи. 28. Мне предложили работу в Японии.

**Ex. 10.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

### offer – suggest

(For reference see I. Vocabulary)

1. He ... to help me.
2. I ... going to the theatre.
3. What did you ... to the manager?
4. They ... them the car for \$20,000.
5. Can you ... where we could have dinner?

### last – latest



*“latest”* – recent, that recently was – последний (самый новый, самый свежий)

- ☐ Mr Green’s **latest** novel (the mostly recently published). Mr Green said that his **latest** novel will be his **last** (he will write no more).
- ☐ The **latest** news/fashions.

*“last”* – coming after all others in time order – последний, прошлый

- ☐ The **last** month of the year; the **last** Sunday in June; The **last** time I saw you; the **last** minute.

1. December is the ... month of the year.
2. You looked wonderful when I saw you ... .
3. We met the ... Sunday of every month.
4. Have you heard the ... news?
5. He was the ... person to arrive.
6. Have you got the ... edition of the book?

### alone – lonely



*“alone”* (adv) – without the company or help; один; только сам

- ☐ The house stands on the hill all **alone**.
- ☐ Smith **alone** knows what happened.

*“lonely”* (adj) – without companions; sad or melancholy – одинокий

- ☐ We saw a **lonely** looking girl.
- ☐ I feel **lonely** lately.
- ☐ They lived in a **lonely** mountain village.



1. He likes travelling ...
2. We met nobody on the road but a ... traveller.
3. You can't lift the piano ...
4. I feel ... lately.
5. They spend their summer vacations in a ... mountain village.
6. Leave me ... , I'd like to think about it.

**Ex. 11.** Translate into English using *last* or *latest* according to the sense.

1. Вы слушали последние известия по радио? 2. Список неправильных глаголов находится на последней странице учебника. 3. Показ последних мод состоится во вторник. 4. Он истратил последние деньги на букет цветов. 5. Теперь бы только успеть на последний автобус! 6. Это была ее последняя надежда. 7. «Вы читали последнюю повесть молодого автора?» «Вы имеете в виду ту, что была напечатана в последнем номере журнала «Юность»?» 8. Как всегда, последнее слово осталось за ним. 9. Машина сделана по последнему слову техники. 10. Это была наша последняя встреча.

**Ex. 12.** Translate into English using *suggest* and *offer* according to the sense (For reference see Vocabulary).

1. Насколько я знаю, после окончания института ему предложили очень интересную работу. 2. Председатель комиссии предложил сначала внимательно изучить все документы, а затем уже начать обсуждение. 3. На собрании было предложено шире использовать новые методы работы на практике. 4. Врач предложил ему прийти через несколько дней для вторичного осмотра. 5. Могу я вам предложить чашку кофе? 6. Молодой ученый предложил очень интересное третье решение задачи. 7. Он предложил пойти в кино.

**Ex. 13.** Translate the following into English using *accept*, *receive* or *take* according to the sense.



*accept* – to receive a gift/invitation/proposal

- ☐ He asked her to marry him and she **accepted** his proposal.

*take* – accept, receive money, decision, medicine

*take to heart* – to worry about smth

- ☐ Will you **take** \$3,000 for the car?

- ☐ You must **take** us as you find us.

1. В тот вечер он *принимал* гостей у себя в кабинете.
2. Я не могу *принять* вашего объяснения.
3. Не *принимайте* все так близко к сердцу!
4. Лекарство следует *принимать* по чайной ложке три раза в день перед едой.
5. В какой же институт его *приняли*?
6. Нельзя *принимать* всерьез все, что он говорит.
7. Я *принял* его приглашение.
8. Она *приняла* его предложение руки и сердца.
9. Решение было, наконец, *принято*.
10. Нас всегда очень хорошо *принимали* в этом доме.

**Ex. 14.** Fill in prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

1. Nobody has ever heard ... you. 2. People don't go ... the bookseller to ask ... your latest book. 3. She suggested putting an advertisement ... the newspaper. 4. She thought ... a moment and said she had ... an idea. 5. You should say that you recommend ... a butler a man who has been ... your service ... twenty years. 6. I can't sell books ... pretending that I am looking for a job for a nonexistent butler. 7. It doesn't look ... advertisement. 8. I repeated my orders several times ... a day. 9. Edith went ... to stay ... a sick aunt. 10. I bought the dog ... thirty shillings. 11. I wanted to catch ... the 5 o'clock train. 12. I looked ... myself ... the glass, I was worried. 13. I went ... to my bedroom and looked ... the window.

**Prepositions of Space**  
**Предлоги, указывающие**  
**местонахождение предмета**

|                              |  |   |
|------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>AT</b>                    | <b>at</b> the bus-stop<br><b>at</b> the table/door<br><b>at</b> the window/blackboard  | about a point in space  |
|                              | <b>at</b> the station/airport<br><b>at</b> school/college/the lesson<br><b>at</b> home/work<br><b>at</b> the cinema/restaurant<br><b>at</b> the office/plant | in a public place or institution  |
|                              | <b>at</b> 5, Weston Road<br><b>at</b> Mike's (house)   | giving an address with a house number or someone's place  |
| <b>IN</b>                    | <b>in</b> Spain/ <b>in</b> Europe<br><b>in</b> the South of France<br><b>in</b> the park/ <b>in</b> the country  | <b>in</b> a country, region   |
|                              | <b>in</b> London/ <b>in</b> York<br><b>in</b> a village  | <b>in</b> a city/town/village   |
|                              | <b>in</b> a little box/ <b>in</b> the house  | inside something  |
| <b>ON</b>                    | <b>on</b> the sofa/grass/page 7<br><b>on</b> the top of the TV set   | <b>on</b> the surface of something  |
|                              | <b>on</b> the A34 road<br><b>on</b> the north coast<br><b>on</b> the Volga   | <b>on</b> a "line" (road, river, railway, coastline)  |
| <b>AT</b><br>or<br><b>IN</b> | <b>at</b> ⇒ a public place<br><b>in</b> ⇒ inside a building<br><b>at</b> ⇒ with a house number<br><b>in</b> ⇒ just the name of the street                    | <input type="checkbox"/> I had a hard day <b>at</b> the office.<br><input type="checkbox"/> I left my coat <b>in</b> the office.<br><input type="checkbox"/> The University is <b>at</b> 25, Booth Street.<br><input type="checkbox"/> They live <b>in</b> Garden Lane. |

**Ex. 15.** Complete the following sentences using *at*, *in* or *on*.

1. They live *in* Coronation Street *at* number 32. 2. Jack works ... Oxford University. 3. I've left my briefcase ... the office. I think I left it ... the chair ... the corner. 4. Meet me ... the bus stop ... the end of Bristol Road. 5. They live ... Seal, a small village ... the road to Folkestone<sup>1</sup>. 6. When we were ... the south we stayed ... a small hotel ... the coast. 7. My diary is ... the table ... the sitting room. 8. Sign your name ... the dotted line ... the last page. 9. Meet me ... the entrance to the Supermarket ... the High Street. 10. I've applied for a job ... The United Nations ... Geneva<sup>2</sup>. 11. Hello. This is Gina. I'm ... Athens<sup>3</sup> ... the Acropolis Hotel.

**Notes:**

<sup>1</sup> Folkestone ['foulkstən]

<sup>2</sup> Geneva [dʒɪ'ni:və]

<sup>3</sup> Athens ['æθɪnz]

## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE



**Ex. 16.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. A good beginning is half the battle. *Лиха беда начало.*  
A good beginning makes a good ending.
2. He laughs best who laughs last. *Хорошо смеется тот, кто смеется последним.*
3. A friend in need is a friend indeed. *Друг познается в беде.*

**Ex. 17.** Retell the story according to the outline below.

1. *The latest book of Mr Conkleshill's poems*  
(sell badly, publishers, buy, receive coldly, hear of him, need advertisement).
2. *Edith suggests a plan (to improve the sales)*  
(bright idea, put in an ad, exist, a successful sort of advertisement, doesn't look like, recommend a butler).
3. *Mr Conkleshill doesn't approve of the plan*  
(refuse, dishonest, throw away money, forbid, pay the money, send in the ad, obey orders, desired effect, save the money, appear, to stay with her aunt).

4. *The man with the dog*

(a big man, lonely road, bad-tempered, take the money, want money for the dog, buy the dog for, have a dog, more men with dogs, be worried, solution of the problem, "Lost & Found" ads, offer a reward for).

**Ex. 18.** Tell the story as if you were:

a) the author, b) his wife Edith, c) a man with a dog.

**Ex. 19.** Make up dialogues based on the following suggestions.

1. *Between Mr Conkleshill and his wife Edith*

(sell badly, publishers, hear of you, put an ad, recommend a butler, be in employment, pretend, be dishonest, forbid).

2. *Between Mr Conkleshill and the big man with a big dog*

(want the dog, take the money, buy the dog, come from Hampstead, long way).

**Ex. 20.** What do you know about Mr Conkleshill/Mrs Conkleshill? (occupation, family, character). Whom do you like best? Why?

**Ex. 21.** Topics for discussion and essays:

- 1) Does a writer need advertising?
- 2) Why shouldn't advertisement look like an advertisement?
- 3) What kind of ads do you like?
- 4) Why did Edith send the ad into the Times?
- 5) What would you do in that case?

**Ex. 22.** Give a free translation of the text.

**Acme<sup>1</sup>**

*по Дж. Голсуорси*

Когда я познакомился с Брюсом, ему было под 60, и он уже написал 15 книг. Он был талантлив, но писал о таких странных вещах, которые никого не интересовали. Он был оригиналом (original), чужаком (a stranger)

---

<sup>1</sup> **acme** ['ækmɪ] – совершенство, высшая степень чего-либо (англ.)

в современной цивилизации. Еще никогда не существовало писателя более равнодушного (indifferent) к тому, что о нем писали.

Тот год был очень трудным для Брюса: его последняя книга не имела успеха (be a success), она продавалась очень плохо. Он перенес операцию (be operated), его силы и средства закончились.

Когда я пришел к нему, он сидел в кресле, вокруг валялись листки из блокнота. Он сказал, что только что написал пародию (parody of) на кинофильм, который видел вчера.

«Такой пародии вы еще никогда не читали, – сказал он. – В моей истории четыре страшные тайны (mystery), красавица-негритянка, ее брат-негодяй (scoundrel), который хочет выдать ее замуж за миллионера, который совсем не миллионер. Гонки (a race) между поездом, автомобилем, аэропланом и лошастью.» Мне показалось, что он презирает (despise) кино и смеется над ним.

Я очень заинтересовался и попросил разрешения прочесть эту историю. Я прочел ее. Брюс написал не пародию, а замечательный сценарий (script), который немедленно купила бы любая кинокомпания. Но Брюс был таким странным (strange), он ненавидел такие глупости (silly things), как кино. Брюс очень нуждался в деньгах, но был очень горд и мог рассердиться, что я хочу получить для него деньги таким путем (in such a way). Я не знал, как сказать ему о моем желании продать для него этот замечательный сценарий. Он мог просто бросить его в камин (fireplace).

Подумав, я решил рискнуть (take a risk). Я представил сценарий как произведение одного «большого таланта», который работает инкогнито. Я был прав. Одна известная кинокомпания сразу же купила сценарий за три тысячи фунтов наличными (in cash).

Но как заставить Брюса взять деньги?

Делать было нечего, компания уже начала снимать фильм (shoot the film). Я пришел к нему и долго говорил о кино, которое доставляет радость (happiness) простым людям.

«Много лет вы живете в другом мире, вы пишете прекрасные книги уже около 20 лет. Я знаю, вы презираете кино, но сейчас вы сделали людям добро (kind to people) и должны взять деньги за сценарий, который я продал для вас,» – сказал я.

«Бог мой! О чем вы говорите? Кино! Да я каждый день хожу в кино!» – воскликнул мой друг, и глаза его сверкали.



## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### The Past Indefinite (Simple) and Present Perfect

#### Характеристика действия

|         | Past Indefinite   | Present Perfect   |
|---------|---|---|
| Как?    | Повторяющееся действие, факт в прошлом.<br><div>did</div>   | Действие завершено к определенному моменту в настоящем, имеется результат.<br><div>have done<br/>has</div>  |
| Когда?  | <i>yesterday</i><br><i>last week</i><br><i>in 1990</i><br><i>5 years ago</i>  | <i>already/yet, ever/never; just/since; lately, recently; this week/today, by now</i>   |
| Примеры | <input type="checkbox"/> I <b>met</b> him <i>yesterday</i> in the park.<br><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>graduated</b> from the University <i>3 years ago</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> I <b>passed</b> my exam <i>last week</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> O. Wilde <b>wrote</b> five plays. | <input type="checkbox"/> I <b>'ve never met</b> him before.<br><input type="checkbox"/> She <b>has already seen</b> this film.<br><input type="checkbox"/> They <b>have arrived</b> <i>by now</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> I <b>haven't seen</b> him <i>since</i> summer (we <b>left</b> school).<br><input type="checkbox"/> The taxi <b>has arrived</b> . (It is outside the house <i>now</i> ). |

**Ex. 23.** Put the verb in the correct tense (*the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite*).

- “(meet) Mrs Jones yet?” “Yes, I have.” “When you (meet) her?” “I (meet) her two weeks ago.”
- “You (have) breakfast yet?” “Yes, we have.” “When you (have) it?” “We (have) it at half past 7.”
- “How long you (live) here?” “I (live) here for 20 years.” “Twenty years! That’s a long time.”
- “Jack (leave) already.” “Oh, really? When he (go)?” “He (go) an hour ago.”
- “Excuse me, we (not meet) somewhere before?” “Oh, yes. I remember now. We (meet) in Kiev at the conference.”

**Ex. 24.** Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* or *the Present Perfect Tense*.

1. Last week we (*to make an excursion*) to St. Petersburg. 2. I (*to be*) at the library all this morning. 3. He (*go*) to Africa several months ago. 4. ... you (*ever meet*) Mrs. Brown? No! Then let me introduce you to her. 5. What a pity Ann (*not make up*) her mind yet. 6. He is a great traveller; he (*visit*) many parts of our country. 7. Women's fashions (*change*) a lot since last year. 8. Dick is a good student and (*learn*) a lot this year. 9. I (*see*) him a couple of minutes ago.

**Ex. 25.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Наконец я сделал домашнее задание, теперь я могу пойти погулять.
2. Мама пришла час назад.
3. Я никогда с ним не разговаривала.
4. Вчера было холодно.
5. Сколько грибов ты собрала (*gather*)?
6. Когда вы ездили в лес?
7. Я не виделась со своей бабушкой с прошлого лета.
8. Он болел на прошлой неделе, но сейчас он уже здоров.
9. Ты видел сегодня Мэри?

## The Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous

### Характеристика действия

|               | Present Perfect   | Present Perfect Continuous   |
|---------------|---|--|
| <b>Как?</b>   | Действие завершено к определенному моменту в настоящем. Имеется результат действия.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> <b>have</b><br/>has    done         </div> | Действие началось некоторое время назад и все еще продолжается или только закончилось.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> <b>have</b><br/>has    been doing         </div> |
| <b>Когда?</b> | <i>already/yet; ever/never; just/since; lately, recently; this week/today</i>   | <i>for 3 hours (already); since morning; since he came</i>   |



|         | Present Perfect  | Present Perfect Continuous  |
|---------|--|---|
| Примеры | <input type="checkbox"/> He <b>has just come</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> She <b>hasn't called yet</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Have</b> you ever <b>been</b> to France?<br><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>has written</b> many books.<br><input type="checkbox"/> She <b>has</b> greatly <b>changed</b> . (= I don't recognize her.) | <input type="checkbox"/> She <b>has been teaching</b> History <i>since</i> she graduated from the University.<br><input type="checkbox"/> The road is wet. It <b>has been raining</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> I <b>have been waiting</b> for you for <b>half an hour</b> . (Я жду вас уже полчаса.) |

**Ex. 26.** Fill in the empty boxes with the examples from the text.

| Present Perfect | Present Perfect Continuous |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
|                 |                            |

**Ex. 27.** Supply *the Present Perfect Tense* of the verbs in brackets.

1. Up to now I (visit) twenty countries. 2. He (type) six letters so far. 3. (You ever be) to Paris? 4. They (never quarrel) like this before. 5. I (not write) to Marco since 1980. 6. We (not be) there since we were young. 7. I saw her in May, but I (not see) her since. 8. I (know) them for many years. 9. They (buy) a new car. 10. He (travel) all over the world. 11. (You forget) your promise. 12. I (just fly) from Rome. 13. She (recently become) a director. 14. They (already speak) to me about it. 15. I (meet) her several times.

**Ex. 28.** Supply *the Present Perfect Continuous* of the verbs in brackets.

1. I'm tired. I (dig) all day. 2. How long (you wait) here? 3. I (stand) here since 6 o'clock. 4. How long (you learn) Chinese? 5. She (study) English for five years. 6. You're out of breath. (You run)...? 7. We (live) here for 20 years. 8. Your eyes are red. You (cry)...? 9. What you (do) all afternoon? 10. How long the children (sleep)?

**Ex. 29.** Use the corresponding form of the verb in brackets.



1. I (type) all the letters. The job is done.
2. I (type) this report since yesterday and I'm only half way through.
3. Your mother is still in the kitchen. She (cook) all morning.
4. I (cook) a lovely meal which I'll be serving in a couple of minutes.
5. We (build) this garage ourselves and have just begun to use it.
6. We (build) this garage ourselves and hope to finish it within the next two months.



1. I never (see) this face.
2. I have often (see) his name in the papers this year.
3. She (study) English for a year and (learn) many new words.
4. I'm sorry, (wait) long? – No, I just (come) down.
5. I (be) here since 6 o'clock.
6. I (try) to get her on the phone for about 20 minutes.
7. I (know) it since yesterday.
8. I (translate) this article for about an hour and (translate) the first part.
9. They (advertise) for information since May but they never (receive) anything.
10. They (discuss) the problem for hours but (not come) to any decision yet.

**Ex. 30.** Study the following chart and supply the missing words and phrases in the sentences below.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>lately</i> за последнее время; недавно</li> <li>2. <i>for the last/past few weeks, months, years, etc</i> за последние несколько недель ...</li> <li>3. <i>Last time</i> прошлый раз</li> <li>4. <i>Last/for the last time</i> последний раз</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. He has travelled a lot <b>lately</b>.</li> <li>2. He has worked too much <b>for the last few days</b>.</li> <li>3. We discussed that question <b>last time</b>.</li> <li>4. When did you see him <b>last</b>?</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

1. When did you get a letter from him ... ? 2. He has changed for the better ...
3. Although she had not seen him ... she recognized him at once. 4. He visited his native town ... when he was still a boy. 5. How often has he missed classes ... ? 6. This film was on at our local cinema ... . 7. I watched this film on TV

several times ... . 8. "She has not called on us ... . What's happened to her?" "She left for Moscow ... ". 9. There haven't been thick fogs in London ... .

**Ex. 31.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Книга моих последних стихов продавалась очень плохо. 2. Вся беда в том, что я не рекламировал свою книгу в газетах. 3. Мои родственники и друзья купили только 84 копии. 4. Никто никогда не слышал о таком поэте. 5. Издатели еще не поместили рекламу в газеты. 6. Ты написал уже несколько книг, но никто еще не слышал о тебе. 7. Напиши, что ты рекомендуешь в семью дворецкого, который проработал у тебя 20 лет. 8. Но у меня никогда не было дворецкого, никто не работал в моем доме 20 лет. 9. Я просматривал газеты на этой неделе, объявления не было. 10. Я уже неделю просматриваю газеты, но объявления о дворцеком там нет. 11. Я был один в доме. Моя жена уехала. 12. Я никогда еще не видел такой большой собаки. Пришлось купить ее.

**Ex. 32.** Translate the jokes using *the Present Perfect* or *Present Perfect Continuous*.

**1**

- Пожалуйста, мама, дай мне еще кусочек (lump) сахара.
- Я только что дала тебе пять кусочков.
- Но они уже растаяли (melt away) в чае.

**2**

- Мама, посмотри, только что проехал грузовик большой, как дом.
- Ты всегда ужасно преувеличиваешь (exaggerate). Я говорила тебе десять миллионов раз оставить (give up) эту ужасную привычку (habit).

**Note:**

exaggerate [ɪɡˈzædʒəreɪt]

**3**

- Тетя, когда я была здесь последний раз, я видела котенка. Можно на него посмотреть?
- Боюсь, это невозможно.
- Что ты с ним сделала? Ты его отдала?
- Нет, но....
- Я знаю, ты его утопила (drown).
- Конечно, я не сделала ничего подобного.

- Ты отравила (poison) его, я уверена.
- Я этого не делала, конечно. (С этими словами тетя идет на кухню и приносит большого кота). Вот твой котенок, он просто вырос (grow up).

4

Миссис Бидвел представляет молодого продюсера своей молодой гостье.

- Мистер Ирвин только что вернулся с кинофестиваля в Вене.
- Итак, вы побывали в Вене. Вы видели там самых красивых женщин.
- Я думал так вчера, но я только что изменил свое мнение (opinion).

5

- Вы наблюдаете за мной уже три часа. Почему бы вам самим не попробовать ловить рыбу (fish)?
- Все это время я смотрю и удивляюсь (wonder), откуда у вас столько терпения (patience).

6

- Сколько тебе лет?
- 12, сэр.
- Как тебя зовут?
- Джордж, сэр.
- Как твоя фамилия?
- Стивенсон, сэр.
- Очень известная фамилия, мой друг.
- И неудивительно, сэр. Вот уже шесть месяцев я разношу молоко в этом районе (deliver milk).

7

Два пожилых человека встречаются после многих лет. Один из них очень худой, а другой, наоборот, очень толстый.

- Да это же Дик! Привет, Дик. Я уверен, что ты сидел на диете (diet) с тех пор, как я видел тебя в последний раз.
- А я боюсь, что ты все это время только и делал, что ел.

8

- Официант, я только что нашел пуговицу (a button) у себя в супе.
- О, благодарю, сэр, я уже час ищу ее.

9

Кинозвезда увольняет (to fire) свою служанку (maid). «За что?» – спрашивает она. «За то, что вы всем говорите, что работаете у меня уже тридцать лет.»

## The Use of Articles with Uncountable Nouns

### Употребление артикля с неисчисляемыми именами существительными

Неисчисляемые существительные могут употребляться без артикля (—), с определенным артиклем **the**, с местоимениями **some/any**.

| Без артикля (—)   | С определенным артиклем (the)  | С местоимениями some/any   |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Речь идет о веществе или абстрактном понятии <u>как таковом</u>:</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Water</b> is necessary for life.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> I like <b>milk</b>.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> I'll do it with <b>pleasure</b>.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Which do you prefer: <b>tea</b> or <b>coffee</b>?</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Определенное количество <u>данного вещества</u>:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Pass me <b>the salt</b>, please.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> We'll ship <b>the oil</b> next week.</li> </ul> </li> <li><u>Повторное упоминание</u> в тексте ранее названного существительного:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> There was <b>some difference</b> between them.<br/><b>The difference</b> wasn't very strong, but...</li> </ul> </li> <li>Существительное имеет <u>индивидуализирующее определение</u>:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> <b>The water</b> in this well is very cold.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>But: Water</b> in a well is always cold (вообще).</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Некоторое количество вещества (некоторая степень, качество):               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> I bought <b>some butter</b>.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Is there <b>any butter</b> in the fridge?</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> The news caused <b>some excitement</b>.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Is there <b>any hope</b>?</li> </ul> </li> <li>Имеется <u>смысловое различие</u> между предложениями:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Buy <b>some bread</b>.<br/>Купи хлеба.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Buy <b>bread</b>.<br/>Купи хлеб (а не что-либо иное).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

**Ex. 33.** Fill in the blanks with articles or *some/any*, where necessary.

1. Please, give me ... hot milk. 2. Put ... lemon in my tea. 3. England has to import ... raw materials, such as ... timber, ... petroleum, ... cotton. 4. Please, cut ... grass in the garden. 5. Put ... wood in the fire. 6. ... silver is not so heavy as ... gold. 7. Put ... milk into ... tea, please. 8. ... milk you bought in the morning has turned sour. 9. Pass me ... sugar, please. 10. Our country is very rich in ... oil and ... coal. 11. ... windows let in ... light and air. 12. I like ... cold milk. 13. Give me ... cold milk. 14. I drank ... milk he brought me. 15. ... tea is very hot, I must put ... milk in it. 16. ... vegetables are good for ... health. 17. ... reading helps to while away ... time. 18. ... knowledge is ... power. 19. I like ... painting. 20. She teaches ... geography at school. 21. I like ... music of this ballet. 22. He didn't show ... fear. 23. ... courage was his main quality. 24. He spoke with ... warmth about his friend. 25. He sent us ... important information.

**Ex. 34.** Translate the sentences.

1. Вода необходима для жизни. 2. Вода в этой реке очень холодная. 3. Принеси мне воды, пожалуйста. 4. Я люблю сок. 5. Что ты хочешь: чай или сок? 6. Купи хлеба. 7. Передай мне хлеб, пожалуйста. 8. Принеси молоко из кухни. 9. Официант принес мне чай и молоко. Я выпил чай и не стал пить молоко. 10. Мясо было совершенно холодным. 11. Какая холодная погода сегодня! 12. Санкт-Петербург – центр науки и культуры. 13. Алюминий используется в самолетостроении. 14. Бразилия экспортирует кофе. 15. Мне нравится запах кофе, который она пьет. 16. Я не выношу запах табака. 17. Долей воды в суп, пожалуйста. 18. Вода в этом пруду очень чистая. 19. Я никогда не пью воду, я пью только чай и сок. 20. Куда ты поставила сок, который я купил вчера? 21. Железо – это металл. 22. Ваша рубашка сделана из шелка или хлопка? 23. Дом построен из камня. 24. Это бронза (bronze), а не медь (copper).

**Ex. 35.** Speak on what you usually have for breakfast and dinner.

# BELLA FLEACE GAVE A PARTY

(adapted)

*by Evelyn Waugh*



Miss Annabel Rochfort-Doyle Fleace<sup>1</sup>, to give her the full name, was the last of her family. She was over eighty, very untidy and very red. The present home had been built in the eighteenth century, when the family was still rich. It could not, of course, compare with Gordon town, where the American Lady Gordon had all modern conveniences: electric light, central heating and a lift.

In the winter before the one we are talking of, she had been dangerously ill. In April she was better, but slower in her movements and mind. In June, for the first time, she invited

her heir to visit her. Bella<sup>2</sup> disliked him from the moment he arrived. One day he came to Bella carrying several books from the library.

"I say, did you know you had these?" he asked.

"I did," Bella lied.

"All first editions."

"You put them back where you found them."

Bella had often heard that books cost a lot of money. So she wrote a letter to a Dublin<sup>3</sup> bookseller. He came to see the library. When he left, he paid her a thousand pounds for the six books.

And so it happened that Bella decided to give a party. She called her butler and explained the idea to him.

Bella started the preparations. Cheerfully she wrote the names of the guests on the cards and addressed the envelopes. She did not include the names of several people on her list.

On the day of the ball she woke up early, nervous with excitement, turning over in her mind every detail of the preparations.

At a quarter to eight Bella took her place at the head of the stairs. The house looked wonderful in the candlelight.

The clock struck eight. Bella waited. Nobody came.

At half past twelve Bella got up from her chair.

"Riley, I think I will have some supper. I don't feel well."

But just as she was leaving the dining-room there was some movement. Guests were arriving. Riley met them and announced:

“Lord and Lady Mockstock, Sir Samuel<sup>4</sup> and Lady Gordon.”

On the stairs, facing her, were the two women she had not invited – Lady Mockstock the draper’s<sup>5</sup> daughter, Lady Gordon the American.

She looked at them with her colourless eyes.

“I had not expected this honour,” she said. “Please forgive me if I am unable to entertain you.”

Miss Fleace suddenly sat down and said, “I don’t know what’s going on.” Riley<sup>6</sup> and two of the servants carried the old lady to a sofa. A day after she died. Mr Banks came from London. Among the things he found in her desk were the invitations to the ball, stamped, addressed, but unposted.

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Rochfort-Doyle Fleace [ˈrɒkfɔː ˈdɔɪl ˈfliːs]

<sup>2</sup> Bella – short for Annabel [ˈænəbəl]

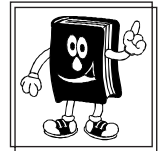
<sup>3</sup> Dublin [ˈdʌblɪn]

<sup>4</sup> Samuel [ˈsæmjʊəl]

<sup>5</sup> draper – торговец мануфактурой

<sup>6</sup> Riley [ˈraɪli]

## I. VOCABULARY



**untidy** [ʌnˈtaɪdɪ] (adj) – неопрятный, неряшливый, неаккуратный

□ an **untidy** boy

**compare** [kəmˈpeɪ] (v) (with) – сравнивать, проводить параллель; сличать

□ **to compare** a translation with the original.

**movement** (n)

1. движение; перемещение, передвижение

□ He made a **movement** toward the door.

2. жест, телодвижение

□ **a movement** of impatience

**mind** [maɪnd] (n)

1. ум, разум

□ His **mind** was filled with sad thoughts.

2. memory – память

□ to bear/to keep/smth in **mind** – помнить, запоминать; иметь в виду

□ to bring/to call/smth to **mind** – вспоминать; воскрешать в памяти, напоминать

3. opinion – (откровенное) мнение, взгляд

□ They were all of one **mind**.



make up one's **mind** – решиться, принять решение

to one's **mind** – по чьему-л. мнению

**Out of sight, out of mind** (proverb). С глаз долой – из сердца вон.

**So many men, so many minds** (proverb). Сколько голов, столько умов.

**A sound mind in a sound body** (proverb). В здоровом теле здоровый дух.

**heir** (n) [ɛə] – наследник

☐ The eldest son is usually **the heir**.

☐ to be **heir** to lands and money

**heiress** – наследница

☐ She is their only **heiress**.

**dislike** (v) not like – не любить, испытывать неприязнь

☐ I **disliked** the man from the moment I saw him.

**butler** (n) head manservant – дворецкий

☐ This **butler** has worked for them for more than 10 years.

**detail** (n) small fact – деталь, подробность

☐ Please give me all **details**.

**in detail** – детально, подробно; обстоятельно

☐ He explained it to me **in detail**.

go/enter **into details** – вдаваться в подробности

☐ He went **into details** while describing his plan.

**stairs** (n), staircase – лестница, ступеньки

☐ He always runs up (down) **the stairs**.

**expect** [ɪks'pekt] (v) think or believe that smth will happen – ожидать, ждать; рассчитывать, надеяться

☐ We **expected** you yesterday.

☐ I didn't **expect** to see him today.

**forgive** (v) (forgave; forgiven) – прощать

☐ He is not a man who easily **forgives**.

**entertain** (v)

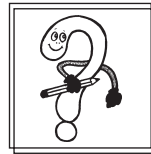
1. receive people as guests – принимать гостей; оказывать гостеприимство

☐ They like **to entertain**.

2. развлекать, забавлять

☐ He **entertained** us with his songs.

## II. COMPREHENSION

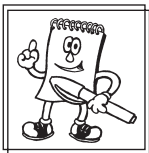


**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. How old was Miss Fleace and how did she look? 2. Where did she live? 3. What had happened to Miss Fleace in the winter before the one described in the story? 4. How did she feel after the illness? 5. Who came to visit her in June? 6. Did she like her heir? 7. What did she do after his visit? 8. How much did a Dublin bookseller pay her for the six books from her library? Why were the books so expensive? 9. What did Bella decide one day? 10. What kinds of preparations did she make? 11. Was she nervous about the party? 12. When was the party to begin? 13. Who arrived at Bella's place? Had she invited them? 14. Why did the guests whom Bella wanted to see never come to the party? How do we learn about this?

**Ex. 2.** Translate into Russian the following expressions and sentences from the text.

1. Miss Annabel Rochfort-Doyle Fleace, to give her the full name, was the last of her family.
2. modern conveniences
3. In April she was better, but slower in her movements and mind.
4. On the day of the ball she woke up early, nervous with excitement, turning over in her mind every detail of the preparations.
5. At a quarter to eight Bella took her place at the head of the stairs.
6. The clock struck eight.
7. But just as she was leaving the dining-room there was some movement.
8. Please forgive me if I am unable to entertain you.
9. Among the things he found in her desk were the invitations to the ball, stamped, addressed, but unposted.



### III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 3.** Give the translation and the three forms of the following verbs:

Give, build, talk, invite, arrive, come, know, put, hear, cost, write, look, leave, pay, decide, explain, start, wake, take, strike, wait, get, expect, forgive, sit, carry, find.

**Ex. 4.** Find in column B the translation for the words in column A.

| A              | B                |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. preparation | a. выглядеть     |
| 2. butler      | b. подробность   |
| 3. announce    | c. подготовка    |
| 4. bookseller  | d. объяснить     |
| 5. cost        | e. платить       |
| 6. detail      | f. лгать         |
| 7. stairs      | g. наследник     |
| 8. lie         | h. объявлять     |
| 9. pay         | i. стоить        |
| 10. look       | j. дворецкий     |
| 11. explain    | k. продавец книг |
| 12. heir       | l. лестница      |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |

**Ex. 5.** Find in the text and translate the following expressions. Use them in the sentences below.



Полное имя; ей за восемьдесят (лет); сравнивать с; современные удобства; центральное отопление; опасно болеть; чувствовать себя лучше; приняться за работу; включать в список; нервное возбуждение; обдумывать каждую деталь приготовлений; занять свое место; великолепно выглядеть; плохо себя чувствовать; выходить из комнаты; принимать гостей; приглашение на бал.

1. «У вас в доме есть центральное отопление?» – «Да. У нас есть все современные удобства.» 2. Перед экзаменами я всегда испытываю нервное возбуждение. 3. Ей уже за восемьдесят, и недавно она была опасно больна. Сейчас она чувствует себя лучше. 4. Для того чтобы послать ему приглашение на бал, мы должны узнать его полное имя. 5. Хотя он плохо себя чувствовал, он принялся за работу. 6. Он был рад тому, что его включили в список гостей. 7. Она тщательно обдумала каждую деталь приготовлений, поэтому ее дом выглядел великолепно во время праздника (вечера). 8. Она плохо себя чувствовала, поэтому не вышла из комнаты, пока мы принимали гостей. 9. Он занял свое место за столом. 10. Трудно сравнивать его ранние (early) работы с более поздними.

**Ex. 6.** Replace the italicized parts of the sentences with words and phrases from the text.

1. In the winter before the one we are talking of, she had been *seriously* ill.  
2. Bella *did not like* him from the moment he *came*. 3. She called her butler and explained *the plan* to him. 4. On the day of the ball she woke up *early*, *she was very excited*. 5. I had not *believed to receive* this honour. 6. Please forgive me if I am unable to *receive you as guests*.

**Ex. 7.** Find in column B the opposites to the adjectives in column A.

| A             | B            |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. untidy     | a. sad       |
| 2. rich       | b. colourful |
| 3. dangerous  | c. worse     |
| 4. ill        | d. empty     |
| 5. slow       | e. clean     |
| 6. colourless | f. poor      |
| 7. full       | g. safe      |
| 8. early      | h. first     |
| 9. better     | i. healthy   |
| 10. cheerful  | j. fast      |
| 11. last      | k. late      |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |

**Ex. 8.** Translate the following sentences into English using the words:

a) *mind*;

b) *detail*.

(For reference see I. Vocabulary)

**A**

1. По-моему, мы должны простить его. 2. С глаз долой – из сердца вон. 3. Он принял решение покинуть этот город. 4. Работа будет очень трудная. Имей это в виду. 5. В здоровом теле здоровый дух.

**B**

1. Он хотел знать все подробности о нашем путешествии. 2. Я не собираюсь вдаваться в подробности. Вы всё скоро увидите своими глазами (with you own eyes). 3. Он подробно описал нам свою работу. 4. Для него важна каждая деталь.

**Ex. 9.** Translate the following sentences, using *explain smth to smb*.

1. Я объяснял ему это правило вчера с двух до четырех часов. 2. Объясните мне, пожалуйста, что это обозначает. 3. Как вы можете объяснить его поведение? 4. Когда он нам всё объяснил, мы перестали волноваться (stop worrying). 5. Они объяснили мне, где находится музей.

**Ex. 10.** Choose and insert the correct word in the proper form.

### sick – ill



“*sick*” can be used in the expression “*be (feel) sick*”, which means “*to bring up food from the stomach*” or “*want to do this*” – чувствовать тошноту; in American English “*sick*” is normally used when you talk about bad health – больной

☐ Come down, our daughter is **sick**.

“*sick*” is also used before a noun:

☐ a **sick** boy

“*ill*” is used after a subject and a verb:

☐ The parents asked the doctor to have a look at their **sick** daughter, they said she had been **ill** for three days.

“*sick*” can also mean “*very tired of*” – пресыщенный, уставший от ...

☐ I’m **sick** of your questions. – Мне надоели твои вопросы.

1. The ... child was finally taken to hospital. 2. If you are ... you’d better stay home. 3. Why is she absent? Is she still ... ? 4. He is a very ... man. 5. The child was ...

three times in the night. 6. Flying always makes me feel ... . 7. Sorry I've missed all those classes: I've been ... . 8. I'm ... and tired of listening to your advice.

### see – look at



“see” – видеть

☐ It was too dark. We couldn't **see** anything.

“look at” – глядеть на

☐ Don't **look at** me in such a way.

1. Henry! Stop crying: everyone is ... you! 2. When did you ... him last? 3. The bookseller wanted to ... her library. 4. She ... them with her colourless eyes. 5. He can ... almost nothing without spectacles. 6. He ... me but he didn't recognize me.

### hear – listen (to)



“hear” – слышать

☐ Do you **hear** that strange noise?

“listen (to)” – слушать

☐ to **listen to** music/a lecture

☐ He usually **listens to** the teacher's explanations attentively.

1. She had often ... that books cost a lot of money. 2. He told her about the play. She ... in silence. 3. I was driving across the countryside and ... the local radio station. 4. When I woke in the night I could ... the wind blowing. 5. They ... the whole story with attention.

**Ex. 11.** Study the following phrases and (a) translate them into Russian, (b) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text and (c) use them in sentences of your own.

compare **with**;

be built **in** the eighteenth century;

talk **of**;

be slow **in** one's movements and mind;

put smth **back**;

explain smth **to** smb;

write one's name **on** the card;

include **into**;

turn **over in** one's mind;

**at** the head of the stairs (table);

get **up from** one's chair;

look **at** smb.

**Ex. 12.** Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. The house was built ... the twentieth century. 2. He is ... sixty, but he doesn't look his age at all. 3. We cannot compare this beautiful vase ... the one we saw in the store. 4. They are constantly talking ... this accident. 5. She invited ... me to her place three years ago ... the first time. 6. I liked the man ... the moment I saw him. 7. This painting costs ... a lot of money. 8. He invited ... us and explained the plans for the next year ... us. 9. We decided not to include ... him ... the list. 10. When I saw her last, she was nervous ... excitement. 11. We are turning ... our minds every detail of our trip to Paris. 12. ... a quarter ... twelve I will be waiting for you at the metro station.

**Connectives and Transitional  
Phrases of Affirmation and Generalization**

**Соединительные слова и выражения, употребляемые  
для подтверждения и обобщения**

*certainly*  
*of course*

*generally*  
*in general*  
*on the whole*  
*for the most part*

**Ex. 13.** Translate the following sentences into Russian paying special attention to the use of the italicized connectives and transitional phrases of affirmation and generalization.

(For reference see Appendix 7).

1. The house could not, *of course*, compare with Gordontown, where the American Lady Gordon had all modern conveniences. 2. Will you come over to see us tonight? – *Certainly*, I will. 3. *In general* it is quite an interesting book. 4. *For the most part*, the music of this composer is rather difficult. 5. *On the whole*, he knows the subject quite well. 6. What time do you *generally* get up?

**Ex. 14.** Translate the parts of the following sentences using the connectives and transitional phrases of affirmation and generalization.

(For reference see Appendix 7).

1. The film, *конечно*, is not so interesting as the book. 2. *В целом*, we liked the exhibition. 3. *Большей частью*, the article is devoted to his latest novel. 4. *В*

целом, they were quite satisfied by the results of the conference. 5. *Большой частью*, they spend their time in the countryside. 6. I *обычно* go to the theatre on Sundays. 7. *Вообще-то* we are used to spending our summer vacation on the seaside.

**Ex. 15.** Have you ever failed to do something? Were you very much upset? Speak about it using the connectives and transitional phrases of affirmation and generalization.

## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE



**Ex. 16.** Memorise the idioms and use them in retelling the text.

1. bear/carry/one's age well – *хорошо выглядеть для своих лет, выглядеть моложе своих лет*
2. green with envy – *снедаемый завистью, позеленевший от зависти*
3. crash a party – *(разговорное) явиться без приглашения, нагрнуть*

**Ex. 17.** Retell the story according to the following plan using the words and expressions given below.

**1** *Miss Annabel Rochfort-Doyle Fleace*

Be the last of the family; over eighty; untidy; the present home; be built; be rich; compare with; have all modern conveniences; be dangerously ill; be better; slower in one's movements and mind.

**2** *The visit of Bella's heir*

Invite one's heir; dislike smb; come to smb carrying a few books; library; ask a question about the books; lie; first editions; tell smb to put smth back.

**3** *Bella sells the books*

Hear; cost a lot of money; write a letter; bookseller; leave; pay a thousand pounds; six books.



**4** *Bella decides to give a party*

Call one's butler; explain the idea to smb; start the preparations; cheerfully; write the names of the guests; cards; address the envelopes; not to include; the list.

**5** *The day of the ball*

Wake up early; nervous with excitement; turn over in one's mind every detail; take one's place; the head of the stairs; look wonderful; candlelight; strike eight; wait; get up from one's chair; have some supper; not to feel well.

**6** *The arrival of the guests*

Leave the dining-room; movement; arrive; meet smb; announce; face smb; not invite; look at smb; colourless eyes; expect this honour; forgive smb; be unable; entertain smb.

**7** *After the party*

Suddenly; be going on; carry smb to a sofa; a day after; die; come from London; find in one's desk; invitations to the ball; stamped; addressed; unposted.

**Ex. 18.** Tell the story as if you were

- a) Bella;
- b) her heir;
- c) Lady Mockstock, Lady Gordon.

**Ex. 19.** a) Find in the text the adjectives and expressions describing Bella's appearance and emotions.  
b) Give a character sketch of Bella.

**Ex. 20.** Topics for discussion and essays.

1. What impression do you form of Bella?
2. What killed Bella Fleace? Can unhappiness kill a person?
3. Speak on the problem of envy. Have you ever envied anybody?

**Ex. 21.** Give a free translation of the following text. (For the Past Perfect Tense see Grammar Review p. 105–106).

Однажды друзья позвонили Сюзен и Дереку и пригласили их пообедать в ресторане. Друзья давно не виделись, но Сюзен купила билеты в театр на этот вечер. Они очень хотели посмотреть эту пьесу (play), так как мама Сюзен ее уже видела и рекомендовала им посмотреть ее. Сюзен смогла достать билеты только потому, что кто-то вернул их в кассу (booking-office) театра. Однако Сюзен и Дерек очень хотели повидать своих друзей и договорились встретиться с ними перед театром в баре.

Они проговорили целый час, когда Сюзен обнаружила (find out), что пропала (disappear) ее сумочка. Они сказали хозяину (owner) бара о том, что случилось (happen). Он был очень расстроен (upset) и заверил (assure) их, что такого никогда ранее не случалось. Официанты (waiters) искали сумочку повсюду, но так и не нашли. Вора (thief) никто не видел, никто также не возвращал потерянную сумочку хозяину бара. Сюзен была очень расстроена, так как в сумочке была довольно большая сумма денег. Они решили пойти в театр и забыть о сумочке хотя бы на несколько часов. Но оказалось (turn out), что Сюзен положила билеты в сумочку и совершенно забыла об этом.

К этому времени пьеса уже началась, и они решили, что идти в театр уже поздно, тем более, что (the more so) билетов у них уже не было. Они пошли пообедать с друзьями. Даже если кто-то и нашел сумочку, ее еще не передали в полицейский участок (police station). После обеда они пошли в полицию. К огромному удивлению Сюзен, сумочка была там. Деньги и билеты лежали в сумочке. Ее подобрал (pick up) на улице ребенок и отдал своим родителям, которые немедленно отнесли ее в полицейский участок.

Сюзен и Дерек немедленно отправились в театр и купили четыре самых дорогих билета на следующее воскресенье.

## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW



### The Past Perfect Tense

*The Past Perfect Tense* показывает, что *действие завершилось к моменту в прошлом*. Этот момент может быть обозначен обстоятельством времени или другим прошедшим действием.

- ☐ We **had finished** the work *by 5 o'clock yesterday*.
- ☐ When I came, the guests **had** already **left**.

## Характеристика действия

|         | Past Indefinite   | Past Perfect   |
|---------|---|--|
| Как?    | Описание событий (факт) в прошлом.<br><div>did</div>  | Действие закончилось к определенному моменту в прошлом.<br><div>had done</div>   |
| Когда?  | <i>yesterday</i><br><i>last month</i><br><i>in the XVth century</i><br><i>many years ago</i>  | <i>by the end of the last week</i><br><i>by last Monday</i><br><i>when we came/called/...</i><br><i>before she left</i>  |
| Примеры | <input type="checkbox"/> We <b>went</b> to the seaside <i>last summer</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> I <b>left</b> school <i>many years ago</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Did</b> you <b>see</b> him <i>last week</i> ? | <input type="checkbox"/> He <b>had been</b> very ill <i>before he died</i> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> I looked at the present after he <b>had left</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> The theatre <b>had been built</b> <i>by the end of the last year</i> . |

(For Spelling Rules see Appendix 2; for Irregular Verbs see Appendix 3).

**Ex. 22.** Complete the following sentences, using *the Past Perfect Tense* of the verb in brackets.

## Model

When John and I got to the theatre, the play (*start already*).

When John and I got to the theatre, the play **had** already **started**.

1. She went for a holiday after she (*pass the exams*). 2. When she went to bed, she remembered that she (*not lock the door*). 3. I didn't look at the present until he (*go*). 4. I didn't know that she (*change her address*). 5. He didn't start eating until (*wash his hands*). 6. When I got to the station the train (*already leave*). 7. I was not hungry because I (*have lunch just an hour before*). 8. When he (*finish his work*) he went to bed. 9. I recognized her immediately because my brother (*describe her to me very well*). 10. When we came back, the telegram (*arrive already*).

**Ex. 23.** Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* or *the Past Perfect Tense*.

## A

1. By 8 o'clock yesterday I (do) my homework. 2. When I (get) to the cinema, the film (start). 3. She (feel) sick after she (eat) a whole box of chocolates.

4. The new bus-driver (have) an accident after he (drive) a few yards. 5. The students (do) the exercise very well after the teacher (show) them how. 6. Mary (finish) her homework when her father (come) home from his office. 7. I (throw) away the newspaper after I (read) it. 8. The sun (rise) when the farmer (start) the work. 9. After she (lock) all the doors, she (go) to bed.

**B** *His Likes and Dislikes*

A railroad ticket-collector who had retired after forty-five years of service (talk) to his neighbours about the bright side of his work. He decidedly (enjoy) everything, everything: his fellow-workers, the management, the work itself. There (be) only one unpleasant thing in all of it. And when the neighbours (want) to know what the unpleasant thing (be), he (say): "Oh, the passengers, certainly the passengers!"

**C**

Mark Twain (be) very bad at answering letters. Once a friend of his who (wait) for a long time to get an answer from the writer (send) him a sheet of writing paper and a stamp to remind him to write a letter.

A few days later he (get) a postcard saying, "Thanks for the sheet of writing paper and the stamp. Please send an envelope. Mark Twain."

**D**

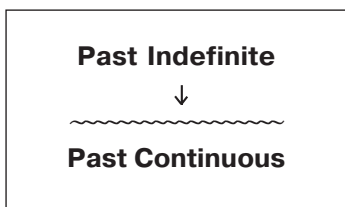
When a little boy (arrive) home from school his mother (ask) him if he (be) a good boy. He (reply): "Sure I (be) good in school today! How much trouble can you get into standing in a corner?"

**Ex. 24.** Translate the following sentences into English using *the Past Indefinite* or *the Past Perfect Tense*.

1. Когда она пришла, мы уже обсудили первый вопрос. 2. Он был взволнован, потому что получил телеграмму из дома. 3. Когда я нашел их дом, уже стемнело (get dark). 4. Она получила плохую оценку на экзамене потому, что сделала очень много ошибок. 5. Когда я вернулся из театра, гости уже разошлись (ушли). 6. Они сказали, что приехали сюда на поезде. 7. Он не хотел обедать у нас потому, что уже поел в институте. 8. На лестнице стояли гости, которых она не приглашала. 9. В апреле она чувствовала себя лучше. Однако перед этим, зимой, она была опасно больна.

## Три основные модели, по которым чаще всего строятся сложные предложения в прошедшем времени

I



В течение одного действия вклинивается другое действие.

- ☐ He **came** when we **were having** dinner.
- ☐ He **called** when I **was watching** TV.
- ☐ It **was raining** when I **left** the house.
- ☐ He **was writing** a letter when I **entered** the room.

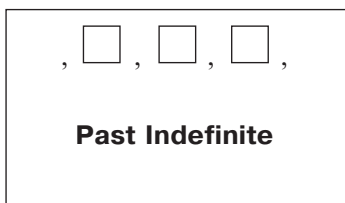
II



Одно действие закончилось до начала другого.

- ☐ When we **came** to the station the train **had already left**.
- ☐ She **went** to the post-office when she **had written** the letter.

III



Перечисление действий в прошлом, цепь событий.

- ☐ The secretary **typed** the letter, **put it** into the envelope and **gave** it to the messenger boy.
- ☐ Then dinner **came** to an end, and Eva **remained** to clear away while the three men **sat** on the verandah.

**Ex. 25.** Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite*, *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect Tense*.

A

1. The telegram (arrive) five minutes after you (leave) the house. 2. He (not see) me as he (read) when I (come) into the room. 3. When I (go) to the room the next day, I (find) the books exactly where I (leave) them. 4. It (rain) hard

last night when I (leave) my office. 5. I (shout) to him to stop, but he (run) too fast and (not hear). 6. He (thank) me for what I (do) for him. 7. We (walk) to the station when it (begin) to rain. 8. We (sit) in the garden when the storm (break) out. 9. When I (wake) up this morning, the sun (shine) high in the sky.

### **B** *Misunderstood*

Two Americans, when travelling in Spain, (come) into a small restaurant to have their lunch. They (not speak) Spanish and the waiter (not speak) English. The Americans (want) to get some milk. They (pronounce) the word several times. They (spell) it. They (draw) it with the finger on the table. All in vain, the waiter could not understand them. At last one of the Americans (decide) to draw a cow. He (take) out his notebook and his pencil and (draw) a cow. The waiter (smile) and (rush) out of the room. In a quarter of an hour he (come) back and (put) in front of his clients two tickets for a bullfight.

### **C** *The Dog and His Shadow*

A dog, who (run) away with a large piece of meat which he (steal), (come) to a stream over which there (be) a little bridge. As he (cross) the bridge, he (look) down and (see) another dog with another large piece of meat in his mouth. Not knowing that what he (see) was only the reflection of himself in the clear water, he greedily (drop) his own meat and (make) a snatch at the other. But, instead of getting anything, he only (lose) the meat he (steal).

**Ex. 26.** Translate the jokes into English, using Past Tenses.

#### **1**

Вчера в 7 часов Джон смотрел по телевизору хоккейный матч и заснул. Разбудила его жена:

- Вставай, уже двенадцать.
- В чью пользу?! – в ужасе (in horror) закричал Джон.

#### **2** *Два друга*

Два друга отправились в Лондон. В Лондоне они зашли в ресторан пообедать. На столе стояла горчица (a jar of mustard). Друзья никогда в жизни ее не видели. Один из них положил себе в рот целую ложку (spoonful) горчицы. Слезы сразу же появились (fill) у него на глазах.

Его друг спросил, о чем он плачет. Он ответил, что плачет о смерти своего несчастного отца, которого повесили (be hanged) 20 лет назад.

Вскоре второй путешественник (traveller) также попробовал (took) горчицы. Как только он это сделал, слезы потекли по его щекам. Друг спросил его, о чем он плачет, и он ответил, что плачет потому, что его друга не повесили много лет назад вместе с его бедным отцом.

**Ex. 27.** Make up questions to which the following sentences might be the answers.

1. The American Lady Gordon had all modern conveniences in her house.
2. Bella had often heard that books cost a lot of money.
3. She wrote a letter to a Dublin bookseller.
4. She called her butler and explained the idea to him.
5. At a quarter to eight Bella took her place at the head of the stairs.
6. Guests were arriving.

## Special Difficulties in the Use of Articles

### The Use of Articles

With the Names of **Months, Days, Seasons, Meals, Languages, Some** etc.

|  | Обычно<br><b>без артикля</b>                                       | <b>The</b> – при<br>наличии инди-<br>видуализиру-<br>ющего опре-<br>деления                  | <b>A</b> – при<br>наличии<br>описатель-<br>ного опре-<br>деления               | Устойчивые<br>словосочета-<br>ния                            |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| <b>Месяцы,<br/>дни не-<br/>дели:</b><br><i>May,<br/>Monday</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> I saw him in<br><b>May/on<br/>Monday.</b> | <input type="checkbox"/> We'll always<br>remember <b>the<br/>May</b> of 1945.                | <input type="checkbox"/> <b>A cold<br/>May</b> is a<br>usual thing<br>here.    |  |
| <b>Време-<br/>на года:</b><br><i>summer,<br/>winter</i>        | <input type="checkbox"/> I like <b>sum-<br/>mer.</b>               | <input type="checkbox"/> We met in<br><b>the winter</b> of<br>1995.                          | <input type="checkbox"/> It was a<br><b>beautiful<br/>spring.</b>              | • <b>early/late</b><br>spring (autumn,<br>winter,<br>summer) |
| <b>Еда:</b><br><i>lunch,<br/>dinner</i>                        | <input type="checkbox"/> I had <b>lunch</b><br>at school.          | <input type="checkbox"/> <b>The lunch</b><br><i>we had yester-<br/>day</i> was very<br>good. | <input type="checkbox"/> We had <b>a<br/>good din-<br/>ner</b> yester-<br>day. | • to have<br>breakfast<br>(lunch, dinner,<br>tea, coffee)    |

|  | Обычно<br><b>без артикля</b>                                | <b>The</b> – при<br>наличии инди-<br>видуализиру-<br>ющего опре-<br>деления  | <b>A</b> – при<br>наличии<br>описатель-<br>ного опре-<br>деления | Устойчивые<br>словосочета-<br>ния  |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| <b>Языки:</b><br><i>English,<br/>French,<br/>German</i>              | <input type="checkbox"/> Do you<br>speak<br><b>French</b> ? | <input type="checkbox"/> The French<br><i>of Canada</i><br>differs from<br><b>the French of</b><br><i>France</i> . | <input type="checkbox"/> It was <b>a</b><br><b>hard day</b> .    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The English (French) <b>language</b></li> <li>• What is <b>the English for..?</b></li> </ul>  |
| <b>Время<br/>дня:</b><br><i>day, night,<br/>morning,<br/>evening</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> It was<br><b>morning</b> .         | <input type="checkbox"/> I'll never<br>forget <b>the day</b><br><i>we met</i> .                                    |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>early/late</b> morning (afternoon);</li> <li>• at night; • from morning till night;</li> <li>• by day; • in <b>the</b> morning (evening, afternoon)</li> </ul> |

**Ex. 28.** Insert articles where necessary.

1. It was ... early morning and everybody was still sleeping. 2. He works from ... morning till ... night. 3. They don't work in ... evening. 4. Outside it was ... morning. 5. I work in ... morning and in ... afternoon. I don't work in ... evening. I sleep at ... night. 6. He will have his vacation in ... June. 7. It was ... warm September and we decided to stay in the country. 8. ... winter we spent in London was quite warm. 9. I like to spend ... summer on the seaside. 10. It was ... unforgettable spring. 11. He speaks ... German fluently. 12. Everybody speaks ... English language here. 13. He came when I was having ... lunch. 14. What do you usually have for ... breakfast? 15. ... dinner we had at this restaurant was excellent. 16. Before ... breakfast Michael entered Julia's room. "The boys have gone off to play golf. They asked if they need to come back to ... lunch. I told them that was all right." 17. She was not out to give the mother ... perfect Sunday night supper.



**Ex. 29.** Read, translate and retell the jokes. Explain the use or the absence of articles before the italicized words.

**1**

Once a man put up at an English hotel. He was hungry and went to the dining room to have *dinner*. He ordered *dinner* and the waiter brought him a plate of soup. After he put it on the table before the guest, he went to the window and looked out. The sky was covered with heavy clouds.

- It looks like rain, sir, – the waiter said to the guest.
- Yes, – agreed the man as he was tasting the soup. – And it tastes like rain, too.

**2**

- Can *February* March?
- No, but *April* May.

**3**

- Do you have hot and cold water in this hotel? – asked a visitor.
- Yes, – was the reply. – Hot in *summer* and cold in *winter*.

**4**

A farmer who went to a large city to see the sights engaged a room at a hotel. In *the morning* he asked the clerk at what time the meals were served.

“We serve *breakfast* from 7 to 11, *dinner* from 12 to 3, and *supper* from 6 to 8,” explained the clerk.

“Look here,” asked the farmer in surprise, “What time am I going to see the town?”

**Ex. 30.** Translate the following sentences paying special attention to the use of articles.

1. Они пригласили нас на обед.
2. Они вернулись домой только к девяти часам и съели легкий ужин.
3. Я не заметил, чтобы (этот) обед отличался от обычного.
4. Когда вы обычно завтракаете?
5. Была поздняя осень, когда она написала мне.
6. Летом 1997 года она победила на соревнованиях.
7. Они собирались пожениться в самом начале весны.
8. Кто-нибудь говорит здесь по-французски?
9. Как будет по-немецки слово “весна”?
10. Солнце опустилось (set) за горами, и настала ночь.
11. Я увижу его днем.
12. Они встретились в июне 1990 года.

## The Use of Articles

With the Nouns ***School/College, Hospital, Bed*** etc.

|                                  |   |   |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
|                                  | <b>Без артикля</b> – когда существительное обозначает не конкретный предмет, а его предназначение.  | <b>Обычные правила</b> употребления артикля, когда существительное обозначает предмет.  |
| <i>School/college/University</i> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>to be at school, to go to school</b> (учиться в школе);</li> <li>• <b>to leave school</b> (заканчивать школу)</li> </ul>              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to go to <b>the school</b> (идти в здание определенной школы).</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> There is <b>a school</b> not far from our house.</li> </ul> |
| <i>Hospital</i>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>to go to hospital</b> (лечь в больницу);</li> <li>• <b>to be in hospital</b> (лечиться в больнице)</li> </ul>                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> When our friend was ill we went to <b>the hospital</b> to visit him. (ходили в определенную больницу как посетители)</li> </ul>       |
| <i>Bed</i>                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>to go to bed</b> (лечь спать);</li> <li>• <b>to be/to stay in bed</b> (спать, лежать в постели)</li> </ul>                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> There is <b>a bed</b>, two armchairs and a table in the room.</li> </ul>  |
| <i>Home</i>                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>to go home</b> (идти домой);</li> <li>• <b>to come home</b> (приходить домой);</li> <li>• <b>to be at home</b> (быть дома)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> The Arctic Ocean is <b>a home</b> of the polar bear.</li> </ul>   |
| <i>Work</i>                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>to go to work</b> (идти на работу);</li> <li>• <b>to be at work</b> (работать)</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> They like <b>the work</b> they are doing now.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> It is <b>a real work</b> of art.</li> </ul>           |

**Ex. 31.** Insert articles where necessary.

1. He went to ... school last year, but this year he goes to ... college.
2. We decided to meet near ... school.
3. ... work we are doing now is very interesting.
4. This is ... wonderful work of art.
5. They don't go to ... work on Tuesday.
6. I'm really tired and I'm going to to ... bed.
7. Your shoes are under ... bed.
8. They've bought ... lovely new bed.
9. It was ten o'clock. The children were

in ... bed. 10. There is a dressing table beside ... bed. 11. He was dangerously ill and he had to go to ... hospital. 12. There is ... hospital near our house. ... hospital is very good. 13. ... present home had been built in the eighteenth century, when the family was still rich. 14. He is not at ... home. He is at ... work now.

**Ex. 32.** Read, translate and retell the jokes. Explain the use or the absence of articles before the italicized words.

**1**

*Mother:* It is nine o'clock and you are not in bed yet? What will father say when he comes *home*?

*Henry:* He'll say: "Supper! Supper! What's for *supper*?"

**2**

- You were late this morning, Brown.
- Yes, sir. I'm sorry. I overslept.
- Good gracious! Do you sleep at *home* as well?

**3**

When Whistler had finished a portrait of a wellknown celebrity, he asked him whether he liked it.

"No, I can't say I do, Mr Whistler, and you must really admit it's a bad *work* of art."

"Yes," replied the artist, looking at his sitter through his monocle, "but then you must admit that you are a bad *work* of nature."

**4**

Two friends met for the first time in several years. "Well, old man," one said, "I hear you finally got married. Congratulations, for I also hear you have an excellent and most accomplished wife." "Yes, indeed," was the reply. "My wife is accomplished. She is perfectly at *home* in literature, at *home* in art, at *home* in music, at *home* in science, in short at *home* everywhere, except..."

"Except what?"

"Except at *home*."

**Ex. 33.** Translate the following sentences paying special attention to the use of articles.

1. Ты же учился в колледже, значит, ты умный парень.
2. Колледж был красивым шестиэтажным зданием.
3. Он очень болен. Он лежит в постели и не может пошевелиться.
4. Мне нужна комната с одной кроватью.
5. Когда они пришли домой, они поужинали.
6. Девочка очень больна. Она должна лечь в больницу.
7. Больница находилась рядом с их домом.
8. Мы говорили о работе, которую они сейчас выполняют.
9. Он ходит на работу каждый день.

# HOW WE KEPT MOTHER'S DAY

*by Stephen Leacock*



We decided to have a special celebration of Mother's Day. We thought it a fine idea. It made us realize how much Mother had done for us for years, and all the efforts and sacrifices that she had made for our sake.

So we decided that we'd make it a great day, a holiday for all the family, and do everything we could to make our Mother happy. Father decided to take a holiday from his office, so as to help in celebrating the day, and my sister Ann and I stayed home from college classes, and Mary and my brother stayed home from High School.

It was our plan to make it a day just like Xmas<sup>1</sup> or any big holiday, and so we decided to decorate the house with flowers. We asked Mother to do it, because she always does it.

The two girls thought it would be a nice thing to dress in our best for such a big occasion, and so they both got new hats. Father had bought silk ties for himself and us boys. We were going to get Mother a new hat too, but it turned out that she liked her old hat better than a new one.

After breakfast we decided that we would hire a motor car and take Mother for a beautiful drive away into the country. Mother is hardly ever able to have a treat like that, because she is busy in the house nearly all the time.

But on the very morning of the day we changed the plan a little bit. We all felt that it would be nicer to have a definite purpose. It turned out that Father had just got a new rod the day before, and he said that Mother could use it if she wanted to: in fact, he said it was practically for her, only Mother said she would rather watch him fish than fish herself.

So we got everything ready for the trip. Mother cut up some sandwiches and packed all up in a basket for us.

When the car came to the door, it turned out that we couldn't all get in. Father said that he could stay at home and work in the garden. There was a lot of dirty work that he could do. He said that he wanted us to be happy and have a big day. The girls said that Mother had only to say the word and they'd gladly stay at home and work.

In the end it was decided that Mother would stay at home and have a lovely restful day round the house. It turned out anyway that Mother didn't care for fishing and also it was just a little bit cold and fresh out-of-doors, though it was lovely and sunny, and Father was afraid that Mother might take cold if she came.

So we all drove away and Mother stood and watched us as long as she could see us.

We had the loveliest day. Father and the boys fished, the girls met quite a lot of people. We all had a splendid time.

It was quite late when we got back. The dinner was ready. It was grand. Mother had to get up and down during the meal fetching things back and forward, but at the end Father noticed it and said she simply mustn't do it.

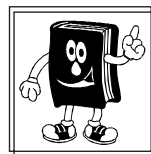
When the dinner was over all of us wanted to help clear the things up and wash the dishes, only Mother said that she would really much rather do it.

It was quite late when it was all over, and when we all kissed Mother before going to bed, she said it had been the most wonderful day in her life and I think there were tears in her eyes.

### Note:

<sup>1</sup> Xmas – *сокращенно от* Christmas – Рождество

## I. VOCABULARY



**celebration** (n) – празднование торжества

□ They had a wonderful **celebration** of Christmas.

**celebrate** (v) –v праздновать, торжественно отмечать

□ How are you going **to celebrate** your birthday?

**realize** (v) understand – (ясно) понимать, осознавать; представлять себе

□ Does he **realize** all the difficulties?

**effort** (n)

1. усилие, напряжение

□ He spoke with **effort**.

□ I will make every **effort** to help you.

2. попытка

□ Let's make **an effort**.

**sacrifice** ['sækrɪfaɪs] (n) – жертва

□ He gave his life as **a sacrifice**.

**sake** (n):

**for the sake of smb, for smb's sake** – для/ради кого-л.

□ Do it **for my sake/for the sake** of your family.

**occasion** [ə'keɪʒn] (n)

1. случай

☐ I have met him on several **occasions**.

☐ I met him on **the occasion** of my sister's marriage.

2. событие

☐ We decided to celebrate **the occasion**.

**turn out** (v) (*здесь*) – оказаться

☐ He **turned out** an excellent teacher.

**drive** [draɪv] (n) – прогулка, катание (в машине, экипаже); поездка

☐ Let's go for **a drive**.

**hardly** (adv) – едва; едва ли; вряд ли; насилу; еле; с трудом

☐ She is **hardly** twenty.

☐ I could **hardly** understand him.

**treat** (n) – удовольствие, наслаждение

☐ The music was a real **treat**.

**purpose** (n) aim – цель, намерение; замысел

☐ What was **the purpose** of his visit?

**rod** (n) – удочка

**fish** (v) catch fish – ловить, удить рыбу

☐ He likes **to fish** and to hunt.

**care** for (v) like – любить что-либо, интересоваться чем-либо

☐ He doesn't **care** for television.

**meal** (n) – принятие пищи, еда

☐ Usually we have three **meals** a day.

**fetch** (v) – (сходить и) принести, привести

☐ **Fetch** me a glass of water.

☐ He went and **fetched** the doctor.

**trip** (n) – поездка, путешествие, экскурсия, рейс

☐ It was their first **trip** abroad.

**make** (v) (made)

1. делать, изготавливать, производить

☐ **Made** in Spain.

☐ This table **is made** of wood.

☐ **make** a coat (dinner, tea)

2. составлять, делать, подготавливать

☐ **make** a report (speech, list)

3. совершать, делать

☐ **make** a mistake (an effort)

4. зарабатывать, наживать

☐ **make** money

☐ **make** a profit (получать прибыль)

☐ **make** a living (зарабатывать на жизнь)

5. приобретать

☐ **make** friends (enemies)

**make progress** – делать успехи

**make up one's mind** – решить(ся)

**make smb do smth** – заставлять кого-л. сделать что-л.

### Compare with:

**do** (v) (did; done)

1. делать, производить действие

☐ What are you **doing** here?

☐ What can I **do** for you?

2. осуществлять, выполнять; делать, проделывать

☐ **do** some work (an exercise, a homework, business)

3. заниматься чем-л.

☐ **do** painting (science)

☐ **do** the shopping (cooking, washing)

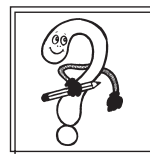
4. убирать, приводить в порядок

☐ to **do** a room (a bed; one's hair)

**do (smb) a favour** – оказывать услугу, любезность (кому-л.)

**do one's best** – очень постараться, сделать всё возможное

## II. COMPREHENSION



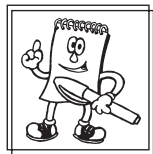
**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. What did the family decide to celebrate? 2. What kind of celebration of Mother's Day did they decide to have and why? 3. What did each member of the family do to make it a great day, a holiday for all the family? 4. What was their plan? 5. Why did they ask Mother to decorate the house? 6. What were they going to wear? 7. Why didn't they get a new hat for Mother? 8. What treat were they planning for Mother and why? 9. Why did they change the plan? 10. Who made all preparations for the trip? 11. Why did Mother stay at home? Do you think she really enjoyed it, why? 12. What kind of day did Father and the children spend? 13. What did they do when they got back? 14. Who had prepared the dinner? 15. Who cleared the things up after the dinner? 16. Why do you think there were tears in Mother's eyes when she said that it had been the most wonderful day in her life?



**Ex. 2.** Translate into Russian the following expressions and sentences from the text.

1. We decided to have a special celebration of Mother's Day. 2. It made us realize how much Mother had done for us for years, and all the efforts and sacrifices that she had made for our sake. 3. So we decided that we'd make it a great day, a holiday for all the family, and do everything we could to make our Mother happy. 4. The two girls thought it would be a nice thing to dress in our best for such a big occasion, and so they both got new hats. 5. it turned out that 6. After breakfast we decided that we would hire a motor car and take Mother for a beautiful drive away into the country. 7. to have a treat 8. We all felt that it would be nicer to have a definite purpose. 9. Mother said she would rather watch him fish than fish herself. 10. a lovely restful day 11. It turned out anyway that Mother didn't care for fishing and also it was just a little bit cold and fresh out-of-doors, though it was lovely and sunny, and Father was afraid that Mother might take cold if she came. 12. Mother had to get up and down during the meal fetching things back and forward, but at the end Father noticed it and said she simply mustn't do it.



### III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 3.** Give the translation and the three forms of the following verbs:

decide, think, make, realize, do, help, stay, get, buy, like, hire, change, feel, use, watch, pack, stand, fish, meet, fetch, notice, wash, kiss.

**Ex. 4.** Find in column B the translation for the words and phrases in column A.

| A                | B                      |
|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. purpose       | a. приводить в порядок |
| 2. notice (v)    | b. оказываться         |
| 3. hardly        | c. поездка             |
| 4. clear smth up | d. приносить           |
| 5. treat         | e. цель                |
| 6. fish (v)      | f. простужаться        |
| 7. trip          | g. замечать            |
| 8. care for      | h. удовольствие        |

9. tear (n)

10. take cold

11. fetch

12. turn out

i. едва

j. любить, интересоваться

k. ловить рыбу

l. слеза

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |

**Ex. 5.** Find in the text and translate the following expressions. Use them in the sentences below.



*Прекрасная идея; заставить кого-либо осознать; ради кого-либо/чего-либо; сделать кого-либо счастливым; ради такого большого события; шелковый галстук; нанимать машину; замечательная поездка за город; определенная цель; приятный день отдыха; на открытом воздухе; прекрасно проводить время; наводить порядок.*

1. Где ты купил этот шелковый галстук? Он очень красивый. 2. Он поехал туда без определенной цели. 3. Холодно ли на улице (на открытом воздухе)? 4. «Что вы делали в выходные?» «Мы совершили замечательную поездку за город.» 5. Мы долго наводили порядок после переезда на новую квартиру (move to a new flat). 6. Что заставило вас осознать вашу ошибку? 7. Все были одеты по-праздничному (dressed up) ради такого большого события. 8. Это была прекрасная идея провести приятный день отдыха на открытом воздухе. 9. Его решение сделало нас всех счастливыми. 10. Вам придется нанять машину, чтобы добраться туда.

**Ex. 6.** Replace the italicized parts of the sentences with words and phrases from the text.

1. We thought it a *good* idea. 2. It *helped us to understand* how much Mother had done for us for years. 3. The two girls thought it would be a nice thing to *wear our best clothes* for such a big occasion. 4. We were going to get Mother a new hat, but it turned out that she *preferred her old hat*. 5. Mother is hardly ever able to *enjoy a pleasure* like that, because she is busy in the house *almost* all the time. 6. It turned out that Mother didn't *like catching fish*. 7. It was quite late when we *came back*. 8. When we *finished our dinner* all of us wanted to help clear the things up.

**Ex. 7.** Find in column B the words close in meaning to the adjectives in column A.

| A           | B              |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. restless | a. pleasant    |
| 2. lovely   | b. frightened  |
| 3. definite | c. unusual     |
| 4. sunny    | d. good        |
| 5. splendid | e. calm, quiet |
| 6. grand    | f. cool        |
| 7. special  | g. certain     |
| 8. afraid   | h. wonderful   |
| 9. fresh    | i. great       |
| 10. fine    | j. clear       |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |

**Ex. 8.** Translate the following sentences into English using the words:

a) "care for"

b) "turn out"

(For reference see I. Vocabulary)

**A**

1. Мне не нравится этот фильм. 2. Его не интересовала современная живопись. 3. Вы любите кататься на лыжах (skiing)? 4. Он не стремится к богатству (riches). 5. Она не любила ловить рыбу.

**B**

1. Оказалось, что он никогда не бывал в Лондоне. 2. Оказалось, что они никогда не встречались. 3. Оказалось, мы сделали много ошибок в диктанте. 4. Они оказались хорошими друзьями.

**Ex. 9.** Translate the following sentences, using:

**A**

(not) want smb to do smth – (не) хотеть, чтобы кто-либо сделал что-либо  
I want them to do the job – Я хочу, чтобы они сделали эту работу.

1. Мне хочется, чтобы вы осознали свою ошибку. 2. Он хочет, чтобы они

пришли. 3. Отец хотел, чтобы его сын стал врачом. 4. Мы не хотели, чтобы они видели нас. 5. Вы хотите, чтобы мы вам помогли?

**B** *make smb do smth* – заставить кого-либо сделать что-либо  
*He made us apologize* – Он заставил нас извиниться.

1. Она заставила его выполнить эту работу. 2. Он заставил меня сказать правду (tell the truth). 3. Я заставлю вас уважать (respect) мое мнение. 4. Как вы заставили его сделать это? 5. Заставь его навести порядок в комнате.

**Ex. 10.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

### make – do

(For reference see I. Vocabulary)

1. Anna ... all her own clothes. 2. He ... the shortest speech I have ever heard. 3. He has ... a lot to help us. 4. They ... him apologize. 5. You ... quite a lot of work yesterday. 6. Who ... the shopping in your family? 7. You ... several mistakes in the dictation. 8. He ... up his mind to change his job. 9. Can you ... me a favour? 10. He has ... great progress since the last time I saw him. 11. We will ... our best to help you.

### hard – hardly



*“hard”* means “difficult, not easy” – трудный, тяжелый

☐ It was **hard** work.

*“hardly”* can have several meanings: with *“can/could”* it means “only with difficulty” – едва

with *“any”* – “very little” – почти не ...; with *“ever”* – “very seldom” – почти никогда.

(For reference see I. Vocabulary)

1. It was ... for us to tell her the truth. 2. He ... ever comes to see us because he is always very busy. 3. We could ... recognize the place: everything had changed so much. 4. It was a ... day for everybody. 5. He spoke too fast and it was ... to understand him. 6. He had ... any work to do. 7. She was so tired that she could ... stand.

### meal – food



*“meal”* is an occasion of eating – еда (принятие пищи), трапеза

☐ breakfast

*“food”* is things we eat – пища, еда

☐ He likes light **food**.

1. How many ... a day do you have? 2. Bring enough ... and water for the trip. 3. In England lunch is usually the biggest ... of the day. 4. They talked a lot during the ... 5. Do they serve good ... in this restaurant?

**Ex. 11.** Study the following phrases and (a) translate them into Russian; (b) recall the sentences in which they are used in the text and (c) use them in sentences of your own.

**For** smb's sake; take a holiday **from** one's office; decorate the house **with** flowers; dress **in** one's best; **for** a big occasion; take smb **for** a drive; ready **for**; get **in**; **in/at** the end; care **for**; get **back**; get **up/down**; fetch things **back/forward**; go **to** bed.

**Ex. 12.** Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. ... the end they made friends. 2. He got ... and went upstairs. 3. We did it ... the sake of peace. 4. They don't care ... gardening. 5. We hired ... a car to get to the airport. 6. When do you usually go ... bed? 7. It was a very special holiday ... all the family. 8. He was afraid that we would take ... cold standing at the open window. 9. They took a holiday ... their office to go skiing ... the countryside. 10. It was one of the most wonderful days ... our life. 11. He got ... the car and drove ... 12. They dressed ... their best ... this celebration. 13. He bought some flowers ... her. 14. How many days did you stay ... home ... school during your last winter holidays?

**Ex. 13.** Translate the following sentences into Russian paying special attention to the use of the italicized spatial connectives and transitional phrases.

(For reference see Appendix 7).

|                                   |                             |                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>A</b> <i>here</i>              | <b>B</b> <i>in front of</i> | <b>C</b> <i>above</i> |
| <i>close (to)</i>                 | <i>on the left/right</i>    | <i>below</i>          |
| <i>next (to)</i>                  | <i>behind</i>               | <i>around</i>         |
| <i>near (to)</i>                  |                             |                       |
| <i>adjacent (to)</i> [ə'dʒeɪsənt] |                             |                       |
| <i>nearby</i>                     |                             |                       |

**A**

1. The theatre is *close to* the museum. 2. Are there any restaurants *nearby*? 3. *Adjacent to* the building of the Winter Palace there is the building of the

Small Hermitage. 4. He is sitting *next to* me. 5. There is a supermarket *near* my house.

**B**

1. There is a big backyard *behind* the house. 2. *On the left* you can see the Royal Palace, *on the right* there is a big park with lots of statues. 3. The boy was hiding *behind* a tree. 4. His house is *opposite* mine. 5. There are some trees *in front of* the house.

**C**

1. We were flying *above* the clouds. 2. The temperature was five degrees *below* freezing-point. 3. The sun rose *above* the horizon. 4. The people in the rooms *below* are very noisy. 5. There was a green fence *around* his house.

**Ex. 14.** Translate the parts of the following sentences using the spatial connectives and transitional phrases given in **Ex. 13**.

**A**

1. What are you doing *здесь*? 2. The post-office is *рядом с моим домом*. 3. He lives *рядом (по соседству) со мной*. 4. Our house is situated *вплотную к его дому*.

**B**

1. *Напротив нашего дома* there is a park. 2. He disappeared *за гаражом*. 3. *Слева* you will see a department store. 4. Their house is situated *напротив театра*.

**C**

1. The temperature is ten degrees *выше нуля*. 2. There are five chairs *вокруг стола*. 3. The water shouldn't rise *выше этой точки*. 4. We could see a beautiful valley *внизу*. 5. *Всё вокруг нас* was new and interesting.

**Ex. 15.** Describe your neighbourhood (your apartment; room) using the spatial connectives and transitional phrases.



## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 16.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. Good acts are better than good intentions. *Добрые дела лучше добрых намерений.*
2. He that has no children knows not what is love. *У кого нет детей, тот не знает, что такое любовь.*
3. Like father, like son. *Каков отец, таков и сын. Яблоко от яблони недалеко падает.*
4. Like mother, like child (daughter). *Яблоко от яблони недалеко падает.*
5. (Just) like mother makes (it) *(разговорное) в моем вкусе, мне по душе.*

**Ex. 17.** Retell the story according to the following plan using the words and expressions given below.

**1** *The family has a fine idea*

Decide; have a special celebration; Mother's Day; make smb realize; make efforts and sacrifices; for smb's sake.

**2** *A holiday for all the family*

Make it a great day; make Mother happy; take a holiday from one's office; help in celebrating the day; stay home from college classes (High School).

**3** *The family starts preparations*

Decorate the house with flowers; ask Mother to do smth; the two girls; dress in one's best; a big occasion; get new hats; buy silk ties; get a new hat for Mother; like smth better than smth else.

**4** *Plans for the holiday*

Hire [hʌɪə] a motor car; take smb for a beautiful drive; have a treat; be busy in the house; change the plan; have a definite purpose; get a new rod; would rather watch smb fish than fish herself; get everything ready for the trip.

### **5** *The family goes on the trip*

Come to the door; get in; stay at home; work in the garden; want smb to be happy and have a big day; in the end; stay at home; have a lovely restful day; not care for fishing; cold and fresh; out-of-doors; be afraid; take cold; drive away; stand and watch smb; have the loveliest day.

### **6** *The end of Mother's Day*

Get back; have a grand dinner; get up and down; fetch things back and forward; notice; want to help; clear the things up; wash the dishes; kiss Mother; go to bed; the most wonderful day; tears.

**Ex. 18.** Translate the following expressions and put them into two columns. Answer the question below.

#### **I** *Mother*

#### **II** *The Rest of the Family*

Make efforts and sacrifices; have a great day; have a celebration; decorate the house with flowers; dress in one's best; wear old hat; be busy in the house; cut up sandwiches; pack all up in a basket; have the loveliest day; meet quite a lot of people; get up and down during the meal; fetch things back and forward; clear things up; wash dishes; have the most wonderful day in one's life.



*For whom do you think it was a real holiday, a lovely restful day: for Mother or for the rest of the family? Why?*

**Ex. 19.** Tell the story as if you were Mother.

**Ex. 20.** Look through the text once again and find the facts proving the saying "*Good acts are better than good intentions*" (describe the steps, taken by the members of the family with the purpose to make Mother happy, and the results of these steps).

**Ex. 21.** Describe how you celebrate March 8 (how you get prepared for the holiday; what you do to help about the house; what presents you give to your mother, grandmother or sister).



**Ex. 22.** Topics for discussion and essays.

- 1) What impression do you form of a) the mother; b) the father; c) the children.  
Give your reasons.
- 2) Your idea about children upbringing.
- 3) How do you imagine an ideal family?
- 4) Have you ever tried to make a holiday for somebody? Tell about this holiday.

**Ex. 23.** Give a free translation of the following text.

(For reference see V. Grammar, Review, p. 129).

**Пикник (picnic) на одеяле**

(по Джону Бейли)

Один профессор Бостонского университета сказал, что современные родители очень мало знают о том, как организовать «досуг в кругу семьи» (family leisure time). В качестве одного из вариантов он предложил устроить пикник во дворе за домом (back-yard): расстелить (spread) одеяло, разжечь костер (make/lay a fire), испечь (bake) картошку, как будто вы на пляже (beach).

Прочитав это, я собрал семью и сказал, что вечером мы устроим пикник во дворе за домом. Мой сын Джордж сказал, что соседи подумают, что мы сошли с ума. А жена поинтересовалась, что я держу под мышкой. Оказалось, что это наше новое одеяло, которое, конечно, нельзя использовать для этой цели.

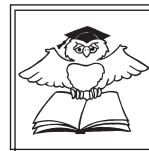
Дети поинтересовались, что мы будем делать весь вечер на заднем дворе. Я объяснил (explain), что мы будем сидеть и есть печеную картошку. Это должно теснее сблизить нашу семью (make us closer). Мой сын высказал пожелание, чтобы это не связало нас в тугой узел (tight knot), так как он договорился вечером играть в теннис. Моя дочь Нэнси согласилась есть печеную картошку во дворе, но заметила, что потом она должна будет уйти, так как она идет в бассейн со своей подругой.

Мы расстелили одеяло на прекрасном месте за домом напротив гаража и разожгли огромный костер. Заметив выглядывающих из окон (looking out of the windows) соседей, я попросил жену и детей не обращать на них внимания. Моя жена ворчала (grumble), что мы сидим на камнях и что она не может есть сырую (raw) картошку.

Стараясь казаться веселым, я спросил, чувствуют ли они себя так, как будто сидят на пляже. На что дочь ответила, что ей бы хотелось иску-

паться в океане, и скрылась (disappear) за гаражом. Спросив, в какой стороне океан, Джордж пообещал вернуть ее, даже если на это уйдет весь вечер, и тоже исчез за гаражом. Жена толкнула меня локтем в бок (nudge) и сказала, что к нам пришли. Я поднял глаза и увидел двух полицейских. «Нам сообщили, что во дворе кто-то сидит на одеяле,» – сказал один из них.

## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW



### The Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Speech Согласование времен. Косвенная речь

В английском языке, в отличие от русского, при переводе прямой речи в косвенную действует *правило согласования времен*, которое заключается в следующем:

*Если сказуемое главного предложения выражено глаголом в прошедшем времени, то сказуемое придаточного предложения (преимущественно дополнительного) не может употребляться в форме настоящего или будущего времени – оно должно быть выражено одним из прошедших времен.*

Согласно простому практическому правилу в этом случае все времена в придаточном предложении сдвигаются на одну ступеньку вниз:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Present Indefinite ( <i>do/does</i> )         | Past Indefinite ( <i>did</i> )             |
| Present Continuous ( <i>am/is/are doing</i> ) | Past Continuous ( <i>was/were doing</i> )  |
| Past Indefinite ( <i>did</i> )                | Past Perfect ( <i>had done</i> )           |
| Present Perfect ( <i>have/has done</i> )      | Past Perfect ( <i>had done</i> )           |
| <i>will</i>                                   | <i>would</i>                               |
| <i>can; may; must; should</i>                 | <i>could; might; must (had to); should</i> |

Изменяются обстоятельства времени и места:

|                   |   |                           |
|-------------------|---|---------------------------|
| <i>here</i>       | ⇒ | <i>there</i>              |
| <i>this</i>       | ⇒ | <i>that</i>               |
| <i>these</i>      | ⇒ | <i>those</i>              |
| <i>now</i>        | ⇒ | <i>then</i>               |
| <i>today</i>      | ⇒ | <i>that day</i>           |
| <i>yesterday</i>  | ⇒ | <i>the day before</i>     |
| <i>a year ago</i> | ⇒ | <i>a year before</i>      |
| <i>last night</i> | ⇒ | <i>the previous night</i> |
| <i>tonight</i>    | ⇒ | <i>that night</i>         |

□ "I **live** *here*." – He **said** that he **lived** *there*.

### Косвенное утверждение

| Прямая речь  | Косвенная речь                                  |  |
|--|---|--|
| "They <b>live</b> in Kiev."<br>"They <b>are working</b> <i>now</i> ."  |   | they <b>lived</b> in Kiev.<br>they <b>were working</b> <i>then</i> .<br><div><b>Past Ind./Past Cont.</b></div>   |
| "They <b>lived</b> in Kiev before."<br>"They <b>have done</b> it."<br>"They <b>were working</b> when we came." | He <b>knew</b><br><b>said</b><br><b>thought</b> | they <b>had lived</b> in Kiev.<br>they <b>had done</b> it.<br>they <b>had been working</b> ...<br><div><b>Past Perfect/<br/>Past Perfect Cont.</b></div> |
| "They <b>will come</b> soon."<br>"They <b>will be waiting</b> for us."   |   | they <b>would come</b> soon.<br>they <b>would be waiting</b> for us.<br><div><b>would + глагол</b></div>   |

(For some useful verbs used in Indirect Speech see Appendix 8).

**Ex. 24.** Practise the following according to the model.

#### Model

"My train leaves at 10."

What did he say?

*He said that his train left at 10.*

- "My friend is waiting outside."  
What did he say?

2. "I know them quite well."  
What did he say?
3. "They are engineers."  
What did he say?
4. "She gets up early."  
What did he say?
5. "I met him last year."  
What did he say?
6. "He has been ill for a week."  
What did he say?
7. "The Smiths have been living here since 1990."  
What did he say?
8. "You came too late."  
What did he say?
9. "I'll be ready in a minute."  
What did he say?
10. "I'll be translating the article all day long."  
What did he say?
11. "I'll speak with him."  
What did he say?

**Ex. 25.** Translate the jokes and retell them changing Direct Speech into Indirect Speech.

**I** *Value of Applause*<sup>1</sup>

"Applause is necessary for actors, for it gives them confidence," said one of her admirers to Mrs Siddons, the great English actress.

"It gives us more than confidence," replied the actress, "for it gives us breath<sup>2</sup>."

**II** *Equal*<sup>3</sup> *Chances*

A young rising scientist was courting the pretty daughter of a well-to-do family. He was very much in love and wanted her to marry him for no other reasons but his personal deserts.

"I must confess," he told her one day, "that I have no capital. I'm practically a poor man."

"So am I," answered the girl quickly, "for I never had any money of my own."

"Besides," continued the young man, "I am of very low origin. And worse than that, one of my uncles was hanged."

"That makes things easier for me," exclaimed the girl who had already guessed his intention. "For, though not one of my relations was hanged, most of them deserve hanging."

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Applause [əˈplɔːz]

<sup>2</sup> breath [breθ]

<sup>3</sup> equal [ˈiːkwəl]

**Ex. 26.** Change the following sentences into Direct Speech.

1. He said that he was busy. 2. He said that he had lost the key. 3. We said that we were not hungry. 4. He told us that he was writing a letter to his parents. 5. He said that he would help me with my English. 6. They said that they were coming to visit us soon. 7. He said that he was tired and he couldn't work any more. 8. He said that he was going to leave the next day. 9. They said that they had finished the work. 10. She said she couldn't speak German. 11. We said we had met him a year before.

## Косвенный вопрос

**I** **Общий вопрос** (предполагающий ответ: *да/нет*)

| Прямая речь   | Косвенная речь |  |
|---|----------------|--|
| <p>"Is he a student?"</p> <p>"Does he live here?"</p> <p>"Are they working now?"</p> <p>"Did you go there yesterday?"</p> <p>"Will she call tomorrow?"</p> <p>"Have you seen the film?"</p> | He             | <p>he <b>was</b> a student.</p> <p>he <b>lived</b> there.</p> <p>they <b>were</b> working then.</p> <p>I <b>had gone</b> there the day before.</p> <p>she <b>would call</b> the next day.</p> <p>I <b>had seen</b> the film.</p> |

Какие шаги необходимо выполнить:

1. поставить связующее «ли» – *if/whether*

2. превратить вопросительное предложение в повествовательное (подлежащее + сказуемое):

**Is** he a student?    ⇒    he **is** a student.

**Does** he **live** here?    ⇒    he **lives** here.

3. применить правило согласования времен:

He **is** ...    ⇒    He **was** ...

He **lives** ...    ⇒    He **lived** ...

**II** **Специальный вопрос** (where? when? etc.)

(For some useful verbs used in Indirect Speech see Appendix 8).

| Прямая речь  | Косвенная речь |  |
|--|----------------|--|
| "Where <b>do</b> you <b>live</b> ?"<br>"When <b>did</b> he <b>come</b> ?"<br>"What <b>are</b> you <b>doing</b> ?"<br>"How <b>have</b> you <b>done</b> it?" | He             | <b>asked</b><br><b>wanted to know</b><br><b>wondered</b><br><br><b>where I lived.</b><br><b>when I had come.</b><br><b>what I was doing</b><br><b>how I had done it.</b> |

**Ex. 27.** Change the following into Indirect Speech.

**I**

**A**

1. He asked me: "Do you live in Moscow?" 2. We asked him: "Are you busy now?" 3. He asked me: "Have you a large family?" 4. They asked her: "Will you go to the theatre?" 5. She asked her friend: "Do you like detective stories?" 6. He asked me: "Have you read this book?" 7. I asked him: "Can you play chess?" 8. They asked me: "Did you go to the seaside last summer?" 9. We asked them: "Do you speak English?" 10. She asked the child: "Are you sleeping?" 11. We asked him: "Have you finished your work?"

**B**

1. He asked me: "Where do you work?" 2. She asked me: "Where did you begin learning English?" 3. They asked me: "When will you come back?" 4. She asked me: "What are you doing?" 5. He asked her: "What films do you like?" 6. He asked us: "Who can speak English here?" 7. She asked me: "Where do you live?" 8. They asked me: "Why have you done it?" 9. He asked me: "Can you do me a favour?" 10. We asked him: "When are you going to leave?" 11. They asked me: "How long will it take us to get to the station?"



### Not and Nott

An Oxford student returning late from his friend's rooms attracted the attention of the proctor who asked him, "What's your name, my friend, to what college do you belong and where are you going so late in the night?" "I am Nott of Maudlin, sir, and I am going home," replied the young man. "I did not ask you of what college you are *not*, but of what college you *are*." "I am Nott of Maudlin<sup>1</sup>," repeated the young man, at a loss for words. The angry proctor accompanied him to Maudlin and asked the porter, "Do you know this gentleman, Smith?" "I certainly do, sir," said the porter. "It is Mr Nott and he belongs to this college."



### In the Train

A talkative passenger asked a lady who was in the same compartment:

"Have you any family, madam?"

"Yes, sir, one son," she answered.

"Indeed! Does he smoke?" he continued to ask.

"No, sir, he has never touched a cigarette," she said.

"So much the better, madam. Tobacco is poison. Does he belong to a club?" asked the passenger.

"He has never set foot in one," she answered.

"Then I congratulate you. Does he come home late at night?" he asked again.

"Never. He always goes to bed directly after dinner," she said.

"He is a model<sup>2</sup> young man, madam. How old is he?"

"Ten months today," was the answer.

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Maudlin [ˈmɔːdlɪn]

<sup>2</sup> model [mɒdl]

**Ex. 28.** Translate the parts of the following sentences using the Sequence of Tenses.

1. I was sure that (вы придете сюда вместе со своими друзьями). 2. I thought that (дети играют в саду). 3. I didn't know that (вы послали письмо). 4. I knew that (он будет против этого предложения). 5. The teacher said that (она собирается проводить диктант). 6. I was afraid that (они не придут). 7. He asked me (знаю ли я французский язык). 8. She asked him (что он пишет сейчас). 9. I asked Ann (где она будет проводить летние каникулы). 10. We asked Nick (закончил ли он свою работу).

**Ex. 29.** Find in the text "How We Kept Mother's Day" the sentences with Indirect Speech and change them into Direct Speech.

**Ex. 30.** Make up questions to which the following sentences might be the answers.

1. It made us realize how much Mother had done for us for years.
2. We asked Mother to decorate the house.
3. After breakfast we decided that we would hire a motor car.
4. Mother didn't care for fishing.
5. Father was afraid that Mother might take cold if she came.
6. It was quite late when we got back.
7. Mother had to get up and down during the meal ...

### The Use of Articles with Names of Persons

| Существительные                                    | Без артикля   | Артикль <i>the</i>  |
|--|---|---|
| Имена собственные                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> I met <b>Ann</b> yesterday.<br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Old John</b> often visits us.   | <i>а) перед фамилией семьи, употребленной во множественном числе:</i><br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>The Browns</b> have left London.<br><i>б) перед именем (фамилией), имеющим определение:</i><br><input type="checkbox"/> Is he <b>the Sheldon</b> who is a writer?                          |
| Родственники, члены семьи                          | <i>а) при употреблении членами той же семьи (пишутся с большой буквы)</i><br><input type="checkbox"/> I'll ask <b>Father</b> about it.<br><i>б) при употреблении с именем собственным</i><br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Uncle George</b> | <i>а) если не употребляются членами семьи:</i><br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>The daughter</b> was as beautiful as <b>the mother</b> .<br><i>б) употребление артиклей в выражении: <b>the son/daughter of a...</b></i><br><input type="checkbox"/> Lomonosov was <b>the son of a</b> fisherman. |
| Профессия, звание, титул, Mr/Mrs + имя собственное | <b>Professor</b><br><b>Doctor</b><br><b>General</b><br><b>Count</b><br><b>Mr</b>  | <b>Smith</b>  |



В отдельных случаях возможно употребление неопределенного артикля **a/an**:

- а) когда имеется в виду типичный представитель данной семьи:  
☐ Tim was really **a Burton**. Тим был настоящим Бертоном.
- б) когда имя собственное стало нарицательным:  
☐ You are quite **a Monte Cristo**. Ты просто граф Монте Кристо.
- в) со значением «некий»:  
☐ **A Smirnov** wants to see you. Вас хочет видеть некий Смирнов.

**Ex. 31.** Insert articles where necessary. Comment on their use.



1. ... George has lived here for a long time. 2. Do you know ... Ivanovs? 3. ... aunt Mary is going to visit us next week. 4. ... daughter and ... mother are good friends. 5. ... Doctor Jones is waiting for you. 6. ... young Jolyon is coming here soon. 7. ... Smiths are our neighbours. 8. I am going to ask ... Mother about this. 9. When did you see ... Sandy last? 10. ... Professor James is going to give a lecture at the conference. 11. Has ... Mrs Stevenson arrived?



“Let us see whether you are smart at arithmetics, ... Charley! I have twenty shillings and borrow fifty from ... aunt Mary and thirty from your dad. What does that make?”

“Debts, ... uncle!”



*Something He Can Do Fast*

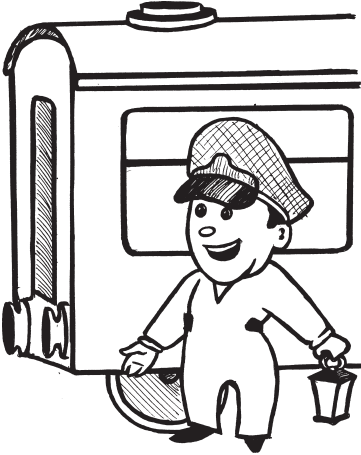
... fourteen-year old George who helped in the grocer's wasn't a fast worker. In fact, he moved very slowly indeed. One day ... Mr Jones, the grocer, called out to him: “... George, is there anything you can do fast?” “Yes, ... Mr Jones,” said ... George, “I get tired fast.”

**Ex. 32.** Translate the following sentences into English paying special attention to the use of articles.

1. Подождите немножко, отец сейчас придет. 2. Сын, как и отец, был очень талантлив. 3. Он решил навестить Смирновых. 4. Доктор, Вас спрашивает мадам Бланш. 5. Вы знаете доктора Блэйка? 6. Мы все были рады видеть дорогого старого Джонза. 7. Скоро семья Вульф переедет на новую квартиру. 8. Мы собираемся навестить тетюшку Нелли. 9. Ты видел Джорджа сегодня? 10. Романовы жили в России более трехсот

лет. 11. Мама не любит, когда мы опаздываем к обеду. 12. Мой двоюродный брат Александр хорошо играет в теннис. 13. Она дочь художника. 14. Это Павел Романов, о котором вы спрашивали. 15. Это была не та Анна, которую я знал раньше. 16. Она настоящая Форсайт. 17. Ты ведешь себя (behave) как Рокфеллер. 18. Мне рассказывал о Вас некий Родионов. Вы его знаете?

## THE MAN WHO TOOK NOTICE OF NOTICES



My uncle Tom used to work on the railway. It wasn't a big station. Only about two trains a day stopped there, and Tom was a station-master, chief porter and signaller all in one; in fact Tom did any work that came along, and there wasn't a happier man in the whole of England.

The waiting room of the station was cleaned every day by the chief cleaner (Tom). The chairs were polished by the chief polisher (Tom). The tickets were sold and collected by the chief ticket collector (Tom) – sometimes there were as many as four tickets a day – and the money was counted by the chief clerk (Tom).

The station was run very well. Tom was very strict about the "rules". He knew what a passenger was allowed to do and what he wasn't allowed to do; where a passenger was allowed to smoke and where he wasn't allowed to smoke.

He was there for 50 years and he never missed a single day and then he had to retire. Well, a little "farewell ceremony" was planned by the Railway Company and a man from the head office was asked to go to the station for the ceremony.

Tom was thanked and given a small cheque as a present. Tom was very pleased, of course, but he said: "I don't need the money, but can I have, instead, something that will remind me of the happy days I have spent here? Could the Company let me have a part of an old railway carriage, just one compartment? It doesn't matter how old and broken it is; I want to put it into my back garden and every day I could go and sit in it."

About a week later a compartment was sent and placed in his back garden. Tom worked at it. He cleaned it and painted it and polished it and in a week or so it looked very nice.

One day, about a year after Tom retired we decided to visit him. It was a bad day for a visit, it was raining hard. We knocked but there was no answer. However, the door wasn't locked and we went in. There was no one inside and we went out at the back. Sure enough, he was there, but he wasn't sitting in the carriage, he was outside, on the step of the carriage, smoking

a pipe. His head was covered with a sack and the rain was running down his back.

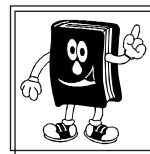
"Hello Tom," I said, "why are you sitting there, why don't you go inside the carriage out of the rain?"

"Can't you see?" said Tom, "the carriage they sent me was a nonsmoker<sup>1</sup>".

(From "Essential English" by C.E. Eckersley)

### Note:

<sup>1</sup> nonsmoker – вагон для некурящих



## I. VOCABULARY

**come** (v) (came, come)

1. arrive – приходить, приезжать

□ The guests **are coming** at 7.

**come out** – become visible, appear – появляться

□ The Sun/stars **came out**.

**come along**

1. appear, arrive – появиться («подвернуться»)

□ When the right opportunity **comes along**, he'll take it.

2. hurry – поспеши!

□ **Come along!** We'll be late for the train.

**come back** – return – возвратиться

□ This fashion will **come back** soon.

**come to an end** – finish – закончиться

**come to light** – become known — стать известным, вскрыться

**come to oneself** – прийти в себя (после обморока)

**whole** [houl]

1. all – весь, целый

□ They ate **the whole box** of chocolates (all of it)

□ Have you read **the whole book**?

□ He didn't say a word **the whole** evening.

**chief** (adj) [tʃi:f]

1. first in rank – главный

□ **The Chief Commander**

2. principal, most important – главный, основной

□ **the chief** thing to remember.

□ **The chief** rivers of India.

**run** (v) (ran, run)

1. move quickly – бежать, двигаться, идти
  - ☐ The dog **was running** behind his master.
  - ☐ The trains **run** on rails.
2. organize, manage – управлять
  - ☐ **run** a business/a company/a theatre
3. flow – течь
  - ☐ Rivers **run** to the sea.

**run away** – escape – убежать

**strict** (adj) – строгий

- ☐ He is **strict** with his children.

**allow** (v) – permit – разрешать

- ☐ Smoking **is not allowed** here.

**retire** [rɪˈtaɪə] (v)

1. give up one's work – уйти на пенсию/в отставку
  - ☐ In the USA men **retire** on pension at 65.
2. go away – уйти, удалиться (офиц.)
  - ☐ He **retired** to his room.

**matter** (v) be of importance – иметь значение

- ☐ It doesn't **matter** to me what you do or where you go.

**matter** (n)

1. substance, material – вещество
  - ☐ It is made of inorganic **matter**.
2. affair – дело, вещь
  - ☐ This is **a matter** I know very little about.
  - ☐ There are several **matters** to be discussed.

**no matter who/what/where** (whoever, whatever, whenever) – не имеет значения кто, что, где

- ☐ Don't believe the rumour, **no matter who** (whoever) repeats it.

**back** (n) – спина, спинка (стула), задняя сторона

- ☐ He fell on his **back**.
- ☐ You write the address on the front of an envelope, not on **the back**.

**at the back of smb** – сзади

- ☐ He said that there was somebody at his **back**.

**back** (v) support – поддерживать кого-либо

- ☐ Mother always **backs** me in an argument.

**back** (adv)

1. to the rear – назад
  - ☐ Stand **back**, please! Сделайте шаг назад!
  - ☐ Sit **back** in your chair. Облокотитесь на спинку стула.
2. ago (of time)
  - ☐ some few years **back**.

3. into an earlier position – назад

☐ Put the book **back** on the shelf.

**work** (n) – работа

☐ Are you fond of hard **work**?

☐ **The work** of the famous sculptor can be seen in many museums.

**work** (v) – работать

☐ Most people have **to work** in order to live.

**work on/upon smth** – работать над чем-либо

☐ He **is working** on a new novel now.

**work out smth** – develop – разработать

☐ They **worked out** a wonderful scheme.

**miss** (v)

1. промахнуться, не достичь цели

☐ He shot at me but **missed**.

2. be late – опоздать

☐ Again I **missed** the bus.

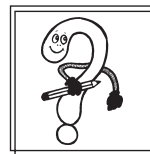
3. скучать

☐ Her children had gone to Australia and she **missed** them very much.

**miss the point** – не понимать сути, не заметить

☐ You keep explaining and I keep **missing the point**.

## II. COMPREHENSION

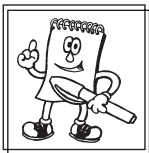


**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. Where did Tom work? 2. What kind of station was it? 3. What were Tom's duties and responsibilities? 4. How did Tom run the station? 5. What was Tom's attitude to his work? 6. How long had he been working at the station? 7. Why did the Railway Company organize a little party for Tom? 8. What present did they give Tom? 9. Why did they give Tom such a present? 10. Why was Tom sitting on the steps of the carriage on a rainy day like that?

**Ex. 2.** Find Russian equivalents to the words and phrases from the text.

1. used to work; 2. about two trains a day; 3. station-master; 4. chief-porter; 5. all in one; 6. any work that came along; 7. in the whole of England; 8. collect tickets; 9. as many as four tickets; 10. run the station; 11. was strict about the rules; 12. never missed a single day; 13. "farewell ceremony"; 14. head office; 15. a small cheque; 16. something that will remind me; 17. old railway carriage; 18. a compartment; 19. his back garden; 20. a nonsmoker.



### III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 3.** Give the translation and three forms of the following verbs. Find in the text sentences with these verbs.

Sell, run, know, give, spend, sit, see.

**Ex. 4.** Find in the text English equivalents for the italicized words.

1. Tom did all the work *he could find*. 2. Tom *managed* the station well. 3. He *paid special attention* to the rules that should be observed. 4. The rules didn't *permit* passengers to smoke inside the station building. 5. He wanted to put the compartment *behind his house in his small garden*. 6. Let me have a *part of an old carriage*. 7. He wasn't *sitting in the carriage*.

**Ex. 5.** Find in column B the translation for the words and phrases in column A.

| A                  | B                      |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. заканчиваться   | a. an important matter |
| 2. река течет      | b. retire              |
| 3. важное дело     | c. allow               |
| 4. уйти в отставку | d. no matter how       |
| 5. разработать     | e. strict              |
| 6. строгий         | f. come to an end      |
| 7. разрешить       | g. work out            |
| 8. неважно как     | h. at the back of      |
| 9. сзади           | i. the river runs      |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

**Ex. 6.** Find in the text the words with the same **A** and opposite meaning **B**.

**A** head (n), manage (v), permit (v), go away, fail to come, principal.

**B** front garden, open (attr), outside, receive (v), a part.

**Ex. 7.** Translate the following sentences into English using the words: *come, run, work.*

1. Утром был дождь, но к полудню солнце вышло из-за туч, и стало тепло. 2. Мама придет с работы только после пяти часов. 3. Он всегда возвращается из своих путешествий неожиданно. 4. Она пришла в себя и открыла глаза. 5. Автобус подходит, пойдем быстрее. 6. Во время расследования (investigation) вскрылись новые факты. 7. Автобусы здесь не ходят. Придется взять такси. 8. Он был талантливым актером, сейчас он руководит театром. 9. Реки обычно впадают (текут) в море или озеро. 10. Лошадь бежала очень быстро. 11. Его жена – деловая женщина. Это она ведет все его дела. 12. Мой дедушка уже не работает. Он на пенсии. 13. Он сейчас работает над новым изобретением. 14. Они разработали подробный план и были уверены (be sure of) в успехе. 15. На выставке вы можете увидеть новые работы этого художника.

**Ex. 8.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English



1. Том занимал все главные должности (position) на станции: он был главным контролером, носильщиком, уборщиком. 2. Том руководил работой этой маленькой станции очень хорошо. 3. Особенно строго он относился к выполнению правил. 4. Он знал, что разрешается и что не разрешается делать на железнодорожной станции. 5. Здесь запрещено курить. 6. Тома поблагодарили за работу и подарили ему чек на небольшую сумму. 7. Он попросил подарить ему вместо чека купе от старого вагона. 8. После того как купе было помыто, покрашено и отполировано, оно выглядело прекрасно. 9. Он проработал на станции 50 лет и не пропустил ни единого дня. 10. Пришел день, когда ему пришлось уйти на пенсию. 11. Мы вышли в сад через заднюю дверь. 12. Лил дождь, и вода струилась по его спине. 13. Идет дождь, почему ты не сидишь внутри вагона? 14. Это вагон для некурящих.



1. Их отец очень строг, он часто наказывает (punish) детей. 2. Он подал в отставку, когда ему было 50 лет. 3. Это дело огромной важности. 4. Это не имеет значения. 5. Он не разрешал своим дочерям гулять в парке одним. 6. Он проработал над этим проектом (project) всю свою жизнь. 7. Мы пропустили (опоздали на) этот поезд. 8. Она удалилась в свою комнату и не выходила до утра. 9. Поспешите, скоро взойдет (появится) солнце, и будет очень жарко. 10. Мы проработали в лесу весь день. 11. Было очень темно, мы не могли найти дорогу. 12. Поезда здесь



не ходят. 13. День подошел к концу, работа была закончена. 14. Мне нравятся все произведения этого художника. 15. Не разговаривай ни с кем,неважно, кто и где к тебе подойдет – это главное, что ты должна помнить. 16. Она еще не пришла в себя. 17. Эта река течет на север. 18. Эта старая история «выплыла» (стала известна) недавно.

**Ex. 9.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

**run – flow**



“run” – movement of liquids, very general, faster than “flow” – течь

☐ Water **was running** down the windshield (ветровое стекло).

“flow” – slow, steady movement, has a lyrical tone – течь

☐ The broad river **flowed** through my home town.

1. Air current ... from the west to the east. 2. I was watching the river as it ... under the bridge. 3. Where does the river ... ? 4. The tide (прилив) began ... . 5. His life ... slowly and smoothly. 6. Gold ... out of the country. 7. Water ... all over the bathroom. 8. Tears ... from her eyes.

**go – come**



“go” – move away from the speaker – идти, ехать

“come” – move to a place (to the speaker), move to be with smb – приходить, приезжать

1. Shall we ... by train or by plane? 2. Are you ... to my party? 3. He ... to China. 4. I've only ... for an hour. 5. They ... to the river at last. 6. Let's ... to the cinema. 7. This road ... to London. 8. They ... at 6 and ... at 9.

**Ex. 10.** Note the effect of *back* on the meaning of the verb. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I *went back* to my poem. 2. Why don't you *sit back* and relax a moment? 3. If you miss the bus you'll have *to walk back* the whole way. 4. How dare you *talk back*? 5. He *stepped back* to let the woman pass. 6. The people were ordered *to keep back* from the fire. 7. She *looked back* on those years she lived in the village. 8. We wanted him *to take* his words *back*. 9. When they *got back* it was midnight.

**Ex. 11.** Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. It was a small station. Only about two trains ... a day stopped there. 2. He had been working ... station ... 50 years. 3. He did all the work that came ... .

4. They gave him a compartment ... present. 5. Tom was very strict ... the rules.  
 6. He never missed ... a single day. 7. A man ... head office came ... the station ...  
 the ceremony<sup>1</sup>. 8. It will remind me ... happy days ... station. 9. I want to put it ...  
 my back garden. 10. Tom worked ... it. 11. ... a week it looked very nice.  
 12. We knocked ... the door. 13. He was sitting ... the steps of the entrance.  
 14. He covered his head ... a sack. 15. The rain was running... his back.  
 16. His wife was standing ... his back. 17. He was carrying a sack ... his back.  
 18. He retired ... an old age. 19. It seemed impossible but he managed to run ... .  
 20. It was very dark, the moon and the stars haven't come ... yet. 21. He was  
 surprised, this episode<sup>2</sup> had never come ... light before.

**Notes:**

<sup>1</sup> ceremony ['seriməni]

<sup>2</sup> episode ['episoud]

**Ex. 12.** Study the prepositions and adverbs, state the difference. (For reference see Appendix 7).

next to – between

by – in front of

across – along

toward – away from

outside – inside

down – up

before – behind

below – beside

**Ex. 13.** Complete the following sentences by putting the prepositions in brackets in the right place.

**Model**

I work at Woolworth's, just *across* the road from the cinema and *next to* the bank. (across/next to)

1. He ran ... the corner ... the road to the other side and ... the street. (across/down/round) 2. They said it was ... the railway station so it must be somewhere ... here (opposite/round) 3. We sat ... the front of the cinema but not right ... the front row. (at/in) 4. Jill sat in front ... the driver and I sat ... her. (behind/next to) 5. My office is ... town ... the post office. (close to/in the middle of)



## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 14.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. Actions speak louder than words. *Не по словам судят, а по делам.*
2. There is no rule without an exception. *Нет правил без исключений.*
3. A bad workman quarrels with his tools. *Дело мастера боится.*

**Ex. 15.** Ask questions on the text so that the answers bring out the main facts given in it. Retell the story using your questions.

**Ex. 16.** Tell the story as if you were:

- a) The Head of the Railway Company;
- b) a passenger.

**Ex. 17.** Make up dialogues based on the following suggestions:

**A** *Between Tom and the passenger who was smoking inside the station*

(know/observe the rules; allow a passenger to do smth; see a sign; be strict about the rules; notice; be good; not good for smb.)

**B** *Between Tom and his visitors (a year after Tom retired)*

(work for 50 years; never miss a single day; miss the station; think about the days; take care of the compartment; imagine; remind of the happy days; run the station.)

**Ex. 18.** Write an imaginary interview with Tom on the work of small stations as if you were a reporter. Use the words and expressions given below.

How long; what duties; busy hours; how many passengers/trains; retire; run the station; old railway carriage; observe the rules; leisure time.

**Ex. 19.** From the facts given in the story, what impression do you form of Tom?

**Ex. 20.** Topics for discussions and essays:

1. Why should rules be observed?
2. Is it boring to observe all the rules?
3. Do you like such people as Tom?
4. What rules should school-children and students observe?

**Ex. 21.** Translate the dialogue into English.

(For reference see V. Grammar Review, p. 148)

### Покупка дома

Мр Палмер ищет новый дом. Он устал жить в городе и мечтает о маленьком уютном (cosy) доме в деревне.

Мр Палмер разговаривает со своим агентом (real estate agent).

*Агент:* Итак, мр. Палмер, вот дом, о котором я говорил. Раймонд Роуд 26. Хозяева в отъезде, у меня ключи.

*Мр П:* Хм... Когда его построили?

*А:* Он был построен в 1928 г.

*Мр П:* Кто его построил?

*А:* Я не знаю, а это важно?

*Мр П:* Нет, не очень. У дома новая крыша? Она выглядит как новая.

*А:* Она действительно новая. Ее поставили (put on) в прошлом году. Посмотрите этот дом. Он в очень хорошем состоянии (condition). Предыдущий хозяин был строителем.

*Мр П.* Это довольно старый дом. Меня очень волнует (worry) электропроводка (wiring). В доме меняли проводку (rewire)?

*А:* Да, конечно.

*Мр П:* А когда это сделали?

*А:* 5 лет назад. В доме также сделали ремонт (redecorate). Было установлено (put in) центральное отопление, был построен гараж.

*Мр П:* Дом далеко от города. Как здесь с обслуживанием (services)?

*А:* Сейчас посмотрим. У меня здесь вся информация. Мусор вывозят каждый четверг (dustbins/empty), почту доставляют каждый день в 7.30, молоко примерно в 6 утра. Так что у вас всегда будет к завтраку свежее молоко.

*Мр П:* Да, конечно, дом очень дешевый. Я посмотрел много подобных домов... и они гораздо дороже.

*А:* Да, это очень выгодная покупка (bargain).

*Мр П:* А какие планы по развитию этого района?

A: Планы... ну, будет построена новая школа в следующем году... новая дорога, вернее (actually)<sup>1</sup> шоссе (motorway), будет построено тоже в следующем году. Так что до Лондона добраться будет очень легко и быстро.

Mr P: А где точно будет построена дорога?

A: Мм... Она будет построена за домом, а мост будет сооружен над домом. Это будет очень интересно. Вы сможете наблюдать за движением машин.

### Note:

actually ['æktʃuəli]



## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### The Passive Voice Страдательный залог

**be + Past Participle**

правильные глаголы + **-ed**

неправильные глаголы  
**см. таблицу**

(For reference see Appendix 3, p. 300)

| Группа     | <b>Действительный залог (Active)</b><br>Само подлежащее совершает действие   | <b>Страдательный залог (Passive)</b><br>Действие совершается над подлежащим   |
|------------|--|---|
| Indefinite | I <b>ask</b><br>He <b>asks</b><br>They <b>ask</b><br>He <b>asked</b><br>We <b>asked</b><br>They <b>will ask</b><br><br><b>Они спрашивают/спрашивали/будут спрашивать</b> | I <b>am</b><br>He <b>is</b><br>They <b>are</b> <b>asked</b><br>He <b>was</b><br>We <b>were</b><br>They <b>will be</b><br><br><b>Их спрашивают/спрашивали/будут спрашивать</b> |

| Группа     | <b>Действительный залог (Active)</b><br>Само подлежащее совершает действие  | <b>Страдательный залог (Passive)</b><br>Действие совершается над подлежащим   |
|------------|---|---|
| Continuous | I <b>am</b><br>He <b>is</b><br>They <b>are</b> <b>asking</b><br>He <b>was</b><br>We <b>were</b><br>They <b>will be</b><br><br><b>Они</b> сейчас спрашивают/тогда спрашивали/будут спрашивать завтра | I <b>am being</b><br>He <b>is being</b><br>They <b>are being</b> <b>asked</b><br>He <b>was being</b><br>We <b>were being</b><br>– (заменяется <b>Pr. Indef.</b> )<br><br><b>Их</b> сейчас спрашивают/тогда спрашивали/завтра будут спрашивать |
| Perfect    | I <b>have</b><br>He <b>has</b><br>They <b>have</b> <b>asked</b><br>We <b>had</b><br>They <b>will have</b><br><br><b>Они</b> уже спросили/они спросят  | I <b>have been</b><br>He <b>has been</b><br>They <b>have been</b> <b>asked</b><br>We <b>had been</b><br>They <b>will have been</b><br><br><b>Их</b> уже спросили/спросят  |

**Notes:**

1. Правила изменения глагола по временам для действительного и страдательного залогов одинаковы, изменяется только направленность действия, а следовательно, и форма глагола.

2. **Passive Voice** – это не просто изменение действительного залога, как это может показаться из таблицы. Он используется, когда мы не можем/не хотим сказать, кто совершил действие, особое внимание обращается на событие, автор предпочитает не использовать формальное подлежащее.

- ☐ Rome **wasn't built** in one day.
- ☐ The window **was broken** last night.
- ☐ Our roof **was damaged** by the storm.
- ☐ Shoes **are repaired** here (**Not**: One repairs shoes here).

3. Чтобы показать кем/чем совершается действие, используются предлоги:

| <b>BY</b>  | <b>WITH</b>   |
|--|---|
| Перед одушевленным предметом, а также после глаголов типа: <i>damage, make, discover, write, etc.</i>  | Указывается, какой предмет, орудие, инструмент использован для совершения действия.   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> This building was designed <b>by Rossi</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> He was brought up <b>by his aunt</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> The window was broken <b>by this stone</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> The theatre was destroyed <b>by fire</b> . | <input type="checkbox"/> He was killed <b>with a knife</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> It was drawn <b>with a stick</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> The bag was cut <b>with a razor</b> .<br><input type="checkbox"/> The stone is very soft. It can be cut <b>with a knife</b> . |

4. Обратите внимание на перевод глаголов с предлогом в страдательном залоге.

| <b>Русский язык</b>  | <b>Английский язык</b>   |
|--|--|
| <b>Об</b> этой книге много говорят.<br><b>За</b> доктором послали. | This book is much spoken <b>about</b> .<br>The doctor has been sent <b>for</b> . |

hear of – слышать о

laugh at – смеяться над

make fun of – насмехаться над

look after – ухаживать за

look at – смотреть на

rely on [rɪˈlaɪ] – полагаться на

send for – посылать за

speak of/about – говорить о

talk about – говорить о

think of – думать о

pay attention to – обращать внимание на

take care of – заботиться о

☐ He has never been heard **of** since.

**О** нем никогда больше не слышали с тех пор.

☐ He is often laughed **at**.

**Над** ним часто смеются.

☐ He can be relied **on**.

**На** него можно положиться.

5. В английском языке при изменении залога не происходит изменение падежа слова, стоящего перед глаголом.

☐ I haven't been informed **about** it.

**Мне** об этом не сообщили.

|                   | Действительный залог                | Страдательный залог                                |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Русский</b>    | <b>Я</b> говорил<br><b>Он</b> писал | <b>Мне</b> говорили<br><b>Ему</b> писали           |
| <b>Английский</b> | <b>I</b> spoke<br><b>He</b> wrote   | <b>I</b> was spoken to<br><b>He</b> was written to |

**Ex. 22.** Match the pairs.

**Model** Clothes are washed at *the launderette*.

|                              |       |               |
|------------------------------|-------|---------------|
| Films are shown at ...       |       | hairdresser's |
| Newspapers are sold at ...   |       | bank          |
| Cars are repaired at ...     |       | cinema        |
| Hair is cut at ...           | (the) | studio        |
| Photographs are taken at ... |       | garage        |
| Bread is sold at ...         |       | baker's       |
| Money is changed at ...      |       | newsagent's   |

**Ex. 23.** Quiz. Pay attention to the forms of the verbs in the passive.

|  |                      |                          |                      |                          |                       |                          |
|--|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The first book was printed in                   | France <sup>1</sup>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | Germany <sup>2</sup> | <input type="checkbox"/> | England               | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Jaguar cars are made in                         | England              | <input type="checkbox"/> | The USA              | <input type="checkbox"/> | Italy                 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. John F. Kennedy was assassinated in             | Houston <sup>3</sup> | <input type="checkbox"/> | New York             | <input type="checkbox"/> | Dallas                | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Mount Everest was climbed for the first time in | 1953                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1961                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1957                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. The Eiffel Tower was built in                   | 1876                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1889                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1901                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. The motor car was invented in                   | 1850                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1885                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1903                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. Christopher Columbus <sup>5</sup> was born in   | Spain                | <input type="checkbox"/> | Italy                | <input type="checkbox"/> | Portugal <sup>4</sup> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. Uranium was discovered in                       | 1932                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1798                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 1944                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |



|                                 |  |   |   |
|---------------------------------|--|---|---|
| 9. Coffee is produced in        | Colombia <sup>6</sup> <input type="checkbox"/> | Scotland <input type="checkbox"/>         | Canada <input type="checkbox"/>           |
| 10. Australia was discovered in | the 17th century <input type="checkbox"/>      | the 16th century <input type="checkbox"/> | the 18th century <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: 1. Germany, 2. England, 3. Dallas, 4. 1953, 5. 1889, 6. 1885, 7. Italy, 8. 1798, 9. Colombia, 10. The 17th century

**Notes:**

<sup>1</sup> France [frɑ:ns]

<sup>2</sup> Germany [ˈdʒɜ:məni]

<sup>3</sup> Houston [ˈhju:stən] – город в США

<sup>4</sup> Portugal [ˈpɔ:tjuɡəl]

<sup>5</sup> Christofer Columbus [ˈkrɪstəfə kəˈlʌmbəs]

<sup>6</sup> Colombia [kəˈlʌmbiə] – Колумбия

**Ex. 24.** Make up sentences using one item from each column.

**A**

**Model**

*Who was St. Petersburg founded by?*

|                |                      |             |
|----------------|----------------------|-------------|
| Who was (were) | Moscow University    | to write    |
|                | the Winter Palace    | to compose  |
|                | electricity          | to discover |
|                | the army             | to invent   |
|                | “Ivan Susanin”       | to guide    |
|                | the novel            | to found    |
|                | students' studies    | to lead     |
|                | America              | to build    |
|                | theory of relativity |             |

**B**

**Model**

*This story will be published tomorrow.*

|              |         |                      |
|--------------|---------|----------------------|
| This book    | publish | next month           |
| His new film | stage   | last year            |
| This play    | finish  | in (the near) future |

Exercise 5

The largest apartment house in our street

My watch

Lots of new materials

The students

New exciting discoveries

This work

write

do

build

repair

study

use

examine

discover

invent

already

tomorrow

now

during our lifetime

recently

some years ago

**Ex. 25.** Match the parts of the sentences.

- |                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Petrol prices             | a. to be won                    |
| 2. This jacket               | b. have been increased          |
| 3. Competition! 5000 prizes  | c. has been disconnected        |
| 4. Five people               | d. will be sent to candidates   |
| 5. The telephone             | e. was made in Hong Kong        |
| 6. This information          | f. were asked the same question |
| 7. Before the storm everyone | g. is not permitted             |
| 8. Smoking                   | h. will be mailed tomorrow      |
| 9. The old town theatre      | i. is currently being rebuilt   |
| 10. The letter               | j. was warned (предупреждать)   |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |

**Ex. 26.** Put the words in brackets into the correct form.

1. TV sets like this can (buy) anywhere. 2. When we arrived home we found that one of the windows (break). 3. A new apartment (build) near the church. 4. The battle (fight) in 1623. 5. The windows (clean) while I was there. 6. My desk (move). 7. All the documents (sign) before I arrived. 8. The car (sell) to pay the debts. 9. The meeting (hold) on Monday. 10. New employees always (welcome) by the manager. 11. Teachers might (offer) apartments in the college. 12. Application forms should (send) by 12 December.

**Ex. 27.** Give the *Present, Past or Future Indefinite Passive* of the verbs in brackets. Write questions about the italicized phrases.

Electricity is a wonderful sort of energy. It (use) *to light streets and houses, to power machinery, trams and trains, and to heat rooms*. The telegraph and telephone both depend upon electricity.

Electricity not (make), but collected, it (generate). The place where it (generate) is called *the generating station*. The dynamos (drive) *by coal or petroleum, or by water power*. Falling water supplies the energy which drives the dynamos in many generating stations. Some physicists think that *the power of wind* also (use) widely as a source of energy one day.

Our ancestors lit their homes by means of candles and oil-lamps. Later *the use of gas* (introduce). Today powerful lights illuminate not only our houses but also the streets of our cities, towns and villages. Nights (turn) into day.

**Ex. 28.** Translate the sentences into English.

Материалы, на которых люди писали в разные века, были очень разнообразны (vary). Самым древним (ancient)<sup>1</sup> материалом был камень. Дерево начало использоваться позднее, деревянные пластины (tablets of wood) покрывались воском (wax). Позднее был изобретен папирус (papyrus<sup>2</sup>), что сделало письмо более легким делом. Папирус делался из тонких полосок (stripe) тростника (reed). Материал был очень легким, поэтому носить такие «письма» стало значительно легче. В странах, где не было тростника, был изобретен пергамент (parchment). Он оказался (proved) настолько полезным, что используется даже в наши дни (nowadays).

Искусство (the art) изготовления бумаги было открыто значительно позже. Бумагу изготовили в Валенсии и Толедо в XI веке. Первым материалом, который использовали для изготовления бумаги, был хлопок (cotton). Позднее хлопок был заменен (substitute) льном (linen). Первая книга, напечатанная на бумаге, была издана (publish) в Англии примерно в 1495 году.

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> ancient [ˈeɪnfənt]

<sup>2</sup> papyrus [pəˈpaɪrəs]

**Ex. 29.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.



1. Его скоро простили. 2. Меня не спрашивали. 3. Этот вопрос не задавали. 4. Его ошибка была забыта. 5. Ей завидовали (envy). 6. Ее отсуд-

ствие можно было извинить (forgive). 7. Тебя могут спросить. 8. Правила были объяснены и продиктованы прежде, чем мы начали работу. 9. Ему посоветовали (advise) больше гулять. 10. Его поблагодарили, ему пода-  
рили подарок. 11. Его любили и уважали на станции.

## II

1. За такси уже послали. 2. Почему над ней всегда смеются? 3. О ней всегда много говорят. 4. Его никогда не слушали. 5. За садом всегда прекрасный уход. 6. Об этом случае (incident) будут говорить еще долго. 7. На эти факты нельзя положиться. 8. На эту картину не смотрели. 9. На шум (noise) не обращали внимания и продолжали работать.

**Ex. 30.** Translate these jokes from Russian into English.

### 1

«Какая красивая птичка!» – говорит маленький мальчик своей бабушке. «Да, – отвечает бабушка, – и она никогда не плачет». «Это потому, что ее никогда не моют».

### 2

- Мама, ты помнишь вазу, которая передавалась из поколения в поколение (hand down/generation).
- Да, дорогой. А что случилось?
- Она была разбита (break down) этим поколением.

### 3

Одну пару секретно обвенчали (marry) и попросили 5 фунтов за службу. Жених был удивлен:

- Мне сказал один джентльмен, которого обвенчали здесь в прошлом месяце, что с него спросили только один фунт.
- Да, это правда, сэр. Тогда нам заплатили только один фунт, так как ваш друг – наш очень хороший клиент (customer). Его венчали здесь уже 6 раз.

### 4

Во время морского путешествия за девушкой ухаживали (court) пять молодых людей. Она не знала, кого выбрать (choose). Ей посоветовали прыгнуть за борт (overboard) и выбрать того, кто прыгнет за ней. Она сделала, как ей сказали. На следующее утро, когда все пять поклонников (admirer) собрались на палубе (on deck), она прыгнула в море.

За ней последовали 4 молодых человека. Когда их выудили (fish) из воды, она была еще в большем затруднении (be at a loss). «Что я буду делать с четырьмя мокрыми (wet) молодыми людьми?» – спросила она

капитана. «Тогда выбирайте сухого», – был его ответ. Девушка сделала, как ей сказали.

### **5** Жесткие меры

Старый отец лорда просил у сына деньги, но ему было отказано (refuse). На его молитвы (prayers) и угрозы (threats) не обращали ни малейшего внимания. Но отцу было известно слабое место своего сына (soft spot). Он снял маленькую лавку башмачника (cobbler's stall) напротив дома своего сына и вывесил большое объявление (advertisement), которое могли видеть все проходящие мимо. «Здесь ботинки и туфли ремонтируются (mend) отцом известного лорда». Требуемая сумма была дана немедленно, и объявление было снято (remove).

### **6**

Группа туристов из Америки путешествует по Испании. В одном из маленьких городков им показывают старинную крепость. «Сейчас вы смотрите на замечательный образец (example) архитектуры<sup>1</sup> 14 века, а эта великолепная башня (tower) была построена в 15 веке,» – говорит гид. «А что это строится в центре дворика (courtyard)?» – спрашивает одна туристка. «А это строится фонтан, он будет прекрасным памятником испанской архитектуры 16 века,» – объясняет гид.

### **Note:**

<sup>1</sup> architecture [ˈɑ:kitektʃə]

## **The Use of the Indefinite Article with Nouns in Set Expressions**

### **Существительные, используемые с неопределенным артиклем в устойчивых сочетаниях**

Неопределенный артикль **a** употребляется в следующих устойчивых сочетаниях:

- a** lot of – много
- a** number of – ряд (несколько)
- a** few – несколько
- a** little – немного
- as **a** result – в результате
- at **a** speed of – со скоростью
- it's **a** pity – жаль
- to be in **a** hurry – спешить

for **a** short time – на короткое время  
in **a** loud/low voice – громким/тихим голосом  
to be at **a** loss – быть в растерянности  
to have **a** good time – хорошо провести время  
to have **a** cold – простудиться  
to have **a** headache – болит голова  
to go for **a** walk – пойти на прогулку  
to take **a** seat – сесть

**Ex. 31.** Translate the phrases and use them in sentences of your own.

- a) it's **a** shame/**a** pleasure;
- b) at **a** glance;
- c) to tell **a** lie.

**Ex. 32.** Pick out set expressions where the noun is used with the indefinite article (*a/an*). Use them in sentences of your own.

To speak in ... loud voice; to play ... piano; to tell ... truth; to have ... good time; it's ... pity; in ... original; to be in ... hurry; to run ... risk; to go for ... walk; in ... country; to go ... home; to keep ... house; to take ... seat; for ... short time; ... day after tomorrow; ... number of; on ... left.

**Ex. 33.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. У Тома было много обязанностей (duty). 2. Для него было удовольствием выполнять все эти обязанности. 3. Том прекрасно руководил станцией; жаль, что ему надо было уходить на пенсию. 4. Мы пошли пройтись и зашли к Тому. 5. Мы все поняли с первого взгляда. 6. Он предложил нам сесть, но мы отказались. Мы зашли на очень короткое время. 7. Я могу привести (give) ряд примеров. 8. Он очень спешил, у него было мало времени. 9. У нее болела голова, и она попросила детей говорить потише. 10. Машина мчалась со скоростью 100 км в час. 11. Он был в растерянности, но соврать не мог. 12. Позор, что мы можем сказать всего несколько слов по-французски. 13. Мы прекрасно провели время, было много интересных людей.

**Ex. 34.** "Read and Speak English" **Competition: Three funny story winners.**

Write a funny story using the above phrases.

# A SAD STORY

(abridged)

*by George Sheffield*



"You are the doctor, I suppose," said Augustus Pokewhistle<sup>1</sup>, smiling from his bed at the immense man who had arrived secretly while he slept. "It is kind of you to come, but I fear you cannot help me. However, as you are here, I will tell you, very shortly, what is wrong with me. I am an artist. I paint pictures and I draw drawings ..."

"But..."

"You are going to tell me that you are not interested in the story of my life," Augustus laughed bitterly. But I suppose you have been sent here by some interfering so-called friend of mine, and I must therefore explain my illness. And you cannot understand my illness unless I tell you the story of my life..."

"But..."

"I was delicately brought up, and it soon became clear that I was not an ordinary boy. At the age of seven I won a prize for a drawing of an animal. We will forget the fact that I had intended my drawing to represent Sunset over London. After that my proud parents provided me with plenty of pencils and paper and gave me the opportunity of studying under Great Painters. At the age of twenty-one I started business as a painter of people, and painted eleven pictures of my own face. If you go into my sitting-room, you will see them hanging sadly on the wall..."

"But..."

"Nobody came to have their pictures painted, and I had no heart to paint any more of myself..."

"But..."

"Let me finish, and then you can say "but" as often as you like. I turned from painting people to painting the country. Nine times I painted the view from the back window, and seven times I painted the view from the front window. But could I sell the seven pictures of the view from the front window, or the nine of the view from the back window? I could not. I had little money left, and I decided, after a severe struggle with myself, to forget my soul and paint for money. I determined to draw funny pictures for the newspapers..."

"But..."

"I know what you are going to say – if I had had the soul of a true artist, I would have died rather than do such a thing. But remember that my wife and children were crying for bread – or would have been crying for bread if I had had a wife and children. And was it my fault that I hadn't a wife and little children? So I made thirty or forty funny drawings every day and sent them to the papers. I soon found that selling one's soul for money is not so easy as it sounds. Believe it or not, I got no money. I just got my drawings back..."

"But..."

"You may well ask why they were sent back. I cannot tell you. Then I sank lower and lower. I tried drawing for advertisements. Clothes, pianos, bottles. I sent them off by the hundred.

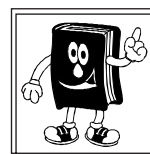
"But..."

"So I gave up the struggle. My heart was broken, and I determined to take to my bed, never to rise again. You cannot help me, doctor. I feel it in my bones that I shall never rise from this bed..."

"And I feel it in my bones that you will," said the stranger, carefully placing Augustus Pokewhistle on the carpet, "because I've come to take it away. I'm from the furniture shop, and the bed isn't paid for."

### Note:

<sup>1</sup> Augustus Pokewhistle [ɔːˈɡastəs ˈpoukwɪsl]



## I. VOCABULARY

**suppose** [səˈpouz] (v) – guess, think – думать, считать

- ☐ All the neighbours **supposed** that he was a clerk.
- ☐ You'll be there, I **suppose**.

**arrive** (v)

- 1. reach a place, come – приехать, прибыть
  - ☐ He **arrived** home on Monday.
- 2. наступить
  - ☐ At last the day **arrived**.

**fear** (v)

- 1. be afraid of – бояться
  - ☐ You should not **fear** these men.
- 2. (n) страх
  - ☐ A sudden **fear** came over him.



**wrong** (adj) – mistaken, improper – неправильный, не тот

☐ He has six **wrong** answers in his test.

☐ We took the **wrong** train.

**be wrong** – быть неправым

☐ Can you prove that I **am wrong**?

**bring up** (v) – educate, rear – воспитать

☐ They **brought up** ten children.

**turn** (v)

1. move round – вращаться вокруг

☐ The Earth **turns** round the Sun.

2. поворачиваться, оборачиваться, (перен.) обращаться к

☐ He **turned** to look at me.

☐ He gave up his work and **turned to** painting.

**struggle** (v)

1. (against/with) fight – бороться, сражаться

☐ He **struggled** with difficulties.

2. (n) борьба, сражение

☐ He gave in without **struggle**.

**sink** (v) – go down (the horizon or the surface of liquid) – погружаться

☐ Wood doesn't **sink**, it floats.

☐ The Sun was **sinking** in the West.

Study the following phrasal verbs and idiomatic expressions

1. **turn on/off (switch on/off)** – включать, выключать

**turn the corner** – повернуть за угол

**turn smth into smth** – превратить

2. **give in** – сдаваться

☐ The rebels were forced **to give in**.

**give up** – отказываться, бросать (привычку)

☐ He **gave up** smoking.

**give off** – издавать, испускать (запах, звук)

☐ The house was burning **giving off** black clouds of smoke.

3. **what is wrong with...** – что случилось

4. **have no heart to** – не хватает сил/смелости делать что-либо

**put one's heart into smth** – вложить душу во что-либо

**take to heart** – принять близко к сердцу

☐ He took her sad story **to heart**.

**at heart** – в глубине души

☐ **At heart** he didn't believe her.

5. **feel it in one's bones (be sure/certain)** – быть уверенным

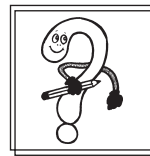
**feel for smb** – сочувствовать кому-либо

☐ I **feel for** you greatly.

**feel like** – быть в настроении, иметь желание делать что-либо

☐ I don't **feel like** going out now.

## II. COMPREHENSION



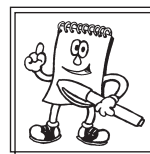
**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. Whom did Augustus find at his bedside on waking up?
2. Whom did he take the visitor for?
3. Why did Augustus begin telling the stranger the story of his life?
4. How did it happen that Augustus became a painter?
5. What were the stages of his artistic career?
6. Why did the stranger keep interrupting him?
7. What was the purpose of the stranger's visit?

**Ex. 2.** Translate the sentences from the text.

1. You are one of the soulless public. 2. But I suppose you have been sent here by some interfering so-called friend of mine. 3. I was delicately brought up. 4. Nobody came to have their pictures painted, and I had no heart to paint any more of myself. 5. I turned from painting people to painting the country. 6. ... and I decided to forget my soul and paint for money. 7. I gave up the struggle. 8. My heart was broken. 9. I feel it in my bones that I shall never rise from this bed.

## III. WORD STUDY



**Ex. 3.** Find in the text the English equivalents for the phrases.

Засмеяться с горечью; не иметь значения для кого-либо; слечь в постель; история жизни; получить премию за что-либо; предоставить возможность; открыть собственное дело; заказать портрет; рисовать пейзаж; рисовать карикатуры; опускаться все ниже и ниже; рисовать рекламу; затеряться при пересылке; отказаться от борьбы; искусство врача; мебельный магазин.

**Ex. 4.** Give the translation and three forms of the verbs: *tell, draw, rise, understand, forget, hang, make, get, give.*

**Ex. 5.** Match the words in column **A** with the words in column **B** to form phrases.

| <b>A</b>   | <b>B</b>  |
|--|---|
| 1. autumn<br>2. fear<br>3. bring up<br>4. wrong<br>5. turn<br>6. struggle with<br>7. bring<br>8. turn off<br>9. give up<br>10. sink<br>11. give off<br>12. feel like | a. a child<br>b. way/direction<br>c. a glass of water<br>d. the radio<br>e. difficulties<br>f. smoking<br>g. arrived<br>h. round the axis<br>i. the darkness<br>j. smell<br>k. in sand<br>l. going for a walk |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |

**Ex. 6.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. He will not (приедет) till 5 o'clock. 2. Summer (наступило) late this year. 3. She didn't hear anything but felt a sudden (страх) walking in the darkness. 4. She (принесла) me several books to read and some apples. 5. I understood that we were going in (неправильный) direction. 6. The child (не боится) anything. 7. She looked young and healthy though she (воспитала) three children. 8. He gave up his career and (обратился) to painting. 9. The ship (утонул) not far from that island. 10. (Борьба) against evil is his life. 11. He (не хватило смелости) tell her the truth. 12. (В глубине души) we didn't believe him. 13. He never (сдавался) without (боя). 14. The substance (испускало) a strange smell. 15. We stopped to find out (что случилось). 16. She always (принимала близко к сердцу) people's problems.

**Ex. 7.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Он вложил в эту картину всю свою душу. 2. Он боролся с голодом и холодом, но шел вперед. 3. Все ему очень сочувствовали. 4. Корабль не уходил под воду (погружался) долгое время, все были спасены. 5. Ты не должен бояться собак. 6. Он обернулся и взглянул на свой дом. 7. Он

был неправ, но продолжал спорить (arguing). 8. Все полагали, что он простой крестьянин. 9. Они воспитали ее как свою дочь. 10. Поезд прибывает утром, и я не могу встретить ее. 11. Он шел вперед, не оборачиваясь. 12. Она была очень одинока и обратилась к религии. 13. Он был очень голоден, и хозяйка (landlady) принесла ему молока и хлеба. 14. Земля оборачивается вокруг Солнца за 365 дней.

**Ex. 8.** Give a word for the definition.

- |                       |                               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. be afraid of smth  | 6. go down the surface        |
| 2. come carrying smth | 7. fight against smb          |
| 3. come/reach a place | 8. be mistaken                |
| 4. think, believe     | 9. rear and educate children  |
| 5. move round         | 10. stop doing smth (smoking) |

**Ex. 9.** Fill in articles where necessary.

1. "You are ... doctor" – said Augustus looking at ... man who was standing at his bed.
2. I am ... artist. I paint ... pictures.
3. At the age of seven I won ... prize for drawing ... picture of ... animal.
4. My parents bought me plenty of ... pencils and ... paper and gave me ... opportunity to study ... art.
5. I hadn't ... wife and ... children.
6. I tested ... pictures on ... cat. I placed them in ... line and carried ... cat in front of them.
7. I'll tell you ... story of my life.
8. At ... age of twenty-one I started ... business as ... painter of ... people.

**Ex. 10.** Translate the sentences paying special attention to the phrases in italics.

1. If you don't *put your heart into* your work you'll never achieve any results.
2. The story is sad enough *to break anyone's heart*.
3. He was a kind man *at heart*.
4. Don't *take it so much to heart*.
5. Success must have *turned his head*.
6. How could you have *turned your back* on an old friend?
7. He promised *to turn over a new leaf* in his life.

**Ex. 11.** Translate the following into English using *give up smth*, *give up doing smth*.

1. Когда же он, наконец, *бросит* курить? 2. Сначала они пытались говорить с ним, но потом *махнули рукой*. 3. После первой же неудачи он *отказался* от дальнейших попыток. 4. Они не хотели понимать ее, и она даже уже *не пыталась* доказать свою правоту. 5. Что заставило его *отказаться* от этой идеи? 6. Он *бросил* живопись, хотя (though) ему пророчили (predict) большое будущее.

**Ex. 12.** Match the words in column **A** with the translation in column **B**.

| <b>A</b>  | <b>B</b>   |
|---|--|
| 1. in the distance<br>2. nearby<br>3. opposite<br>4. beyond<br>5. here and there<br>6. about<br>7. adjacent | a. напротив<br>b. смежный<br>c. вокруг<br>d. поблизости<br>e. вне (за пределами)<br>f. вдалеке<br>g. тут и там |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

**Ex. 13.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

(For reference see Appendix 7).

1. Вдалеке мы увидели огни. 2. В смежной комнате кто-то разговаривал. 3. Мы совершили экскурсию по городу. 4. Она живет поблизости. 5. Он пошел в противоположном направлении. 6. Напротив нашего дома была школа. 7. Было темно, но то тут, то там мы слышали голоса людей. 8. Это вне моего понимания. 9. Свалка (rubbish dump) была за пределами города.

**Ex. 14.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

**rise – arise – raise**



“rise” – get up from a lying/sitting position – подняться, взойти

- ☐ He **rose** to welcome me.  
☐ The Sun **rises** in the East.

“*arise*” – come into existence – появиться

☐ A new difficulty **has arisen**.

“*raise*” – cause to rise, lift up – поднять, повесить

☐ He **raised** his hat to greet me.

☐ to **raise** one’s hand/voice/glass to smb.

1. He ... his eyes to look at me. 2. It was long after midnight when the guests ... to go. 3. The children ... and followed their mother. 4. Let’s hope that the problem won’t ... 5. She felt a warm wave of happiness ... within her. 6. The temperature ... to ten above zero. 7. When it comes to practice the usual difficulties ... 8. He ... the glass to his lips.

## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE



**Ex. 15.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. Great boast, small roast. *Много слов, да мало дела.*
2. Great cry and little wool. *Шуму много, а дела мало.*
3. True coral needs no painter’s brush. *Хороший товар сам себя хвалит.*

**Ex. 16.** Retell the story according to the plan.

1. Augustus Pokewhistle sees a man at his bedside.
2. Mr Pokewhistle wants to explain his illness.
3. Augustus’s childhood.
4. Starting his own business.
5. Mr Pokewhistle turns from painting people to painting the country.
6. Mr Pokewhistle decides to sell his soul for money.
7. Drawing for advertisements.
8. It turned out that the big man wasn’t a doctor.

**Ex. 17.** Tell the story as if you were:

- a) Augustus’s mother;
- b) Augustus’s landlady;
- c) The editor of one of the newspapers;
- d) Mr Pokewhistle’s unexpected visitor.

**Ex. 18.** Make a character-sketch of Augustus Pokewhistle.

**Ex. 19.** Make up dialogues between:

1. Augustus and the local doctor;
2. Augustus Pokewhistle and the bank manager about starting his own business as a painter;
3. Augustus Pokewhistle and a person who wanted to have his picture painted;
4. Mr Pokewhistle and the art dealer;
5. Augustus and the man from the furniture shop.

**Ex. 20.** Topics for discussions and essays.

1. Augustus is taken to bed at the height of his youth.
2. Augustus starts his business as a painter.
3. A new turn in his art career.
4. Augustus forgets his soul and paints for money.
5. Augustus's heart is broken.

**Ex. 21.** Give a free translation of the story.

### **Художники**

*по О. Генри*

Был избран (elect) новый президент Анчурии. Он считал себя самым великим, талантливым и мудрым. Он был тираном и кумиром народа, его величайшей слабостью (weakness) были портреты, монументы и похвалы (praise) его величеству. Он щедро одаривал каждого, кто создавал его портрет или памятник.

Новый план Билли Кью строился на этих чертах (features) президента. Он срочно отбыл в Америку, и через 10 дней он вбежал в мастерскую (studio) своего друга художника Уайта. Билли был очень рад, что нашел художника, который, как он полагал, поможет ему осуществить (fulfil) его план. Если Уайт напишет портрет президента, он обязательно ему понравится. Он в таких делах мастер. В кафе на углу Билли рассказал художнику весь свой проект.

Если бы Уайт смог разыграть знаменитого американского художника, президент, несомненно (no doubt), пригласил бы его написать свой портрет. Как это сделать, Билли уже придумал.

Через десять дней они прибыли в Коралио, остановились в лучшей гостинице. Билли теперь сопровождал знаменитого американского художника, который приехал в тропики, чтобы отдохнуть от славы (glory) и

заказов. Они были одеты в прекрасные белые костюмы. Кьюу сопровождал Уайта во всех его прогулках, познакомил (introduce) его с кружком англичан и американцев. На берегу моря каждый день известный художник рисовал пейзажи (landscape), такие же яркие и красивые, как его рекламная мазня в Нью-Йорке. Туземцы (natives), наблюдавшие за его работой, были в восторге. Если тиран пригласит Уайта, его портрет должен стоить (cost) не менее десяти тысяч долларов.

Через две недели план начал работать: к отелю подъехал один из офицеров президента и пригласил великого художника во дворец. Вскоре Уайт вернулся, он был в восторге: диктатор заказал портрет. На цену он даже не обратил внимания. Билли был счастлив и огорчен. Если бы они попросили в два раза больше (twice as much), президент бы тоже согласился.

На следующий день президент пригласил Уайта обсудить детали картины. Уайт вернулся в ужасном настроении. Президент подробно объяснил, что он хочет, и даже нарисовал эскиз (sketch). Он в центре картины сидит на Олимпе, под ногами у него облака, справа от него стоит Вашингтон, положив руку на плечо президента. Над ним в небе парит (soar) ангел. На заднем плане (background) пушки, солдаты и ангелы. Уайт наотрез отказывался писать эту ужасную картину. Если бы Билли удалось (manage) уговорить (persuade) Уайта, 10 тысяч долларов были бы у них в кармане. Он смог уговорить Уайта, только напоминая ему о его мечте поехать в Париж учиться искусству.

К концу месяца картина была закончена, и Уайт отправился во дворец вручать картину. Через час он вошел в комнату, где его ждал Кьюу. Если бы даже он ничего не рассказал, Кьюу бы все равно все понял.

Президенту картина очень понравилась, Уайту вручили чек на 10 тысяч долларов. Как только эта бумажка попала Уайту в руки, он как с ума сошел (go mad). Уайт схватил ее и разорвал на мелкие кусочки. Невдалеке стоял маляр и красил стену белой краской. Уайт схватил его огромную кисть (brush) и в одну минуту закрасил этот ужасный портрет, поклонился и вышел.





## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### Conditional Sentences Типы условных предложений

| Тип   | Придаточное предложение                                      | Главное предложение   | Перевод на русский язык  |
|---|--|---|--|
| <b>I.<br/>Реальное условие.</b><br>Относится к <b>будущему</b> времени.                           | If the weather <b>is</b> clear,<br><br><b>Present Ind.</b>   | we <b>will go</b> for a walk.<br><br><b>will + глагол</b>                             | <del>бы</del><br>Если погода улучшится, мы пойдем на прогулку.                     |
| <b>II.<br/>Маловероятное условие.</b><br>Относится к <b>настоящему</b> и <b>будущему</b> времени. | If you <b>moved</b> to the country,<br><br><b>Past Ind.</b>  | you <b>would (could) buy</b> a bigger house.<br><br><b>would could + глагол might</b> | <b>бы</b><br>Если <b>бы</b> вы переехали за город, вы бы могли купить больший дом. |
| <b>III.<br/>Нереальное условие.</b><br>Относится к <b>прошедшему</b> времени.                     | If he <b>had known</b> the facts,<br><br><b>Past Perfect</b> | he <b>would have told</b> us what to do.<br><br><b>would could might have + III ф</b> | <b>бы</b><br>Если <b>бы</b> он знал эти факты, он бы сказал нам, что делать.       |

#### Notes:

- Союзы: **if** – если; **in case** – в случае; **unless** – если не.  
□ You **won't** pass the exam, **unless** you **work** hard.
- Во втором типе условных предложений глагол **"to be"** всегда имеет форму **"were"** (в американском варианте возможно **"was"**).  
□ If I **were** a millionaire, I **would buy** you a palace.
- Существуют предложения смешанного типа.  
□ If I **had taken** the medicine **yesterday**, I **would be** well **now**.

4. Запомните выражение:

**if I were you/in your position/in your shoes** – на вашем бы месте

**Ex. 22.** Translate these sentences from the text and say what type of condition they belong to.

1. You can't understand my illness unless I tell you the story of my life.
2. If you go into my sitting-room, you will see them hanging sadly on the wall.
3. If I had had the soul of a true artist, I would have died rather than do such a thing.
4. My wife and children would have been crying for bread if I had had a wife and children.

**Ex. 23.**

**A** Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. If it (be) fine tomorrow, we (go) for a picnic.
2. If I (have) time tonight, I (finish) reading the novel.
3. If it (rain) next weekend, we (not be able to) plant vegetables.
4. If he (be leaving) at 6, I (ask) him to give me a lift.
5. If you (ask) me nicely, I (mend) your car for you.
6. If you (work) on Sunday, I (pay) you well.
7. If I (not take) a taxi, I (miss) the train.
8. If I (finish) the work this week, I (go) on vacation.
9. If they (be working) all afternoon, they (probably need) a cup of tea.
10. If John (be picked) for the team, he (be) happy.

**B** Open the brackets. Use these modals in the main clause: *can, could, might, right, should*.

1. If you (be) still ill tomorrow, you ... stay at home.
2. If you (finish) your work early, you ... go to the cinema with us.
3. If she (have) too much to do, she ... ask someone to help her.
4. If we (leave), you ... stay in our flat in summer.
5. If he just (arrive), he ... not have heard the news.

**Ex. 24.** Write Type 2 conditionals to match these situations.

**Model** If I **understood** the problem, I **would be able to** find a solution.

1. I don't have a spare ticket. I can't take you to the concert.
2. He can't type. He is not able to operate a computer.

3. She drinks too much coffee. She can't sleep well.
4. I'm in a hurry. I won't stay for dinner.
5. The weather isn't sunny. We will stay indoors.
6. He sits around too much. He is not fit for running.

**Ex. 25.** Translate the words in brackets.

### Lying in the Sun

Two tramps, Eugen<sup>1</sup> and Sergio<sup>2</sup>, were lying in the sun.

*Eugen:* What we (делали бы), if the sun (не светило бы)?

*Sergio:* Well, we (не лежали бы) here for a start. But it's not the important question. The important question is: what we (делали бы) if we (были) rich?

*Eugen:* If we (были бы) rich, we (смогли бы путешествовать) everywhere.

*Sergio:* True, but we (путешествуем) everywhere already.

*Eugen:* Yes, but it is not in style. If we (имели бы) money, our shaffeur, James, (мог бы возить) us round in our Rolls. Imagine, if we (были бы) in that position, we (вернулись бы) to our fine mansion in the country.

*Sergio:* Yes, the butler (подал бы) fresh clothes for us, the cook (приготовил бы) a fine meal for us. We (не ели бы) just carrots all the time.

*Eugen:* Yes. If we (имели бы) a house like that, we also (имели бы) a fine swimming pool.

*Sergio:* Yes! Yes! If we (имели бы) a fine swimming pool, we (могли бы плавать) in it as much as we liked.

*Eugen:* If we (были бы) really rich, we (могли бы загорать)!

*Sergio:* But we are lying in the sun!

#### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Eugen ['ju:ʒi:n]

<sup>2</sup> Sergio ['sə:ʒiəu]

**Ex. 26.** Comment on the situations with if-sentences expressing regret.

#### Model 1

There was a car accident. I didn't watch the road.

If I **had watched** the road, there **wouldn't have been** a car accident.

1. We came home from our holiday early because we ran out of money.
2. The house didn't burn down because the fire brigade came immediately.
3. I was sweating because it was so hot.

4. My father didn't earn much money, so life wasn't easy for us.
5. I didn't enjoy school, so I didn't do very well.

**Model 2**

I was offered a new job, but I refused.

If **I had been you**, I **would have accepted** their offer.

1. Mary paid \$200 for a dress.
2. Ali didn't study at all, so he failed his exams.
3. Sandra walked to work in the rain and got wet.
4. John ate too much birthday cake and was sick.
5. I must go to London but my car is out of order.

**Ex. 27.** Match two parts of the conditional sentences.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. You can borrow the money                             | a. I would have invited you to lunch. |
| 2. He'll get lost                                       | b. you would ask him to call later.   |
| 3. If I had known you were coming                       | c. if he was recovered from his cold. |
| 4. George says he will come                             | d. unless you are staff member.       |
| 5. You are not allowed to park here                     | e. if it was black.                   |
| 6. If he telephones while I am out                      | f. if you can stay overnight.         |
| 7. Henry Ford said you could have any colour you wanted | g. if you promise to pay back.        |
| 8. Fred will be at school next week                     | h. unless someone shows him the way.  |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

**Ex. 28.** Paraphrase the following so as to use **unless**.

**Model**

You needn't do it if you don't feel like it.

You needn't do it **unless** you feel like it.

1. He is our star performer. How can we start the performance if he doesn't come?
2. He'll never guess what you want if you don't tell him.
3. She said she would join us only if the weather kept fine.
4. He could have done a thing like that only if he were mad.
5. If you don't read the book you won't know the facts.
6. He said he wouldn't come if we didn't want him.
7. She said you had to come only if it was necessary.

**Ex. 29.** Translate the story from Russian into English.

### **Оба правы и оба неправы**

Черная машина повернула за угол и поехала по встречной полосе (the wrong side of the road), белая машина сделала то же самое, но в другом направлении (in the other direction). Оба водителя вышли из своих машин. Один из них закричал: «Если бы ты повернул на мою полосу, ты бы убил меня». «Но ты же не был на соответствующей (the right) полосе, – ответил другой. «Если бы ты вел машину более внимательно, ты бы не попал на встречную полосу», – опять закричал первый водитель. «Если бы я знал, что ты за углом, я бы держался своей стороны дороги», – сказал второй водитель.

Вдруг оба водителя прекратили кричать друг на друга, и первый сказал спокойно: «Если бы мы оба не выскочили на встречную полосу, мы бы были сейчас мертвы».

Они пожали друг другу руки (shake hands) и поехали дальше.

**Ex. 30.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Вы не сможете мне помочь, даже если вы доктор.
2. Если вы выслушаете меня, я расскажу вам историю своей жизни.
3. Вы не сможете определить мою болезнь, если я не расскажу вам историю своей жизни.
4. Если бы вы интересовались искусством, вы бы поняли меня.
5. Если бы я не получил в детстве приз за лучший рисунок, родители бы не учили меня живописи.
6. Я бы не начал свое дело, если бы не был великим художником.
7. Если бы они понимали в искусстве, они бы покупали мои картины.
8. Если бы я не был уверен, что я умираю, я бы никогда не рассказал вам свою историю.
9. Я бы не продал свою душу, если бы у меня не было семьи.
10. У меня бы были жена и дети, если бы я получал деньги за свое искусство.
11. Если бы у них было чувство юмора, они бы приняли мои рисунки.
12. Если бы они использовали мою рекламу, они бы продали все товары.
13. Если бы я не бросил борьбу, я был бы сейчас великим художником.
14. Если бы человек знал, что перед ним великий художник, он бы не забрал у него единственную кровать.

**Ex. 31.** Translate the jokes from Russian into English.

**1** *Второй Шерлок Холмс*

Приехав в Бостон, Конан Дойль взял такси. Когда Конан Дойль хотел заплатить за такси, водитель сказал:

«Если вы дадите мне билет на вашу лекцию, я предпочту ее любой плате (fare)».

«Но как вы узнали мое имя? – спросил известный писатель. – Я дам билеты каждому члену вашей семьи, если вы откроете мне тайну».

«Спасибо, сэр. Если вы посмотрите на свой чемодан, вы сами найдете ответ».

**2**

Мистер Браун собирается в магазин за покупками.

*Мистер Б:* Ты думаешь, я должен взять зонт?

*Миссис Б:* Как хочешь, дорогой.

*Мистер Б:* Если начнется дождь, он, конечно, мне понадобится.

*Миссис Б:* Без сомнения, если будет дождь, ты можешь промокнуть.

*Мистер Б:* Но если дождь не начнется, зонтик будет мне мешать (be in the way).

*Миссис Б:* Конечно, дорогой, тогда оставь его.

*Мистер Б:* Моя дорогая, ты никогда не можешь дать мне совет.

*Миссис Б:* Тогда возьми зонт на всякий случай.

*Мистер Б:* Хорошо, я возьму его, но барометр растет, небо ясное. Если погода будет хорошей, я забуду о зонтике и потеряю его. Я не возьму зонт.

Мр Браун выходит из дома, видит зонт в подставке для зонтов (umbrella-stand), берет его и выходит.

На улице он входит в ближайший магазин и просит продавца сохранить его зонтик, пока он не вернется.

**3** *На твоём бы месте*

*Мистер Х:* На твоём месте, я бы не виделся так часто с молодым Z.

*Его дочь:* Почему? Что в нем плохого (be wrong)?

*Мистер Х:* Если бы ты была старше, ты бы поняла.

*Его дочь:* А если бы ты был моложе, возможно, он бы тебе понравился.

*Мистер Х:* Ты только начинаешь работать. На твоём бы месте, я бы осторожно выбирал друзей.

*Его дочь:* Если бы ты был на моём месте, ты бы сделал тот же выбор.

*Мистер Х:* Молодые люди сейчас совсем другие. Если бы я был министром образования, я бы сделал с этим что-нибудь.

*Его дочь:* Если бы я была королевой, я бы назначила молодого министра образования.

**4**

*Моряк:* Мой отец, дед и прадед умерли в море.

*Фермер:* Тогда на твоём бы месте, я никогда не ходил бы в море.

*Моряк:* Я бы хотел знать, где умерли твои родители.

*Фермер:* Конечно, в своей постели.

*Моряк:* В постели? Тогда на твоём бы месте я бы никогда не ложился в постель, чтобы не разделить их участь (to share one's fate).

**5**

Доктор выписал больному лекарство, и он вскоре выздоровел.

«Вы выполняли мои предписания?» – спрашивает врач (follow one's prescription).

«Слава богу, нет, доктор, если бы я следовал вашим предписаниям, я бы сломал шею. Я сразу же выбросил их в окно, когда вы ушли».

**6**

*На званом вечере*

Слепой провел вечер в обществе молодой женщины. Когда все ушли, он отметил, что у этой женщины красивые зубы. Его сын удивился, ведь отец не мог видеть ее лица.

– Она бы не смеялась весь вечер, если бы она не была уверена, что будут восхищаться (admire) ее улыбкой.

## **The Use of the Definite Article With Nouns in Set Expressions**

### **Существительные, используемые с определенным артиклом в устойчивых сочетаниях**

Определенный артикль **the** употребляется в ряде устойчивых сочетаний:

in **the** morning/evening/afternoon – утром/вечером/в полдень

in **the** country – за городом

on **the** left/right – налево/направо

on **the** one hand/on **the** other hand – с одной/другой стороны

**the** day before yesterday – позавчера

**the** day after tomorrow – послезавтра

**the** other day – на днях

What's **the** time? – Который час?

to tell **the** truth – говорить правду

to run **the** risk – рисковать

in **the** original – в оригинале

to keep **the** house – сидеть дома

**Ex. 32.** Fill in the articles.

1. You know English well enough to read books in ... original. It's ... pity, I don't know English. 2. I came to St. Petersburg for ... short time, that's why I'm in ... hurry. 3. Before crossing the street you should look on ... left and on ... right. 4. She was at ... loss, she didn't know if she should tell ... truth. 5. She is ... little tired and has ... terrible headache. 6. I met him ... other day, it's ... shame, but I didn't recognize him then.

**Ex. 33.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Человек не рискнул прервать (interrupt) печальную историю художника. 2. Он думал, что говорит чистую правду. 3. С одной стороны, он жалел художника, с другой, он просто должен был забрать кровать. 4. Он был болен и сидел дома. 5. Я прочел все эти книги в оригинале. 6. Я встретил его позавчера. 7. Пейзаж прекрасный: налево море, а направо сады. 8. Надо чистить зубы утром и вечером. 9. Они живут за городом. На днях я встретил его в электричке. 10. Мы договорились (arrange) встретиться послезавтра. 11. Он спросил меня, который час.

**Ex. 34.** "Read and Speak English" **Competition: Three funny story winners.**

Write a funny story using the above set expressions.



# MABEL

(adapted)

by Somerset Maugham



They became engaged when he was home on leave.

He returned to Burma<sup>1</sup> and she was to join him in six months. But one difficulty followed the other, so in the end it was seven years before she was able to start.

He made all the arrangements for the marriage which was to take place on the day of her arrival and went down to Rangoon<sup>2</sup> to meet her. He paced the quay<sup>3</sup>. He hadn't seen Mabel for 7 years, she was a total stranger. He felt that he couldn't

carry out his promise. He was awfully sorry, how could a man refuse a girl after she had travelled six thousand miles to marry him? An idea struck him. He would write her a letter and she would understand the rest. There was a boat at the quay on the point of starting to Singapore<sup>4</sup>, he wrote a hurried letter to Mabel and without any luggage boarded the ship. The letter Mabel received ran as follows:

*Dearest Mabel, I am away on business and don't know when I'll be back. It would be much wiser if you returned to England. My plans are very uncertain.*  
*Your loving George.*

But when he arrived to Singapore he found a cable waiting for him:  
*Quite understand. Don't worry. Love. Mabel.*

He had to think fast. He was able very quickly to find out that her name was on the passenger list of the ship that was now on its way to Singapore. There was not a moment to be lost. Fortunately there was a French boat sailing next day to Saigon<sup>5</sup>, he took it. At Saigon he would be safe and surely by now she would be able to take the hint.

When he was signing his name in the visitor's book in Saigon a telegram was handed to him: "*Love. Mabel.*"

He sailed to Hong Kong<sup>6</sup> immediately, but dared not stay there; he went to Manila<sup>7</sup>, but there he didn't feel safe either. He had to hide in some place where he wouldn't be able to run straight into Mabel's arms. He went to Yokohama<sup>8</sup>. At the Grand Hotel a cable<sup>9</sup> awaited him.

*So sorry to have missed you at Manila. Love. Mabel.*

No, he was not so easy to catch like that. He had already made his plans. He went to Cheng-tu<sup>10</sup>. It was four hundred miles away. It could only be reached by road and the road was very difficult. A man would be safe there. He could rest at last: Mabel would never find him there. The consul happened to be a friend of his and he stayed with him. The weeks passed lazily one after the other.

One day the heavy doors of the Consulate opened and Mabel stepped out of a chair borne by four coolies. She looked neat and clean as usual. George grew pale as death. She went up to him with a smile.

"You haven't changed at all," she said, "I was afraid that you'd go fat and bald after seven years. I've been so nervous. It would be terrible if after all these years I simply wouldn't be able to bring myself to marry you."

She turned to the Consul. "Are you the Consul?" "Yes." "That's all right. I'm ready to marry him as soon as I've had a bath." And she did.

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Burma [ˈbə:mə] – Бирма. Before 1948 a British dependency.

<sup>2</sup> Rangoon [ræŋˈɡu:n] – seaport city, capital of Burma.

<sup>3</sup> quay [ki:] – landing place for ships where they can be unloaded or loaded.

<sup>4</sup> Singapore [sɪŋɡəˈpɔ:] – a seaport on the Malay Peninsula.

<sup>5</sup> Saigon [saɪˈɡoun] – a city in Vietnam.

<sup>6</sup> Hong Kong [ˈhɒŋˈkɒŋ] – a former British colony in South East China.

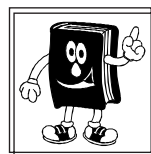
<sup>7</sup> Manila [məˈnɪlə] – a great seaport on Manila Bay.

<sup>8</sup> Yokohama [ˈjɒkəˈhɑ:mə] – a seaport on Tokyo Bay.

<sup>9</sup> a cable – a telegram

<sup>10</sup> Cheng-tu [ˈtʃeŋˈtu] – a province in South West China.

## I. VOCABULARY



**be engaged** [ɪnˈɡeɪdʒd] (v) (in)

1. take part in, busy oneself with – заниматься

☐ **be engaged in** business/politics

☐ My time **is** fully **engaged**.

2. promise to marry – быть помолвленным

☐ Tom and Mary **are engaged**.

3. **engagement** (n) – помолвка

**join** (v)

1. become a member – вступить

☐ **join** the army/the club/the party

2. unite – присоединиться

☐ He **will join** us at the restaurant.

**arrange** [ə'reɪndʒ] (v)

1. see to the details of smth – организовать, договориться, устроить

☐ The Tourist Bureau **arranged** everything for the journey.

2. **arrangement** (n. pl.) plans, preparations

☐ Have you made **arrangements** for your journey?

3. **arrangement** (n. pl.) – agreement – договоренность, соглашение

☐ The price for the house is a matter of **arrangement**.

**pace** [peɪs] (v)

1. вышагивать, ходить по...

☐ He **was pacing** the platform nervously.

2. (n) шаг

**go a good pace** – go fast – идти быстро

**keep pace with smb** – шагать в ногу, успевать

☐ It was difficult for the child **to keep pace with** that big man.

**the rest** (n) – what remains – остальной (~ные)

☐ Take what you want and throw **the rest** away.

**hide** (v) (hid, hidden) – keep out of sight – прятать

☐ The sun **was hidden** by the clouds.

**hide-and-seek** – игра в «прятки»

**total** (adj)

1. complete, entire – полный, абсолютный

☐ He was a **total** stranger.

☐ What are your **total** debts?

2. **total** amount – «всего», «итога»

☐ What does the **total** come to?

**bring** (v) (brought)

1. come carrying smth – принести

☐ The landlady **brought** me some cheese and bread.

2. accompany – привести с собой

☐ Come to the party and **bring** Mary with you.

3. produce – вызывать, приносить

☐ Spring **brings** warm weather and flowers.

4. **bring oneself to do smth** – заставить себя

☐ She couldn't **bring herself to speak** about his death.

5. **bring up** (v) – educate, rear – воспитать

☐ She **brought up** five children.

**sail** (v)

1. travel on water – плавать (о паруснике, корабле, судне)

☐ They **were sailing** along the coast.

2. begin a voyage – отплывать

☐ When does the ship **sail**?

**hint** (n)

1. indirect suggestion – нарек

☐ She gave him **a hint** that she wanted him to leave.

**drop smb a hint, give a hint** – намекнуть

**take a hint** – понять нарек

☐ She **took the hint** and stopped boasting.

2. (v) (to smb) – намекать

☐ I **hinted** that he ought to work harder.

**bear** (v) (bore, born)

1. carry – нести

☐ He moved as if he **bore** a heavy load.

2. have, show – иметь

☐ His face **bore** traces of blows.

3. behave – вести себя

☐ He **bore** himself with dignity in these difficult circumstances.

4. tolerate – терпеть, выносить

☐ I can't **bear** the sight of this man.

5. support – выдерживать

☐ The ice is too thin **to bear** your weight.

**follow** (v)

1. go after smb/smith – следовать за

☐ We **were followed** by a strange man.

2. understand – следить за мыслью

☐ Do you **follow** me?

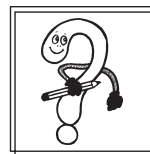
**follow smb's advice** – последовать чьему-либо совету

**board a ship/plane** – сесть на корабль/самолет

**an idea struck him** – ему пришло в голову

**There was not a moment to be lost** – Нельзя было терять ни минуты

## II. COMPREHENSION



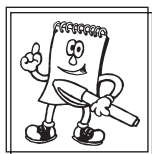
**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. When did George and Mabel become engaged? 2. Why did Mabel fail to come at the appointed time? 3. How much time had passed by the day George went down to meet the girl? 4. Why couldn't he carry out his promise? 5. How did George guess Mabel was following him? 6. What plans had he made by the time he reached Yokohama? 7. What was the place of his destination? 8. How did he intend to get there? 9. Why did he enjoy his stay at the Consulate

in Cheng-tu? 10. How did Mabel arrive at the Consulate? 11. What did she look like? 12. What did she say?

**Ex. 2.** Give Russian equivalents to the following phrases.

Make arrangements; one difficulty followed the other; carry out one's promise; refuse a girl; an idea struck him; board the ship; the letter ran as follows; be away on business; there was not a moment to be lost; take the hint; run straight into one's arms; sorry to have missed you; not so easy to catch; the Consul happened to be a friend of his; a chair born by coolies; pale as death; go fat and bald; bring oneself to do smth.



### III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 3.** Give the translation and the three forms of the following verbs.

Become, make, take, meet, see, feel, strike, understand, think, lose, hide, catch, find, grow, bring.

**Ex. 4.** Find in the text English equivalents for the following words and phrases.

Быть помолвленным; отпуск; отправиться в путь; нельзя было терять ни минуты; понять намек; сделать распоряжения(приготовления); пристань; неопределенные планы; я уезжаю по делам; вполне понимаю; было бы разумнее; список пассажиров; к счастью; быть в безопасности; наверняка; осмелиться; недели проходили; чистая и опрятная; сойти с носилок; заставить себя; побледнеть.

**Ex. 5.** Match the words in column A with those in column B.

| A             | B                       |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1. be engaged | a. the room up and down |
| 2. arrange    | b. have been made       |
| 3. total      | c. the signs of tears   |
| 4. join       | d. to the island        |
| 5. hide       | e. of the books         |
| 6. sail       | f. in politics          |

- 7. the rest
- 8. bear
- 9. board
- 10. arrangements
- 11. pace

- g. the plane
- h. the traces
- i. to meet smb
- j. number
- k. the party

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |

**Ex. 6.** Find in the text the equivalents to the italicized words.

1. One incident *happened after* the other. 2. She was *quite unknown* to him. 3. It *occurred* to him. 4. He *went there by sea*. 5. He was running away from her and in the long run she *would understand what it means*. 6. He *prepared everything* for the wedding. 7. The road was so difficult that people couldn't drive; they were carried in a chair *supported* by coolies. 8. Few people *could stand* him. 9. She *became white as snow*. 10. He couldn't *make himself* marry her after seven years. 11. The boat was ready *to start*. 12. They *agreed to get married*.

**Ex. 7.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. I've (договорился) to meet her at 10. 2. He finds it difficult (идти в ногу) with all the developments in nuclear physics. 3. John and I are going to play tennis; what are (остальные) of you going to do? 4. Have you made (приготовления) for your journey to Scotland? 5. She tried (скрыть) her feelings. 6. Our expenses (достигли итоговой цифры) of 20 pounds. 7. The sad news (вызвала) tears to her eyes. 8. They (плыли) upstream. 9. He (намекнул) to me nothing of his plans. 10. The pain was almost more than he could (вынести). 11. Where is he (прячется)? 12. Soldiers came (приведя) ten prisoners with them. 13. There was (полное) eclipse of the Sun. 14. She (имела) no resemblance to her mother. 15. His words had (скрытый) meaning. 16. They couldn't (заставить себя) to believe the news. 17. When does the ship (отправляется)? 18. He (держит себя) like a soldier. 19. I've (организовал) for a car to meet us at the airport. 20. I have (договоренность) by which I can cash my cheques<sup>1</sup> in Britain.

**Note:**

<sup>1</sup> cheques [ tʃeks ]

**Ex. 8.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я договорюсь с кем-нибудь, чтобы тебя встретили. 2. На ее лице не было и следа страха (terror). 3. Он ходил взад и вперед по комнате. 4. Пароход отправляется через несколько минут. 5. Она не могла выносить, когда мучили (tease) животных. 6. Она не понимала даже прямых намеков. 7. На его спинке были следы ран. 8. Он пытался спрятать улыбку. 9. Он присоединился к нам через час, на его лице не было и следа волнения. 10. Они были помолвлены с детства, такова была договоренность их семей. 11. Общее число служащих (employees) на заводе превышает 100 человек. 12. Пожилым людям трудно идти в ногу с прогрессом. 13. Она пришла сама и привела с собой несколько человек. 14. Я не выношу сигаретный дым. 15. Ему пришлось в голову спрятать деньги в диване. 16. Он шел быстрым шагом. 17. Он говорил так быстро, что я не мог уследить за его мыслями.

**Ex. 9.** Give a word for the definition.

1. agreement
2. put out of sight so that nobody could find
3. tolerate smb
4. become a member of a club
5. complete number
6. organize smth
7. what remains
8. travel on water
9. make oneself do smth
10. go after/behind smb

**Ex. 10.** Choose the right verb and insert it in the proper form.

**carry – bring – take**



“*carry*” – doesn’t indicate direction (направление) – нести

“*bring*” – indicates direction towards the speaker – принести, приносить

“*take*” – indicates direction away from the speaker – отнести, относить

1. The autumn came and ... with it heavy clouds and rains. 2. I have ... home several interesting magazines. “Read them tonight,” I said to my sister, “because I must ... them to the library tomorrow.” 3. Please ... this letter to the mail-box. 4. ... a raincoat, the weather may change. – But I always ... it in my bag. 5. Tell him to go away and ... his dog with him. 6. Jim arrived and ... Mary

in his car. 7. I'm sorry I've ... you here. The climate is not good for you. 8. She was ... a suit-case in her hand. 9. The guide ... us to the museum and showed us the exhibition.

**Ex. 11.** Translate the sentences with the verbs "*bring*" and "*join*".

1. У нее не было матери, и ее *воспитывала* тетя, сестра матери. 2. Ветер с юга *приносит* теплый и влажный (humid) воздух. 3. Я давно не видела твоего сына, *приведи* его с собой в следующий раз. 4. Мэйбл волновалась, что она не сможет *заставить себя* выйти за него замуж через столько лет. 5. Ворота открылись, и рикши *внесли* стул, на котором сидела Мэйбл. 6. Мы собирались на прогулку, и друзья *присоединились* к нам. 7. Он *вступил* в спортивный клуб, чтобы играть в теннис. 8. Официант *принес* вино и фрукты. 9. Она так волновалась, что не могла *заставить себя* есть. 10. Ветер *принес* дождь и шторм. 11. Он не хотел работать в шахте (mine), как его отец, и *пошел* в армию.

**Ex. 12.** Use the proper forms of the verb "*to follow*" and translate the sentences into Russian.

1. You go first and I ... you. 2. Monday ... Sunday. 3. On our way to the station the dog ... us for miles. 4. ... this road until you get to the museum, then turn left. 5. ... my arguments? 6. He spoke so fast that I couldn't ... him. 7. I've been living with her for 20 years and she never ... my advice. 8. It isn't always easy ... the fashion. 9. The concert ... the dinner. 10. He arrived first, his wife ... him. 11. Why don't you ... your brother's example? 12. She ... a diet for 5 years now.

**Ex. 13.** Fill in prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

1. George became engaged ... Mabel when he was in Britain.
2. Seven years had passed before Mabel could join ... him.
3. Mabel followed ... him to all ports and cities.
4. The wedding was to take place ... the day of her arrival.
5. She was going to carry ... her word.
6. She was ... the point of tears.
7. He boarded ... the ship which was going to sail ... Singapore.
8. He wrote her that he was away ... business.
9. When she arrived ... Singapore she found ... that she had missed him.
10. Her name was ... the list of passengers.
11. He was afraid that she was ... her way to Yokohama.



12. He was hiding all the time because he was afraid to run ... Mabel's arms.
13. He went to a place which was four hundred miles ...
14. He paced ... the quay.
15. One day she stepped ... of a chair at the Consulate.

**Ex. 14.** Study the following chart. Translate the phrases.

| Link-Verbs of Being and Seeming |   | Link-Verbs of Becoming |   | Link-Verbs of Remaining |   |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------------|---|-------------------------|---|
| <b>be</b>                       | young, old, strong<br>a teacher,<br>a woman,<br>etc.    | <b>become</b>          | old, clever,<br>sad, a sailor,<br>a student, etc. | <b>remain</b>           | silent,<br>unmoved,<br>untouched,<br>friends,<br>enemies,<br>etc. |
| <b>seem</b>                     | tired, difficult,<br>strange, etc.                      | <b>get</b>             | dark, pale,<br>tired, worried,<br>etc.            |                         |   |
| <b>look</b>                     | ugly, nice, funny,<br>like a doctor,<br>professor, etc. | <b>turn</b>            | red, pale,<br>yellow, etc.                        | <b>keep</b>             | fine, warm,<br>etc.   |
| <b>feel</b>                     | ill, hurt, foolish,<br>uncomfortable,<br>ashamed, etc.  | <b>go</b>              | mad, bad, etc.                                    | <b>stay</b>             | cold, good,<br>well, etc.   |
| <b>sound</b>                    | pleasant, strange,<br>angry, etc.                       | <b>run</b>             | dry, cold, etc.                                   |                         |   |
|                                 |   | <b>fall</b>            | ill, silent,<br>asleep, etc.                      |                         |   |
|                                 |   | <b>grow</b>            | old, tall, small,<br>grey, etc.                   |                         |   |

**Ex. 15.** Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. He looked sadly at me.
2. He looked sad when he watched the ships leave the port.
3. What has become of him?
4. He has become quite a famous man.
5. The city is becoming more and more beautiful.
6. Unable to find the ticket he got more and more excited.
7. When he got the ticket he nervously looked at the clock on the building.
8. He turned angrily around.
9. She turned as pale as death when she heard the news.
10. How quickly you are growing!
11. How tall you've grown.
12. She grows flowers in her garden.
13. What has gone wrong with my watch, I wonder?
14. Where has he gone?

**Ex. 16.** Answer the following questions, using the link-verbs given in brackets.

1. Why has he put on a warm coat? (become cold)
2. Why does she look older than her age? (grow grey)
3. Why did they decide to cut down this tree? (grow tall, dark in the room)
4. Why was he taken to hospital so suddenly? (fall ill)

5. Why have you switched on the light? (get dark) 6. Why don't you want to speak to her now? (look tired) 7. Why can't you wear the black suit? (get small) 8. Why doesn't he look at us? (feel ashamed) 9. What makes you think he is displeased? (sound angry) 10. Why doesn't she wear this hat? (look ugly) 11. Why can't we touch these flowers? (look beautiful, be harmful) 12. Why does the wood look so beautiful in autumn? (turn red, yellow; remain green).

**Ex. 17.** Choose the right link-verb from the list below.



*Grow, remain, fall, seem, sound, go, feel, stay.*

1. The hat made him ... taller. 2. It was a long time before I ... asleep. 3. The letters ... unanswered. 4. As he spoke, his voice ... firmer. 5. He felt himself ... pale. 6. His face ... hot. 7. The suit ... too small for him. 8. Some of the restaurants ... open late on Saturday.

**Ex. 18.** Fill in the blanks with a suitable link-verb.

1. Suddenly he felt that he was ... red for no reason at all. 2. I am sure he will ... an artist, he is so fond of painting. 3. Has she ... ill? What's wrong with her? 4. Don't speak to her now, she ... angry. I'm sure it's the wrong moment. 5. Water the flowers before it has ... completely dark. 6. It is ... colder and colder. Winter will be here in no time. 7. The days are ... longer. It's no longer dark at eight o'clock in the morning. 8. I think one reason why the room is dark is that tree. It's ... too tall. It's ... really big. 9. You ... rather tired this morning. Are you feeling well? 10. What does he think he is doing? He's ... wrong. That's what it is.

**Ex. 19.** Match prepositions with the same meaning.

Close, above, under, but, in addition, around, next, over, nevertheless, beneath, yet, moreover, about.

**Ex. 20.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English using the connectives:  
*but, yet, nevertheless, however, moreover, also*

(For reference see Appendix 7.)

1. Прошло семь лет, но *тем не менее* он сделал все приготовления к свадьбе. 2. *Однако* она не смогла сразу последовать за ним. 3. Он почувствовал, что не сможет жениться на Мэйбл, *кроме того*, он боялся ска-

зять ей об этом. 4. Городок, куда он уехал, был на расстоянии 400 миль, к тому же туда можно было добраться только по горной дороге. 5. Мэйбл также боялась встретить через семь лет совершенно незнакомого человека, и все же она следовала за ним из порта в порт.



## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 21.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. To avoid someone like a plague. *Как черт от ладана.*
2. Fortune favours the brave. *Смелость города берет.*
3. It's no use crying over spilt milk. *Слезами горю не поможешь.*
4. Love will creep where it may not go. *Для любви нет преград.*

**Ex. 22.** Retell the text according to the outline below.

- I. George becomes engaged.
- II. George has changed his mind.
- III. George is not going to take any risk.
- IV. Mabel arrives.

**Ex. 23.** Give the gist of the story in four sentences.

**Ex. 24.** Make up dialogues based on the following suggestions:

**1** *Between Mabel's mother and aunt*

Mabel's mother and aunt discuss her intention to go to India to get married to a man she hasn't seen for seven years. Her mother is very much against her daughter's leaving England; she is worried and gives her reasons for it. As to the aunt, she has a different opinion. For one thing she doesn't want her niece to remain an old maid like herself. For another she believes Mabel to be a strong, determined girl who can look after herself. She is more optimistic than her sister and thinks the trip will only do Mabel good.

**2** *Between Mabel and her friend*

Mabel has several reasons to be eager to marry George. First, she likes him very much, second, she truly believes that George has good reasons to

postpone their marriage, she always keeps her word and is going to carry out her promise this time as well. She has wasted several years waiting for the marriage and can not afford to wait for another person to propose to her. Besides, nobody might wish to after such a scandal.

**3** *Between George's friends from the club*

They discuss Mabel, her devotion to George. One friend is terribly sorry for George, he dislikes Mabel. The other thinks she is a remarkable woman. Each of them gives his reasons for liking and disliking her.

**Ex. 25.** Quote the text to prove that George was:

- a) neurotic; b) inclined to act rashly; c) a coward; d) determined to escape; e) frightened when he saw Mabel.

**Ex. 26.** Topics for discussion and essays.

1. From the facts given in the story try to imagine and describe Mabel.
2. Analyse the motives that made her follow George. Was it love, wounded pride, or was George her only chance to get married?
3. Do you approve of George's/Mable's behaviour? Would you behave like that?

**Ex. 27.** Give a free translation of the stories.

**I** *Свадьба, которая не состоялась*

Двенадцать тысяч молодых людей приняли участие в конкурсе (competition), устроенном (organized) одной из английских фирм. Фирма была полна решимости (determine) найти «идеальную пару Великобритании». Все, кто принимали участие в конкурсе, должны были заполнить (fill in) специальные бланки (forms) с вопросами о возрасте, цвете волос, глаз и т. д. Выбрать девушку и молодого человека для «идеальной пары» должна была электронная машина.

Фирма обещала оплатить их поездку (trip) в Париж, знакомство с достопримечательностями (sightseeing), посещение театров.

Наконец наступил день, когда результаты выбора машины стали известны: «идеальной парой» стали 19-летняя секретарша Анна и владелец небольшого магазина Дерек. Молодые люди встретились, после чего Анна сказала, что Дерек ни в чем не походит (look like) на человека, за

которого она хотела бы выйти замуж. Дерек же сказал, что Анна очень милая девушка, но... надо узнать ее ближе (know better). Молодые люди поехали в Париж. Вернувшись же в Лондон, они распрощались (part), чтобы вообще больше никогда не встретиться. «Вообще Дерек – хороший парень, но он не для меня,» – сказала девушка. А молодой человек добавил: «Анна хорошая и славная, но я никогда не смог бы полюбить ее.»

Итак, машина ошиблась (be mistaken). Теоретически все было правильно, не хватало только любви.



### Изящный эндшпиль

Аргентинский актер Антонио Гомес и жительница (citizen) Бразилии Марка-да-Дилва не были лично знакомы (acquainted). Зато они прекрасно знали друг друга как хороших шахматистов (chess-player). Они играли в шахматы, сообщая друг другу о своих ходах (move) в письмах. Их почтовый турнир (tournament by correspondence) длился целых два года.

Бедняге Антонио не везло: он проигрывал (lose) партию за партией. Недавно Марка-да-Дилва получила телеграмму. «Поздравляю, сражен (defeated), благодарен, прошу вашей руки». После свадьбы счастливый супруг поделился с друзьями секретом успешного брака.

«Все дело в письмах, точнее, в манере игры. У моей жены прекрасный вкус (taste), она настойчива, но весьма тактична. Кроме того, чутка и деликатна. Я это выяснил благодаря шахматам.»



## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### Modal Verbs and Their Equivalents Модальные глаголы и их заменители

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| <b>Can/<br/>be able to</b> |
|----------------------------|

Когда эквивалент модального глагола (**can**) дублирует уже имеющиеся формы (I **can** = I **am able**; He **could** = he **was able**), он имеет собственный оттенок значения **am/is/are/able to** – *быть в состоянии, быть способным*, **was/were able to** – *смог, сумел*.

- ☐ He is an honest man. He **is not able to** do it (*не способен*).
- ☐ Jack was an excellent tennis player. He could beat anybody (*мог выиграть*). But once he had a difficult game against Alf. Alf played very well but in the end Jack **was able to** beat him (*смог*).

| Present   | Past   | Future                     |
|---|--|----------------------------|
| <b>Can</b>  | <b>Could</b>                                 | —                          |
| <i>am</i><br><b>is</b> <b>able to ...</b><br><i>are</i> | <i>was</i><br><b>were</b> <b>able to ...</b> | <b>will be able to ...</b> |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Возможность:<br><i>могу, умею</i><br><i>возможно</i><br>Разрешение:<br><i>можно</i><br>Запрещение:<br><i>нельзя</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> I <b>can run</b> very fast.<br><input type="checkbox"/> He <b>can speak</b> French. <b>Can</b> he <b>do</b> sums?<br><input type="checkbox"/> You <b>can get</b> there by bus.<br><input type="checkbox"/> You <b>can come</b> at any time.<br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Can</b> I <b>have</b> a cup of coffee?<br><input type="checkbox"/> You <b>can't cross</b> the street here. |
|---|--|

**Ex. 28.** Ask questions according to the pattern.

**Model**    I **can't** do it. (John)  
               **Can** John do it?

1. I **can't** come early. (they)
2. Tom **can't** help us today. (Mary)
3. The children **can't** swim there. (we)
4. The girls **can't** make good cakes. (their sisters)
5. I **can't** walk with you to the station. (your elder brother)
6. Charles **can't** sing this song. (Charles' friend)

**Ex. 29.** Extend the statements according to the pattern.

**Model 1**    My foot is aching. (walk)  
               I **can't** walk.

1. I'm very busy now. (go)
2. I must hurry. (stay)

3. Are they reading the news on the radio? (hear)
4. What language is he speaking? (understand)
5. Who is over here? (see)
6. My head is aching. (read)

**Model 2** I **can** do it now. (yesterday)  
I **couldn't** do it yesterday.

1. I can meet you today. (last night)
2. He can come tonight. (yesterday morning)
3. She can work in the garden this afternoon. (on Friday)
4. We can pay the money this week. (last week)
5. I can go with you now. (an hour ago)
6. Roger can play the piano well. (an hour ago)

**Model 3** Don't ask George to do it.  
He **won't be able** to do it.

1. Don't ask Nelly to meet you.
2. Don't ask Roger to read to the child.
3. Don't ask John to dance with you.
4. Don't ask us to help Mary.
5. Don't ask me to speak to her.
6. Don't ask them to pay for us.

**Ex. 30.** Translate the sentences from the text.

1. It was seven years before she was able to start. 2. Marriage was to take place on the day of her arrival. 3. He felt that he couldn't carry out his promise. 4. How could a man refuse a girl after she had travelled six thousand miles to marry him? 5. He had to think fast. 6. He was able very quickly to find out that her name was on the passenger list. 7. By now she would be able to take the hint. 8. He had to hide some place where he wouldn't be able to run straight into Mabel's arms. 9. It could only be reached by road and the road was very difficult. 10. It would be terrible if after all these years I simply wouldn't be able to bring myself to marry you.

**Ex. 31.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. Tom and Bob (не смогли) to go with Jane. 2. I (не могу) sing this song. 3. We (не могли) sleep, they were making so much noise. 4. I (смогу) to write the letter tomorrow. 5. The doctor (не смог) come yesterday, he (сможет) to

come tomorrow. 6. They (смогли) already to discuss the problem. 7. We (не можем) have our holiday this month. 8. She (не могла) fly home last week, she (не смогла) to find anybody to leave the child with.

**Ex. 32.** Choose the right verb.

**could (not) – was (not)/were (not) able to**

*(не) мог, умел – (не) смог, удалось*

1. They didn't even want to listen to him, but in the end he ... explain everything.
2. She ... play the piano when she was a little girl.
3. He ... pass the exam last term but he studied a lot and ... pass it successfully in September.
4. He was sitting too far from the stage and ... hear anything.
5. He ... do the work by himself but together they ... finish it very quickly.
6. Tom ... leave the hospital last week, he was too weak.
7. We ... go by train or plane as the place was high in the mountains, we ... only ride there.
8. They ... wear their new dresses as it was very cold outside.
9. He can't play tennis very well now but he ... play quite well when he was younger.
10. The boy fell into the river but fortunately we ... rescue him.

**Ex. 33.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Он не мог жениться на Мейбл, когда был в Англии. 2. Она не смогла приехать в Бирму, так как умер ее отец. 3. И только через семь лет она смогла поехать к нему. 4. Он просто не мог сказать Мейбл, что забыл ее. 5. Он получил телеграмму, что она смогла понять его. 6. Он боялся, что она сможет найти его в Бангкоке. 7. Он получал от нее телеграммы, но не отвечал. Он думал, что она сможет понять намек. 8. Он решил найти место, где Мейбл никогда не сможет найти его. 9. Никто не сможет добраться туда до весны. 10. Женщина не сможет путешествовать в джонке (junk). 11. Наконец он сможет отдохнуть: Мейбл никогда не сможет найти его там.

**Ex. 34.** Translate the dialogues into English.

Mr Johnes wants to emigrate to Australia. He talks to a clerk at the Australian [ɔ:s'treɪljən] Consulate.



- К.: Итак, мистер Джонз, почему Вы хотите поехать в Австралию?  
 М. Дж.: Я потерял работу в прошлом году и так и не смог найти другую работу. Смогу я найти работу в Австралии?  
 К.: Чем вы занимаетесь?  
 М. Дж.: Я электрик.  
 К.: О, тогда вы сможете найти у нас работу.  
 М. Дж.: А как насчет жилья (accommodation)? Смогу я купить дом?  
 К.: Это проблема, но для эмигрантов есть общежития (hostels).  
 М. Дж.: А как мои дети? Они смогут ходить в школу в Австралии?  
 К.: Конечно! У нас много хороших школ.

Now the clerk is talking to a lady.

- К.: Итак, миссис Бакстер, почему Вы хотите эмигрировать в Австралию?  
 М. Б.: Я мисс Бакстер.  
 К.: О, простите, мисс Бакстер.  
 М. Б.: Видите ли, я так и не смогла найти подходящего (the right) человека в Англии.  
 К.: Мм., я ничего не могу обещать, но в Австралии много мужчин.  
 М. Б.: Смогу я найти там высокого красивого brunetа?  
 К.: Мисс Бакстер, это консульство, а не бюро знакомств.

**Must  
have to  
be to**

| Present                | Past                  | Future                 |
|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Must</b>            | —                     | —                      |
| <b>have/has to...</b>  | <b>had to...</b>      | <b>will have to...</b> |
| <b>am/is/are to...</b> | <b>was/were to...</b> | —                      |

1. Долг, обязательство
2. Приказ, настоятельный совет  
должен
3. Запрещение  
нельзя, запрещено

- ☐ We **must study** hard.
- ☐ I **must buy** some bread.
- ☐ You **must go** there at once.
- ☐ You **must see** the doctor immediately.
- ☐ You **mustn't** smoke here.

1. Оттенки **значения эквивалентов** глагола **must**:

**have to** – вынужден, придется

☐ Ann's eyes are not very good. She **has to** wear glasses for reading.

☐ Jane was feeling ill last night so she **had to** leave the party early.

**be to** – долженствование, связанное с планом, договоренностью.

☐ He **is to** meet us at the station at 5.

☐ This is Dora. She **is to** share your room.

2. Для образования вопросительной и отрицательной формы эквивалента **have to** используются вспомогательные глаголы **do/does/did**.

☐ Why **did** you **have to** go to hospital?

☐ **Do** you **have to** get up early on weekends?

☐ Tom **doesn't have to** work on Sundays.

3. **Mustn't** и **don't have to** имеют разные значения:

*“не должен” (просьба, приказ)*

☐ You **mustn't tell** anyone what I said.

*“не нужно” (отсутствие необходимости)*

☐ She stayed in bed this morning because she **didn't have to** go to work.

4. Отрицательная форма глагола **must (mustn't)** означает запрещение. Отрицательная форма глагола **need (needn't)** выражает отсутствие необходимости (*не надо, не нужно*).

☐ **May** I do it? – *Можно* мне это сделать?

☐ No, you **mustn't**. – Нет, *нельзя*.

☐ **Must** I do it? – Я *должен* сделать это?

☐ No, you **needn't** do it now. You **may** do it tomorrow if you like. – Нет, *не нужно*. *Можете* сделать это завтра, если хотите.

**Ex. 35.** The doctor is giving advice. Complete the sentences with *you must* or *you mustn't*.

1. .... take this before every meal.
2. .... take two of these every morning.
3. .... get out of bed.
4. .... get plenty of sleep.
5. .... have anything to eat.
6. .... drink lots of water.

**Ex. 36.** Choose the right verb:

**must – have to**

1. I ... be very careful not to upset him. 2. They ... pay the bill by Thursday. 3. We ... eat before we go. 4. She ... go now, it's late. 5. You ... stop working so hard. 6. I always ... do shopping on Saturday as I work on the weekdays. 7. They ... not find out that I came here. 8. He ... travel to find work. 9. I enjoy parties unless I ... make a speech. 10. You ... come to the meeting tomorrow.

**mustn't – needn't**

1. You ... say anything if you don't want to. 2. You ... smoke here. 3. You ... hurry, we have plenty of time. 4. You ... have your hair cut, it is quite short and tidy. 5. We have plenty of towels, we ... buy new ones. 6. Nobody should see you here, you ... leave your room.

**Ex. 37.** Make questions to which the following sentences might be the answers.

1. It's getting dark so we have to go.
2. You broke the window so you have to pay for it.
3. The car was broken down so we have to walk.
4. Mother is away so we have to cook our meals.
5. I've got it all wrong so I have to start all over again.
6. I had to lend him some money.
7. I have to be there at one o'clock.
8. I had to wait for him for an hour.
9. We have to buy petrol every other day.
10. He has to wait for a bus for twenty minutes.

**Ex. 38.** Insert either *be to* or *have to*.

1. We ... have a seminar the day after tomorrow, I ... prepare for it. 2. The meeting ... begin at 5 o'clock and so I ... take a taxi. 3. The lecture ... start at 10 and we ... take a snack at the snackbar. 4. They ... have a test on Monday and she ... work hard at the weekend. 5. He ... be there at 3 o'clock sharp and he ... walk very quickly. 6. He ... arrive on Monday so I ... stay in town.

**Ex. 39.** Translate the words in brackets from Russian into English.

1. It's time for the boys to have their dinner. They (должны) wash their hands.
2. Why didn't the man stay any longer? He (должен) leave now. 3. Jim (не

нужно) ring her up. 4. Peter's hat was very old. He (должен был) buy a new one. 5. We agreed to have lunch. We (должны) meet at one. 6. We (не надо) leave the house so early. The train starts in 2 hours. 7. David is ill. He (должен) take this medicine. 8. The doctor agreed to come tonight. He (должен) to come in half an hour. 9. When (должны) the Grays to arrive? They called you yesterday, didn't they? 10. Why didn't he ride the bicycle? They (должны) repair it. 11. Why didn't you spend all the money? I (должен был) save some for the next month. 12. We arranged to dine out on Sunday. When (должны) we to meet?

**Ex. 40.** Complete the sentences using *have to* and *be able to*.

**Model**

I'm running a high temperature. (stay at home, go to the University)  
So I **ll have to stay** at home and I **won't be able** to go to the University.

1. I'm afraid it's going to rain.  
(go to the country, stay in town)
2. My TV set has broken down.  
(call a repairman, watch the World Cup)
3. I haven't finished my term paper yet.  
(stay up all night, do anything until I'm through with it)
4. We are already 20 minutes late.  
(take a taxi, get to the railway station in time)
5. My son has got the flu.  
(stay at home, go to the theatre tonight)

**Ex. 41.** An Intourist guide explains the schedule for the day to a group of tourists. Try to make their day busy.

**A**

**Model**

You **are to have** breakfast at the hotel at 9 o'clock; leave for a tour of the city; have lunch at the restaurant; see a performance at the Bolshoi.

**B**

Write 5 questions the tourists may ask their guide.

**Model**

When **are** we to return **to** the hotel?

**May  
be allowed to**

| Present  | Past   | Future                                       |
|--|--|--|
| <p><b>May</b></p> <p><i>am</i><br/><i>is</i>    <i>allowed to...</i><br/><i>are</i></p>  | <p><b>Might</b></p> <p><i>was</i><br/><i>were</i>    <i>allowed to...</i></p>  | <p>–</p> <p><i>will be allowed to...</i></p> |
| <p>Разрешение: *<br/><i>можно, разрешается</i></p> <p>Строгое запрещение:<br/><i>не смей</i></p> <p>Возможность: *<br/><i>(воз)можно</i></p> | <p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>May</b> I come in?    Yes, you <b>can (may)</b><br/>   No, you <b>can't (may not)</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> You <b>may not</b> leave the room until I say so.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> You <b>may</b> often see such trees in the South of Russia.</p> |  |

\* В современном разговорном языке в этих случаях чаще используется глагол **can** (**may** – более официальная форма).

Спросить разрешения сделать что-либо можно сделать следующим образом:

☐ **Can/Could/May/Might** I borrow your umbrella?

Краткий отрицательный ответ на такой вопрос может быть выражен следующим образом:

No, **don't** – просьба не делать этого

No, you **may not** – запрещение

|  |   |
|--|---|
| No, you <b>must not</b><br>No, you <b>cannot</b> | запрещение исходит не от вас, это запрещено правилами, законами и т. п. |
|--|---|

Эквивалент модального глагола **may (be allowed/permitted to...)** используется когда необходимо подчеркнуть, что разрешение/запрещение исходит от кого-либо:

☐ You **are (not) allowed/permitted to** wait here.

**Ex. 42.** Put the following sentences into *the Future Tense*.

**Model**

You **may** go to Kiev.

You **will be allowed** to go to Kiev.

1. You may stay here for a couple of days.
2. He may play chess after he finishes his home work.
3. The students may stay in this room till seven o'clock.
4. They may use this dictionary.
5. The child may play with these toys.

**Ex. 43.** Ask for permission using the following suggestions.

**Model**

Ask your neighbour if you may take his textbook.

N., **may** I take your textbook?

Yes, you **may**. (No, you **may not**).

1. if you may have his dictionary;
2. if you may take the program;
3. if you may ask a question;
4. if you may read the text;
5. if you may go out;
6. if you may take the chalk.

**Ex. 44.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Можно мне прочитать письмо? – Да, конечно.
2. Можно курить здесь? – Нет, здесь курить не разрешается.
3. Я могу позвонить по Вашему телефону? – Да, пожалуйста.
4. Вам разрешается встать с постели завтра.
5. Мне разрешили взять словарь.
6. Ему разрешат пойти туда.

**Ex. 45.** Read the sentences and complete them.

In Britain you are not allowed to leave school or to get married until you are 16. You cannot drive a car until you are 17, you cannot drive a taxi until you are 21. You are allowed to vote at 18.

1. When you are 16 you (можете) ... and you (также можете) ... but you (не разрешается) ... until you are 18.
2. You (можете) ... at the age of 17. You (не можете) ... until you are 21.

3. You (можете) ... at the age of 17 and you (можете) ... at the age of 18.
4. It seems silly that you (разрешается) ... when you are only 16, but you (запрещается) ... until you are 17.
5. I think you should (разрешать) ... a year earlier, when you are 17.
6. If you (можете) ... at the age of 17 I don't see why you shouldn't (разрешать) ...

**Should**

Имеет лишь одну форму и выражает моральный долг, обязательство:  
**должен, следует.**

|                   | <b>Утвердительное предложение</b>     | <b>Вопросительное предложение</b>     | <b>Отрицательное предложение</b>         |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| Present<br>Future | He/we <b>should</b> stay here.        | <b>Should</b> he/we stay here?        | He/we <b>shouldn't</b> stay here.        |
| Past              | He/we <b>should</b> have stayed here. | <b>Should</b> he/we have stayed here? | He/we <b>shouldn't</b> have stayed here. |

**Ex. 46.** Complete the following sentences and explain why one *should*/*shouldn't* do it.

**Model**

... that's why I should leave.

*It's too late* that's why I should leave.

1. ... that's why I should visit her.
2. ... that's why I should stay at home.
3. ... that's why I should listen more carefully.
4. ... that's why I shouldn't be late.
5. ... that's why I should see you after classes.
6. ... that's why you should study hard.
7. ... that's why you should rewrite the dictation.
8. ... hat's why we should write a letter to her.

**Ex. 47.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Вам следовало бы помочь ему тогда. 2. Вам следует вызвать врача. У вас высокая температура. 3. Вам следовало бы изучить эту проблему заранее. 4. Ей следует поддержать вас на собрании. 5. Вам следует познакомиться с этим интересным человеком. 6. Вы должны обсудить этот вопрос сегодня. 7. Вам следует заказать номер в отеле. 8. Нам следовало бы поехать туда на прошлой неделе.

### Need

Глагол *need* употребляется только в форме настоящего времени в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях.

☐ **Need** he come here? Ему нужно приходить сюда?

☐ You **needn't** come so early. Вам не нужно приходить так рано.

Необходимость совершения действия: *нужно; есть ли необходимость*

Отсутствие необходимости: *не надо; нет необходимости.*

Разрешение не делать что-либо: *можно не...*

☐ **Need** I do it today?

☐ **Need** I go there at once?

☐ He **needn't** hurry.

☐ You **needn't** change your suit.

☐ You **needn't** copy your essay.

☐ You **needn't** go there today.



|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Need</b> I go there at once? | <b>Yes, you must.</b>   |
|                                 | <b>No, you needn't.</b> |
| <b>Must</b> I go there at once? | <b>Yes, you must.</b>   |
|                                 | <b>No, you needn't.</b> |



### Needn't have done



Относится к прошедшему времени и выражает отсутствие необходимости в прошлом.

- ☐ You **needn't** have come so early.

Вам не следовало (не нужно было) приходить так рано.



Глагол **need** употребляется также как обычный глагол со значением *нуждаться* (в чем-нибудь) и имеет формы Present, Past и Future Indefinite.

- ☐ You **need** a long rest.  
☐ You **don't need** the book anymore.  
☐ **Does** he **need** my help?  
☐ I'll **need** your advice.  
☐ He **needed** the doctor badly.

**Ex. 48.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Мне нужно проконсультироваться с доктором? – Да, обязательно.  
2. Ему нужно позвонить вам вечером? – Нет, не нужно. 3. Нам нужно пересказывать этот текст? Он очень трудный. 4. Если вы путешествуете на пароходе, вам не нужно платить за обед в ресторане. 5. Вам не нужно помогать ему, он умеет все делать сам. 6. Может, сегодня не ходить туда? 7. Можете не оставаться, если не хотите. 8. Он мог и не приходить: все уже сделано. 9. Вам не нужно было так волноваться. 10. Ни к чему было покупать эту книгу. Она есть в библиотеке. 11. Ему не надо было платить за квартиру, т. к. он жил у своей сестры.

**Ex. 49.** Answer the following questions in the negative and affirmative.

**Model**

- Need I come in the morning?  
– Yes, you must.  
No, you needn't.

1. Need you go there? 2. Need you get there very early? 3. Need we read the whole text? 4. Need she stay at home? 5. Need I write the letter now? 6. Need we write out the new words? 7. Need I pay for it? 8. Need I explain everything to her?

## REVISION

**Ex. 50.** Translate the words in brackets. Render the story in English.

### Blackmail

A great liner stopped some way from the port. The captain said to the passengers: "You (можете) visit the port if you want to, but you (должны) be back on board at 5:30 as the ship (должен) to sail off at 6 o'clock."

The ship was far too big to dock in the port and all the day the local boatmen (должны были) to take the passengers to and from the liner.

At about 5 o'clock Miss Merryweather made up her mind to return to the liner. "Will you take me over to the liner?" she asked a boatman. "I shall, for 5 dollars." "Isn't it a bit too expensive? I (mory) pay you 3 dollars. If you don't agree, I (mory) always take another boat." After a good deal of arguing the boatman agreed to take her over for 3 dollars.

When they were about two hundred yards from the liner, the boatman stopped. "Is anything the matter?" asked Miss Merryweather. "Nothing at all," the boatman answered. "Either you pay me 5 dollars, or you (можете) sit here and watch the ship sail away."

She (была вынуждена) to pay the money as she didn't want the ship to sail away without her.

**Ex. 51.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Мы все умеем читать и писать. 2. Она не может идти так быстро, она пожилая женщина. 3. После лечения он смог вернуться на работу. 4. Разрешите мне задать вам вопрос? 5. Нам разрешат навестить ее завтра в больнице. 6. Вам необходимо прекратить так много работать. 7. Мне часто приходится долго ждать автобус. 8. Кто должен убирать в комнате завтра? 9. Вам не следует так волноваться. 10. Вам не нужно ничего покупать. 11. Ему приходится много ездить (travel) по стране. 12. Хотя они никогда не были в этом городе, они смогли найти дорогу. 13. Нам не пришлось звонить в дверь: она была открыта. 14. Вам не нужно ехать так поздно, можете поехать утром.

**Ex. 52.** Translate this joke, using modal verbs.

Дама заходит в автобус с бульдогом на поводке (on a leash). Кондуктор говорит ей: «Вы не можете (не разрешается) войти в автобус, если вы не возьмете собаку на руки (carry).»

*Дама отвечает:* «Конечно. Я могу это сделать. Должна я купить билет для своей собаки?»

*Кондуктор:* «Нет, вы не должны, так как вы несете собаку на руках (carry).»

*Дама:* «Если я возьму билет, моя собака может сесть на отдельное место (vacant seat)?»

*Кондуктор:* «Конечно, может. Но она может сидеть на этом месте, только, если она не будет класть свои грязные лапы (paws) на сиденье.»

## The Use of Articles With Geographical Names Артикль с географическими названиями

1. Артикль не используется перед названиями континентов, стран, городов, горных вершин, отдельных островов.

☐ **Australia, Europe\*, Central Asia\*.**

☐ **Russia, England, Western Canada.**

☐ **London, Moscow.**

☐ **Elbrus, Everest.**

☐ **Sicily\*, Madagascar\*.**

(but: **the** Congo, **the** Sudan\*, **the** Netherlands\*, **the** Crimea)

Определенный артикль **the** употребляется с этими названиями, когда:

a) название страны включает в себя слова **Union, State(s), Republic, Kingdom**

☐ **The United States** of America

☐ **The United Kingdom** of Great Britain

b) с названиями горных цепей и архипелагов.

☐ **The Alps, the Urals\***

☐ **The Bermudas\*, the Bahamas\***

2. Определенный артикль **the** ставится перед названиями океанов, морей, озер, рек, регионов.

☐ **The Atlantic, the Pacific\***

☐ **The Baltic Sea, the Black Sea**

☐ **The Baikal, the Ladoga**

☐ **The Nile\*, the Volga**

☐ **The Far East, the Middle East, the North of England**

\* см. стр. 204

**Ex. 53.** Find in the text all the geographical names and explain the use of articles.

**Ex. 54.** Fill in the articles where necessary.

1. ... Elbrus is the highest peak of ... Caucasus Mountains\*. 2. ... Crimea\* is surrounded by ... Black Sea. 3. He lived in ... South. 4. ... England imports wool from ... Australia, timber from ... Sweden\* and ... Finland, cotton and petroleum from ... United States. Wine and fruit are imported from ... France, Italy, Spain; dairy products from ... Denmark and ... Holland\*. 5. There is a strong tide from ... Atlantic Ocean. There is also a strong tide which goes round ... north of Scotland, then into ... North Sea, and then south, toward ... Dutch\* and Belgian\* coast. 6. Fleet Street is named after a river called ... Fleet. It now runs underground. 7. ... Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world. 8. Washington is the capital of ... USA. 9. Where is ... Mediterranean Sea?

**Ex. 55.** Fill in the articles where necessary.

### ... British Isles

... British Isles lie off ... north-west coast of ... continental Europe\*. They are made up of ... Great Britain (... England, ... Scotland and ... Wales) and ... Ireland\* (... Northern Ireland and ... independent Irish Republic) and some 5,500 smaller islands. On ... whole, territory of ... British Isles is 244,000 square kilometres.

We will not find ... high mountains or ... large plains in Britain. Everything occupies ... little place. ... nature, it seems, has carefully adapted ... things – ... mountains, ... plains, ... rivers, ... lakes – to ... size of ... island itself. ... mountain 12,000 feet high would be ... wonder there. So would be ... plain 400 miles long, ... river as wide and deep as ... Mississippi\*.

Most of ... plains lie to ... east; ... west is hilly or mountainous. ... mountains even in ... highest part of England are only ... little over 3,000 feet high. ... highest mountain in ... British Isles\* is ... Ben Nevis in ... Scotland, 4,406 feet high. ... longest river is ... Severn, about 2000 miles long. ... highest waterfall is 370 feet high.

Too often ... visitor who has only ... few days to spend sees only ... Lowland England, and so he cannot see ... contrasts between ... wild fiords of ... Scotland, ... rocks of ... North Wales, ... smiling orchardland of ... Kent, and ... open moorland of ... Sutherland\*. These contrasts are often not far from ... big cities.

... climate of ... British Isles is influenced by ... Atlantic Ocean.

... winters are not so cold as they can be on ... continent, but ... summers are not so warm as they usually are on ... other side of ... Channel\*. In ... other

words, ... Great Britain has ... mild climate, but because of ... length of ... British Isles ... temperatures differ from ... district to ... district.

... North is certainly colder than ... South\*, but in ... winter ... coldest districts are ... eastern ones. ... climate here is more like that in ... Central Europe. On ... whole ... weather changes very often and there are ... few sunny days. Britain has ... rain in every month of ... year. ... rainiest months in Britain are ... November, ... January\* and ... February\*. Usually there is ... little snow in ... winter.

### Notes:

Europe [ˈjuərəp]

Asia [ˈeɪʃə]

Sicily [ˈsɪsɪli]

Madagascar [ˌmædəˈgæskə]

the Sudan [ˈsuːdɑːn]

the Netherlands [ˈneðələndz]

the Crimea [kraɪˈmɪə]

the Urals [ˈjuərəlz]

the Bermudas [bəˈmjuːdəs]

the Bahamas [bəˈhɑːməz]

the Pacific Ocean [pəˈsɪfɪk ˈouʃn]

the Nile [naɪl]

the Caucasus Mountains [ˈkɔːkəsəs ˈmaʊntɪnz]

Sweden [ˈswɪːdən]

Holland [ˈhɒlənd]

Belgian [ˈbelʒiən]

Dutch [dʌtʃ]

Isles [ˈaɪlz]

Ireland [ˈaɪələnd]

the Mississippi [mɪsɪˈsɪpi]

Sutherland [ˈsʌðələnd]

the Channel [ˈtʃænəl]

South [sauθ]

January [ˈdʒænjuəri]

February [ˈfebruəri]

### Ex. 56. Topics for essays.

1. Give the geographical survey of the region you live in.
2. Tell about the geography of the place you spend your summer/winter vacations in.

## NOISY NEIGHBOURS

*Sybil*<sup>1</sup>: Sidney!<sup>2</sup> Sidney! Wake up!

*Sidney*: Eh! What? What's the matter?  
It can't be eight o'clock already!

*Sybil*: No, it's half past one. It's those people next door again. Listen!

*Sidney*: Oh, yes. They must be having another party.

*Sybil*: Listen to that! They must be waking up the whole street. And they've got three young children.

They can't be sleeping through that noise. It's disgusting! Somebody should call the police! Sidney, wake up!

*Sidney*: Eh? I wasn't asleep, dear. They're all laughing. They must be having a good time! They never invite us, do they?

*Sybil*: Sidney!

*Sidney*: Yes, dear. What is it now?

*Sybil*: Listen! They must be leaving.

*Sidney*: Thank goodness for that! Maybe we'll get some sleep.

*Sybil*: I hope so. It's nearly three o'clock. Good night, dear.

*Sidney*: Oh, hell! They're having a row, now.

*Sybil*: I'm not surprised. They always have rows after parties. Oh, they must be throwing the pots and pans again.

*Sidney*: No, I think that was a plate, dear, or maybe the television. They will be sorry in the morning.

*Sybil*: Sidney! Wake up!

*Sidney*: Eh? Oh, what's that?

*Sybil*: He can't be hammering at this time of night.

*Sidney*: What time is it?

*Sybil*: Four o'clock. What can they be doing at four o'clock in the morning?

*Sidney*: I can't hear any voices. Go back to sleep, Sybil.

*Sybil*: Sidney! Listen. There's someone in the garden next door.

*Sidney*: Eh? It must be the milkman.

*Sybil*: No, it can't be. It's too early. It's only quarter to five. Who could it be? You'd better have a look.

*Sidney*: All right. Ooh! It's Mr Sykes, and he's carrying a spade.

*Sybil*: Oh, no! You don't think he's killed her, do you?

*Sidney*: Well, we haven't heard her voice for a while. No, she's probably sleeping.



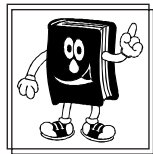
**Sybil:** But what can he be doing at this time of night?  
**Sidney:** If he had killed her, he might be burying the body!  
**Sybil:** What? You don't think so, do you?  
**Sidney:** Well, he can't be planting potatoes, can he? I suppose you want me to phone the police?  
**Sybil:** No. Ask him what he's doing first!  
**Sidney:** Hello, there, Mr Sykes. You're up early this morning.  
**Mr Sykes:** I haven't been to bed yet. We had a party last night. I hope we didn't keep you awake.  
**Sidney:** Oh, no. We didn't hear anything, nothing at all.  
**Mr Sykes:** Well, it was a pretty noisy party. My wife knocked over the goldfish tank while we were clearing up. The poor fish died. I'm just burying them before the children wake up.

(from *Streamline English III* by B. Hartley)

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Sybil ['sɪbɪl]

<sup>2</sup> Sidney ['sɪdnɪ]



## I. VOCABULARY

### next (adj)

1. coming after in order or time – следующий
  - ☐ Take **the next** turning to the right.
  - ☐ I'll go there **next** Friday.
  - ☐ Mr Green was the **next** to come.
2. рядом с кем-либо, чем-либо
  - ☐ Come and sit down **next to** me.
3. **next door** – not far from – по соседству, рядом
  - ☐ The people **next door** were very noisy.
4. **next to nothing** – almost nothing – почти ничего
  - ☐ She eats **next to nothing**, no wonder she is often ill.

### wake [weɪk] (v) (woke, woken)

1. просыпаться
  - ☐ What time do you usually **wake up**?
  - ☐ I **woke** late yesterday.
2. **wake smb up** – будить
  - ☐ This noise can **wake up** the dead.
  - ☐ The incident **woke up** the memories of his childhood.

3. **keep smb awake** – мешать спать  
☐ I hope we didn't **keep you awake**.

**call** (v)

1. cry, shout – звать  
☐ She **called to** her father for help.
2. **call on smb/at a place** – pay a short visit – зайти, «заглянуть», «заскочить»  
☐ Mr Green was out when I **called on** him.  
☐ I **called at** Mr Green's house.
3. give a name – называть  
☐ His name is Richard, but we **call** him Dick.
4. send a message – вызвать  
☐ Please, **call** a doctor/a taxi.  
☐ The doctor was **called away** to an accident.
5. telephone smb – звонить  
☐ My brother **called me up** from Leeds last night.

**leave** (v) (left) – go away – уходить, покидать, оставлять

**leave alone** – оставить в покое

**leave a lot to be desired** – оставлять желать лучшего

**sleep** (slept)

1. (v) спать, (n) сон  
☐ He **sleeps** well/badly.  
☐ Do you ever talk in your **sleep**?
2. **go to sleep** – fall asleep – уснуть  
☐ I couldn't **go to sleep** last night.
3. **put smb to sleep** – усыпить, уложить спать  
☐ His voice **put me to sleep**.  
☐ It's late, **put the baby to sleep**.

**carry** (v)

1. take from one place to another – нести, переносить  
☐ He **was carrying** a box on his shoulder.  
☐ The boat **was carried** by the waves to a small island.
2. have, possess, wear – иметь при себе, брать/носить с собой  
☐ Do you always **carry** an umbrella?
3. **carry smth out** – fulfil, complete – выполнить, провести  
☐ **carry out** a promise/plan/threat  
☐ **carry out** an experiment/a test  
☐ Every possible test was **carried out** to decide the nature of her illness.

**plant** (v)

1. put in the ground to grow – сажать  
☐ He **planted** his garden with rose-bushes.  
☐ The monument **was planted** round with flowers.
2. take up a position – занять место, позицию, «усесться»  
☐ He **planted** himself in front of the fire.



**plant** (n)

1. – растение  
☐ garden **plants**, tobacco **plant**.
2. factory – завод (AmE)  
☐ His father worked at **a plant**.

**knock** (v)

1. (**at**) hammer – стучать, бить, колотить (в дверь)  
☐ Listen! Somebody **is knocking at** the door.
2. **knock down** – сбить (с ног), снести (дом)  
☐ He **was knocked down** by a bus.  
☐ The old houses **are being knocked down** now.
3. **knock smth in** – hammer in – вбивать, забивать (гвоздь)  
☐ He took a nail and began **knocking it into** the wall.

**while** [waɪl] (n)

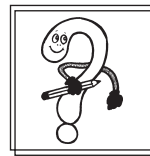
1. a period of time – некоторое время  
☐ We are going away for **a while**.  
**once in a while** – occasionally – иногда, время от времени  
☐ He didn't drink, but **once in a while** he had a glass of beer at dinner.
2. (conj) during the time that; at the same time as – во время, в течение того времени, что...  
☐ He fell asleep **while** watching TV.  
☐ **While** in Paris he studied art.
3. (conj=although) в то время, как  
☐ Jan was dressed in brown **while** Mary was dressed in blue.

## Устойчивые выражения с глаголом “have”

*have breakfast/dinner/lunch/a meal/a drink/tea/a cup of tea, coffee, etc.*  
*have a walk/a rest/a holiday/a party/a good time*  
*have a wash/a shower/a bath/a swim/a shave/a haircut/a headache, etc.*  
*have a row/a quarrel/trouble/an idea/a look, etc.*

- ☐ She **had a glass of hot milk** before going to bed.
- ☐ He **had a swim** before breakfast.
- ☐ **Do** you usually **have dinner** at 7?
- ☐ Where **did** you **have your haircut**? The style is very nice.

## II. COMPREHENSION



**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. Who is talking? 2. What time is it? 3. Why are Sybil and Sidney awake?  
4. What are they listening to? 5. What are they discussing? 6. Where do they think this noise is coming from? 7. What are they afraid of? 8. Why did Mr Sykes carry a spade?

**Ex. 2.** Agree or disagree with the following using the words:

*I agree (with you)*

*I don't agree (with you)*

*I think so too*

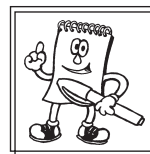
*I don't think so*

*That's right*

*That's wrong*

1. Sybil and Sidney were listening to their neighbours having a lunch party.
2. Sybil and Sidney never pay attention to what is going on in the apartment next door.
3. The Sykes are a very nice and quiet couple.
4. It was the husband who kept waking his wife up.
5. They wanted the neighbours to invite them to the party.
6. It happened at 4 o'clock in the morning.
7. Mr Sykes was burying the fish.
8. It was not the television, it was the goldfish tank that was broken.
9. They called the police and it settled things down.

## III. WORD STUDY



**Ex. 3.** Find in the text the equivalents to the following phrases.

1. Что случилось? 2. соседи; 3. устраивать вечеринку; 4. вся улица;
5. спать при таком шуме; 6. прекрасно проводить время; 7. уходить;
8. ссориться; 9. удивляться; 10. кастрюли и сковородки; 11. жалеть;
12. забивать что-либо/стучать молотком; 13. голоса; 14. молочник;
15. взглянуть/посмотреть; 16. лопата; 17. хоронить; 18. сажать картошку;
19. аквариум с золотыми рыбками; 20. убирать.

**Ex. 4.** Make up pairs of words associated in usage area.

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. wake up     | a. a friend        |
| 2. next        | b. at the door     |
| 3. call        | c. trees           |
| 4. sleep       | d. reading         |
| 5. carry       | e. early           |
| 6. plant       | f. an old barn     |
| 7. knock       | g. an experiment   |
| 8. while       | h. the post-office |
| 9. wake        | i. a basket        |
| 10. call on    | j. well            |
| 11. carry out  | k. a while         |
| 12. wait       | l. a taxi          |
| 13. knock down | m. well            |
| 14. call up    | n. door            |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |

**Ex. 5.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. He ran as fast as his legs could (нести) him. 2. He decided (осуществить) his plan alone. 3. I never (имею) much money with me. 4. The girl gracefully (несла) a basket on her head. 5. The party was so noisy that the people (рядом в квартире) (позвонили) and asked what was going on. 6. The police were looking for the witnesses who had seen the accident when a man (был сбит) by a run-away car. 7. Her house was full of green (растений) which made it very cosy. 8. The hostess put him (рядом) to Mrs Ramsey. 9. His name was Mr Kellada but everybody (называли) him Mr Know-all. 10. She asked the maid (вызвать) the doctor immediately, she (позвонила) but the doctor was out visiting his patients. 11. My father works at (заводе). 12. The child usually (будит) her at 6 o'clock but it again (засыпает) at 10 o'clock.

**Ex. 6.** Translate the following sentences into English using the words: *call, throw, leave*.

1. Мальчик заблудился в лесу (lose one's way) и звал маму. 2. Я заскочу к тебе по дороге в институт и принесу книгу. 3. Никто не называл мальчика его настоящим именем, все звали его «Чук». 4. Позвони в гараж и вызови

механика. 5. Давай *вызовем* такси – чемоданы очень тяжелые. 6. Он *бросил* мяч своей сестре. 7. Она *бросила* на меня злой взгляд (look). 8. Она *набросила* шарф на плечи и вышла. 9. Молодые люди любили *пускать пыль в глаза*. 10. Этот факт *проливает свет* на все, что случилось. 11. Мы *выходим* из дома в 8 часов. 12. Они *уехали* в Лондон. 13. Когда вы *закончили* школу? 14. Я *забыл* зонт в поезде.

**Ex. 7.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.



1. Им пришлось ждать следующего поезда. 2. Никто не звал его по имени, у него было смешное прозвище (nickname). 3. Я заглянул к ним рано утром, но они уже не спали. Они просыпаются очень рано. 4. Отец работает на заводе, и мать будит его в 6 утра. 5. Рядом с нами жили очень милые люди, она обожала свой сад, который был весь засажен розами. 6. Шляпа упала в реку, и ее унесло течением (current). 7. Мужчина должен иметь сына, построить дом и посадить дерево. 8. Тихая музыка навевала сон (усыпила). 9. Он всегда осуществлял все свои планы. 10. Она пыталась вбить зонт в сырой песок.



(see “have”-phrases on p. 208)

1. Хотите пройтись? – С удовольствием, я бы взглянул на эту старую крепость. 2. Ты плавал до завтрака? У тебя волосы мокрые. 3. У вас уже был отпуск в этом году? – Да, но я отдыхаю два раза в год. 4. Тебе надо побриться, Брауны обедают у нас сегодня. 5. После того, как он год прожил в Англии, он всегда пил чай в 11 утра и 5 вечера. 6. Иногда они ссорились, но быстро мирились (make it up). 7. Когда идет дождь, у меня часто болит голова. 8. У нее были длинные волосы, и вдруг ей пришло в голову постричься. 9. Я простудился, я, пожалуй, приму горячую ванну. 10. У Браунов была вчера вечеринка, мы отлично провели время. 11. Я ни разу не ел сегодня.

**Ex. 8.** Fill in prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

1. He didn't pay any attention to the man sitting next ... him. Do you like the people living next ... door? 2. What time shall I wake you...? 3. You woke ... me too early yesterday. 4. I've never called ... Mr Sykes' house. 5. The witnesses say they saw you calling ... Mr Sykes at 6 p.m. 6. She always has hot milk before going ... bed, it helps her to go ... sleep quickly. 7. He is known to carry ... all his promises. 8. The garden was planted ... roses. 9. You can't knock ...

the nail without a hammer. 10. The branches of the tree were knocking ... the window as if it were a man. 11. He was fond of lying on the beach having next ... nothing on. 12. He called me ... while I was having a shower. 13. She called ... a taxi, and was waiting ... it at her door. 14. He is not here, he has left ... London.

**Ex. 9.** Choose the right verb and insert it in the proper form.

### carry – bring – transport



“*carry*” – move from place to place – нести, везти

☐ She **was carrying** the baby in her arms.

“*bring*” – move smth to the speaker – принести

☐ I **brought** you some books to read.

“*transport*” – (formal and technical) move shipment of goods or people – перевезти

☐ The fruit **were transported** by air to the North.

1. Railways and ships ... goods.
2. She ... the news to everyone in the village.
3. Take this empty box and ... me a full one.
4. The criminals ... to a distant island.
5. The seeds (семена) ... by the wind for great distances.
6. The tools can't ... without package (упаковка).
7. He always ... her flowers and sweets.
8. The raft ... by the ocean current.
9. Logistics deals with ... of goods, people and machinery.
10. Spring ... warm weather and flowers.

### call – name



Both refer to giving a name to a person or thing but they also denote:

“*call*” – address smb; cry or shout – звать кого-либо

☐ She **called** to her mother to come upstairs.

“*name*” – select or nominate – называть

☐ Can you **name** all the flowers in your garden?

1. The professor asked the student ... 3 sources of energy.
2. Why doesn't my son come when I ... him?
3. ... your price.
4. Can you ... all the animals in that picture?
5. The island ... after its discoverer?

## leave – go



Both refer to moving away from a place but:

*“leave”* – stresses the place from which one starts – уходить, покидать, оставлять

❑ He **left the office/home/the party** early.

*“go”* – stresses the destination – идти, ехать

❑ **go to** the country/to the baker’s/to the cinema

1. Shall we ... there by plane or by train?
2. When did you ... London?
3. He has ... to China, he is on his way now.
4. We are ... for Rome<sup>1</sup> next week.
5. I wish this pain would ... away.
6. Let’s ... to the theatre.
7. The boy ... home and ... to sea.
8. The secretary has threaten to ... .

### Note:

<sup>1</sup> Rome [roum]

**Ex. 10.** Translate the following, using *too* or *either*.



*“too”/ “also”* – (также, тоже) используется в утвердительных предложениях.

❑ I like walking and I like cycling, **too**.

*“either”* заменяет **too** в отрицательных предложениях в том же значении (тоже).

❑ I don’t swim and I don’t run, **either**.

1. Я иду спать. Телевизор выключить? – Да, уже поздно. Я тоже больше не буду смотреть. 2. Они сегодня тоже собираются за город, только более поздним поездом. 3. Я тоже не люблю ходить в кино один, пойдем вместе. 4. Это письмо мне, но для вас тоже есть письмо. 5. Когда будешь выбрасывать старые газеты, выкинь и эти журналы. 6. Ну, я пошел. – Подожди меня, я тоже пойду с тобой. 7. Я тоже не ходил вчера на вокзал провожать ее, я был занят. 8. На работе его нет, дома тоже. Интересно, где он? 9. Она тоже молчала и не знала, как начать этот неприятный разговор. 10. Мы тоже не знаем точно, где он живет; знаем только, что недалеко отсюда.

**Ex. 11.** Translate the following sentences, using *till (until)* or *before* according to the sense.

1. Мы будем ждать вас до шести часов. 2. Это случилось до нашего приезда. 3. Они следили за игрой до самого конца матча. 4. Обсуждение продолжалось до вечера. 5. Мы пришли за десять минут до начала концерта. 6. Они жили здесь вплоть до самой войны. 7. Они жили здесь еще до войны. 8. Наше учреждение переедет в новое здание до нового года. 9. Мы собираемся пробыть здесь до конца лета. 10. Они уехали до обеда. 11. Мы договорились встретиться до собрания. 12. Разбудите меня до семи часов, пожалуйста. 13. Он успевает просматривать газету до завтрака. 14. Дети были на свежем воздухе до вечера. 15. Он сошел с автобуса за две остановки до своей и пошел пешком домой.

**Ex. 12.** Match prepositions with opposite meaning.

(For reference see Appendix 7)

Here, next to, under, before, above, there, further, behind, nearby, below, on top of, in the distance.

**Ex. 13.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Они жили *рядом* с Сайксами. 2. Было так шумно, как будто (as if) они были в *соседней* комнате. 3. И *все же* они не вызвали полицию. 4. Когда пишешь, клади газету *под* бумагу. 5. Он заглянул *под* кровать – коробка исчезла. 6. *Напротив* меня стоял человек. 7. Книги были навалены (pile) *одна на другую*. 8. *Несмотря на это*, он мог найти любую книгу на своем столе. 9. Он посмотрел *налево и направо* и перешел улицу. 10. Он всегда приходил вовремя, *тем не менее* на этот раз он опоздал.



## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 14.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. To make a mountain out of a molehill. *Делать из мухи слона.*
2. A storm in a tea cup. *Буря в стакане воды.*
3. All is well that ends well. *Все хорошо, что хорошо кончается.*

**Ex. 15.** Ask questions on the text so that the answers bring out the main facts given in it.

**Ex. 16.** Render the story in indirect speech

(For reference see V. Grammar Review, p. 129).

**Ex. 17.** Tell the story as if you were: a) Sidney; b) Mr Sykes.

**Ex. 18.** Make up dialogues based on the following suggestions:

1. *Between Sidney and the police inspector*  
(People next door; keep awake; noise; throw pots and pans; have a row; garden next door; carry a spade; kill his wife; bury the body).
2. *Between Sybil and Mrs Sykes next day*  
(had a party; pretty noisy; sorry to keep them awake; knock over the fish tank; clear up; midnight; hear nothing; be to bed; invite; have a good time).
3. *Between the Sykes' children and parents*  
(the goldfish tank; fish died; bury; knock over; be sorry; pet store; an animal; take care of; dream of).

**Ex. 19.** From the facts given in the story what impression do you form of Sybil? You may use the adjective pairs below.

|                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| quiet – nervous            | good neighbour – a gossip      |
| tactful – tactless         | friendly – unfriendly/spiteful |
| neighbourly – antagonistic | sincere – hypocrite            |

**Ex. 20.** Explain why they (Sybil and Sidney) didn't turn to the police for help.

**Ex. 21.** Topic for discussion or essay: *What can keep people awake?*

**Ex. 22.** Give a free translation of the story.

(For "may/might/must/can't" sentences see V. Grammar Review, p. 217).

### В лавке старьевщика

У Джастина и Ленни процветающий бизнес (successful business). Они ездят по маленьким городкам и деревням и покупают антикварную мебель (antique furniture) и картины у пожилых людей или в лавках старьев-



щика (junk shop). Затем они продают их в своем магазине в фешенебельной (fashionable) части Лондона.

В одной лавке старьевщика Ленни нашел интересный пейзаж (landscape). Он очень взволнован (excited).

«Она, должно быть, очень ценная (valuable). Я посмотрел на подпись (signature), это, возможно, Констэбл.»

«Констэбл! Не может быть! Все такие картины в картинных галереях, и стоят они (be worth) целое состояние (fortune).»

«Но кто-то же нашел такую картину 2 года назад. Это, возможно, еще одна,» – возражает Ленни.

«Тогда давай попробуем наш старый трюк (trick). Я предложу хозяйке магазина 50 фунтов за этот старый стул, который, вероятно, стоит только 5 фунтов, она будет счастлива и не обратит внимания на эту картину.»

«Не говори, что ты хочешь картину, скажи, что тебе очень понравилась рама (frame).»

Миссис Гриффитс поражена ценой, которую молодой человек хочет заплатить за старый стул, простоявший в витрине целую вечность. «Они, должно быть, сумасшедшие (mad).» Уходя, Джастин спрашивает о картине, стараясь не показать, что она его очень интересуется.

«О, это замечательная картина начала 15 века,» – говорит хозяйка магазина (the shopkeeper).

«Не может быть. Я видел множество подобных картин. Это, вероятно, 20 век. Они сейчас плохо продаются, но я мог бы использовать раму.»

«Хорошо, сколько вы за нее дадите?»

«Как насчет 20 фунтов?»

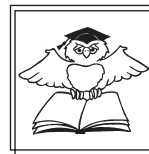
«О, нет, дорогой. Она, наверняка, стоит больше. Это из дома на горе.»

«Разрешите мне еще раз взглянуть на нее (have another look at). Да, рама действительно замечательная. Я дам вам за нее 100 фунтов.»

Миссис Гриффитс явно не хотелось расставаться со своей любимой картиной, и она с трудом согласилась (agree) на 150 фунтов.

Счастливый Джастин побежал к машине, а миссис Гриффитс крикнула вверх мужу, чтобы он принес еще одного Констэбла, если высохла краска.

## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW



### Use of Modals to Express Possibility, Certainty, Doubt, Surprise Модальные глаголы для выражения предположения, сомнения, удивления

Предположение:

**A** «Может быть», «возможно»

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| He <b>may/might</b><br><i>может быть</i><br><i>возможно</i> | <b>write</b> (вообще)      |
|   | <b>be writing</b> (сейчас) |
|   | <b>have written</b> (уже)  |

- ☐ He **might work** here.  
Он, возможно, здесь работает.
  - ☐ He **might be waiting** for you there.  
Может быть, он вас ждет там.
  - ☐ They **may have closed** the shop already.  
Они, возможно, уже закрыли магазин.
- “*Might*” выражает большую долю сомнений, чем “*may*”.

**B** «Должно быть», «вероятно»

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| He <b>must</b><br><i>должно быть</i><br><i>вероятно</i> | <b>know</b> (вообще)       |
|   | <b>be working</b> (сейчас) |
|   | <b>have left</b> (уже)     |

- ☐ He **must know** her address.  
Он, вероятно, знает ее адрес.
- ☐ He **must be working** now.  
Он, должно быть, сейчас работает.

- ☐ He **must have already left**.

Он, должно быть, уже уехал.

### Сомнение, удивление:

- A** «Не может быть, чтобы...», «неужели», «разве».

|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| He <b>can't</b><br><i>не может быть,<br/>чтобы он...<br/>вряд ли он...</i> | behave like that (вести себя так) |
|  | be working now (работал сейчас)   |
|  | have said it (сказал это)         |

- ☐ He **can't be angry** with you.  
Не может быть, чтобы он сердился на тебя.
- ☐ He **can't have taken** your bicycle.  
Вряд ли он взял твой велосипед.

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <b>B</b><br><br><b>Can/could</b> he<br><i>Неужели<br/>Разве</i> | like this place? (ему нравится?)   |
|   | be sleeping now? (он сейчас спит?) |
|   | have done it? (сделал это?)        |

- ☐ **Could** he **be** at home now?  
Разве он сейчас дома?
- ☐ **Can** Jane **be working** now?  
Неужели Джейн работает сейчас?

### Ex. 23. Translate the sentences from the text.

1. It can't be eight o'clock already.
2. They must be having another party.
3. They must be waking up the whole street.
4. They can't be sleeping through that noise.
5. They must be having a good time.
6. They must be leaving.
7. They must be throwing pots and pans again.
8. He can't be hammering at this time of night.
9. It must be the milkman.
10. If he has killed her, he might be burying her body.
11. He can't be planting potatoes.

**Ex. 24.** Give answers expressing uncertainty. Translate your sentences.

**Model** I can't find Kitty. (in the garden)  
*She **may be** in the garden.*

1. I can't find the doctor (at the hospital).
2. I can't find the boys (on the river).
3. We can't find Father (in the garage).
4. They can't find the cat (under the table).
5. He can't find his son (on the playground).
6. I can't find Bill (on the tennis court).
7. I can't find Miss Jones (at her friend's).

**Ex. 25.** Express the same idea replacing the words *possible, perhaps* (возможно) by *may/might*.

**Model** **Perhaps** Mr Jones is right.  
*Mr Jones **may be** right.*

1. Possibly this information is wrong.
2. Perhaps he is at home.
3. Possibly the meeting will be postponed.
4. Perhaps the play is over by now.
5. Perhaps the child is ill.
6. Perhaps the dog is hungry.
7. Possibly he is in the library.
8. Possibly Mother is in the garden.

**Ex. 26.** Write comments with *must* after the following sentences. Translate them into Russian.

**Model** You haven't eaten for a whole day (you/starving)  
*You **must** be starving.*

1. They have been travelling all night (they/tired)
2. He has passed his exams (he/happy)
3. Your wife is in hospital (you/worried)
4. Your son has won a scholarship (you/very proud of him).

**Ex. 27.** Rewrite the parts in bold type saying that you are almost certain. Translate your sentences.

**Model**

He drove all the way from London. **Obviously it was a long journey.**  
*It **must have been** a long journey.*

1. George was standing very close to you. **Of course you saw him.**
2. You look very well. **It seems you enjoyed your holiday.**
3. There is nobody in. **Probably they've gone shopping.**
4. My hat isn't there. **Perhaps someone has taken it by mistake.**
5. He pretended to be ill, but **I'm sure he wasn't.**

**Ex. 28.** Express surprise, rewrite the sections using *can't*. Translate your sentences.

**Model**

She looks so young. **I'm sure she's not thirty yet.**  
*She **can't** be thirty yet.*

1. It's still quite early. **I'm sure it's not ten o'clock.**
2. She doesn't look at all like Mary. **I'm sure she isn't her sister.**
3. He's been very ill lately. **He's probably not very well now.**
4. There's no answer. **They are probably not in.**
5. He is very pale. **I'm sure he is not feeling well.**
6. You are joking. **I'm sure you are not serious.**

**Ex. 29.** What do you think your parents/brothers/sisters/friends are doing at this moment?

If you think you know what they are doing answer with:

*They **must be doing this.***

*They **can't be doing that.***

*They're **probably doing this.***

**Ex. 30.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. He (возможно) be at home now.
2. He (должно быть) be at home now.
3. He (не может быть, чтобы) be out.
4. He (вероятно) be writing about his travels.
5. He (должно быть) have seen a lot of places and countries.
6. He (не может быть, чтобы) have seen any elephants on the Galapagos.
7. He (должно быть) have taken a lot of photos while he was on the island.
8. The child (не может быть, чтобы) be tired. We've only been walking for 10 minutes.

9. She (возможно) be leaving tomorrow. 10. He (возможно) have been working all day. 11. (Неужели) he still be working? 12. What is his name? It (возможно) be Smith. 13. Does he like fish? He (может быть) do. 14. (Разве) he be staying at a hotel? 15. (Неужели) he be swimming right now?

**Ex. 31.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Где Мария? – Она, должно быть, еще спит. 2. Возможно, он знает обо всем, но не хочет нам сказать. 3. Подождите немного, он может скоро прийти. 4. Я звонил ему несколько раз, но никто не ответил. Возможно, он еще не вернулся. 5. Он, должно быть, не понял вас. 6. По всей вероятности, они еще сдают экзамены. 7. Ваши друзья, возможно, уже начали работать. 8. Вряд ли они забудут об этом. 9. Он, должно быть, не сможет ходить после такой операции. 10. Посмотри-ка, на столе что-то лежит, он, вероятно, оставил нам записку. 11. Не может быть, чтобы сейчас было 10 часов. 12. Неужели она знает испанский язык? 13. Не может быть, чтобы я вас уже где-то видел. 14. Неужели вы не помните, что я возвратил вам эту книгу?

**Ex. 32.** Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Он должен быть там завтра. 2. Он может быть там завтра. 3. Он, возможно, будет там завтра. 4. Он, возможно, был (не был) там вчера. 5. Он, по всей вероятности, был там вчера (не был). 6. Он должен был быть там вчера. 7. Не может быть, чтобы он был там вчера. 8. Неужели он там был вчера? 9. Не может быть, чтобы это была правда. 10. Неужели это правда? 11. Это, должно быть, правда. 12. Возможно, это правда. 13. Это, очевидно, была правда. 14. Вы, вероятно, ошиблись тогда. 15. Вы, должно быть, ошибаетесь. 16. Не может быть, чтобы вы ошиблись. 17. Неужели (возможно ли), чтобы вы ошиблись? 18. Не может быть, чтобы они меня не поняли.

**Ex. 33.** Translate the jokes from Russian into English.

**1**

*Официант:* Простите, сэр, я забыл, какой сорт мороженого вы брали: ванильное или фруктовое.

*Посетитель:* Я не могу сказать, какой, так как на вкус (it tasted like) оно было, как клей (glue).

*Официант:* А, понятно, это, должно быть, было шоколадное мороженое.

**2**

Маленького мальчика очень хвалили (praise) за ум и сообразительность (quick wit). Присутствовавшему при этом джентльмену это не понравилось, и он сказал: «Смышленные в детстве становятся глупыми и тупыми (stupid and dull), когда вырастают, и наоборот.» «Каким вы, должно быть, были сообразительным мальчиком, сэр,» – отпарировал ребенок.

**3**

- На его лице просто написано, что он честный (honest) человек.
- Природа, должно быть, сделала это по рассеянности (in a fit of absentmindedness).

**4**

*Старые сплетницы (gossips)*

- A: Брауны, вероятно, были в зоопарке вчера. Я слышала, что миссис Браун упоминала дрессированного оленя (trained deer), разговаривая со своим мужем.
- B: Мистер Браун – музыкант, и они, возможно, говорили о чем-то тренированном ухе (trained ear).
- C: Брауны ездят в свой загородный дом каждое воскресенье. Поэтому она могла сказать, узнай о поезде, дорогой (train, dear).
- Миссис Браун:* К сожалению, вы все неправы. Когда я вернулась в город вчера вечером, я сказала своему мужу: «Здесь, должно быть, шел дождь, дорогой (rain, dear).»

## **Nouns in Set Expressions Used without an Article**

### **Существительные, используемые в устойчивых сочетаниях без артикля**

Артикль отсутствует в следующих устойчивых сочетаниях:

**all day long** – весь день;

**all year round** – весь год;

**at sunrise/at sunset** – на рассвете/на закате;

**at dinner/breakfast/lunch/supper** – за обедом/завтраком/ланчем..;

**at first sight** – с первого взгляда;

**at present** – в настоящее время;

**at war/peace** – в состоянии войны/ в мире (-ное время);

**by tram/bus/train/boat, etc** – трамваем/автобусом/поездом и т. д.;

**by air/water/sea/land** – воздушным, водным, морским путем, по суше;

**by post/airmail** – по почте;  
**by chance** – случайно;  
**by heart** – наизусть;  
**by mistake** – по ошибке;  
**go home/to school/to work/to town** – идти домой/в школу/на работу/  
 ехать в город;  
**come home** – приходить домой;  
**go to sea** – стать моряком;  
**in front of** – напротив;  
**in time** – вовремя;  
**in fact** – в действительности;  
**in conclusion** – в заключение;  
**on deck** – на палубе;  
**on horseback** – верхом;  
**on sale** – в продаже;  
**out of doors** – вне дома, на дворе;  
**for sale** – на продажу;  
**from time to time** – время от времени;  
**from morning till night** – с утра до ночи;  
**from head to foot** – с головы до ног;  
**from beginning to end** – с начала до конца;  
**take to heart** – принимать близко к сердцу;  
**take offence** – обижаться;  
**play football/tennis, etc.** – играть в футбол/теннис и т. д.

**Ex. 34.** Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary.

1. Last ... night we went to ... evening party and had ... very good time. 2. He comes from ... time to ... time. 3. He can't play ... football, but he plays ... piano wonderfully. 4. In summer we have ... dinner out of ... doors. 5. She always take everything to ... heart and that's why she is often upset. 6. Though he is much older we call him by ... name. 7. You may go ... home, we don't need you at ... present. 8. It is ... pleasure to read books in ... original. He could read for ... hours. 9. It is ... shame to loose ... heart. 10. It is ... lie from ... beginning to ... end. 11. It is ... pity you disliked him at ... first sight. 12. I met him by ... chance ... other day. 13. I haven't called you for ... ages, but, please, don't take ... offence. 14. She was talking in ... low voice. 15. She was at ... loss, she didn't know if he was telling ... truth. 16. I like travelling by ... land and can't stand travelling by ... sea. 17. He decided to go to ... sea when he was a little boy. 18. She gets up at ... sunrise and goes to ... bed at ... sunset. 19. They fell in



love at ... first sight but he had never had ... chance to tell her about his feelings.  
20. He lived in suburbs and he left ... home for ... work early.

**Ex. 35.** Translate the sentences.

1. Я послала письмо по почте. 2. В заключение он сказал, что сделал это открытие совершенно случайно. 3. Во время обеда он по ошибке называл меня Мэри. 4. И дома, и в школе вы все время можете видеть его за работой. 5. Он работал даже ночью. 6. Это государство никогда не находилось в состоянии войны. 7. Мы должны выучить это стихотворение наизусть. 8. Я взял вашу книгу по ошибке. 9. Я езжу в школу на автобусе. 10. Он сказал неправду, в действительности я видел этого человека на палубе несколько раз. 11. На борту судна было много автомобилей, их везли в Россию на продажу. 12. Он осмотрел ее с головы до ног, с самого начала она ему не понравилась. 13. Часами он мог наблюдать за мальчишками, которые играли в футбол на улице. 14. Мама никогда не обижалась, что мы забывали звонить ей. 15. Они жили в деревне, и дети любили ездить в город. Отец ехал верхом, а дети с матерью в повозке (in a carriage). 16. Они вставали на рассвете и ложились на закате, они работали весь день. 17. В настоящее время у нас нет вакансий (vacancies).

**Ex. 36.** “Read and Speak English” **Competition: Three funny story winners.**

Write a funny story using the above set expressions (pp. 222–223).

# THE FLYING DUTCHMAN

*(A Dutch Legend)*

Once upon a time a Dutch<sup>1</sup> ship left the East Indies<sup>2</sup> and sailed for Holland<sup>3</sup>. The Dutch had rich colonies in the East Indies and many young men from Holland who served as sailors, landed at Java<sup>4</sup> and settled there.

Diedrich<sup>5</sup> was a young Dutch lad who had no father or mother, and did all kinds of work to earn a living for himself. He got work as a sailor on a ship going to Java. At Java he worked for a rich planter. He spent very little and saved his money.



After some years he had enough money to buy a piece of land and a house. Then he bought more land and houses, and it was not long before he became quite rich. But he never forgot the hard time he had when he was a boy. He thought of a plan and decided to carry out that plan. He sold his land and houses in Java, put the money he received into bags and then went on board a ship going back to Holland.

He was the only passenger on the ship, for it was a trading ship. But he was a pleasant man and was soon friendly with the captain and all the crew. One day, when the ship was not far from the Cape<sup>6</sup> of Good Hope, Diedrich sat with the captain, and they talked about their early life and their plans for the future.

“And what,” said Diedrich to the captain, “are you going to do after you have made a few more voyages and have saved enough money so that you don’t have to go to sea any more?”

“I know well,” said the captain, “I am going to buy a little house and live in it with my wife and children.”

“Then you have children?”

“Yes, I have,” said the captain, and he told Diedrich their names and how old each one was and how clever they all were. At last the captain asked Diedrich, “And what will you do?”

“Ah, I have no wife or children, and there is no one in all Holland who will be glad to see me when I come home.”

Then he suddenly told the captain his great plan. “I have made a great deal of money, which I am carrying home with me. Now I shall tell you what I am going to do with it. In Amsterdam<sup>7</sup> there are many poor children, – perhaps

even poorer than I was when a child, – who have no home. I am going to build a great house and live in it, and I am going to have the biggest family in Amsterdam. I shall take only the poorest children, and they will be my sons and daughters.”

“And you will bring them to my house,” laughed the captain “and your children and mine will play together.” So they talked and talked until it was very late, and then they went to their cabins.

Now the man who steered the ship heard everything they said, and so learned about the bags of gold that belonged to Diedrich and that were now on the ship. He wanted that gold, and he thought and thought how he could get it. He knew it was impossible for him alone to seize it, and so he whispered the secret to one of the sailors and then to a few other sailors.

The crew was not a good one. The captain hired them in a hurry just before the ship left Holland. There were many criminals among them. They were wicked men, and when they found out about the gold that was on board, they were ready for anything.

When the ship was near the Cape of Good Hope, the sailors seized the captain and Diedrich and tied them. Now the ship was in the hands of the wicked crew.

These men then threw the captain and Diedrich, each tied hand and foot, into the sea. “Dead men tell no tales,” said the man who steered the ship. Then they sailed for the nearest port. But as they sailed, a horrible plague broke on board. It was plague that made the men terribly thirsty. They fought to get some water in the water casks, and spilled all the water they had.

So they were in the middle of the salt sea, with salt water all around them, but without a drop of fresh water to drink. Without a captain but with bags of gold on board, they were afraid to come near land. However, their thirst was so great that they sailed toward the nearest port. But when they came into the port, the people saw that they had the plague and refused to let them land.

“We have a great deal of gold,” the crew cried with their dry mouths. “Only give us water!” But the people ran away.

It was the same when they came to the next port, and the next. So they turned back to the ports of the East.

Then a great storm broke out and the wind drove them far out in the sea. When the wind died down, they again steered for the land. But when they were near the land, another storm broke out and the wind again drove them far out into the sea.

That was years and years ago. But when ships are sailing around the Cape of Good Hope, through the fog and mist and darkness of the night they see a phantom ship sailing, sailing, never reaching land. There is always a

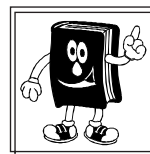
strong wind which drives the ship away from land. The sails of the ship are torn, the masts are white, and there are pale figures moving about the deck. Then the sailors whisper to each other:

“Look! There is the Flying Dutchman!”

### Notes:

- <sup>1</sup> Dutch [dʌtʃ]
- <sup>2</sup> East Indies [ˈiːst ˈɪndɪz]
- <sup>3</sup> Holland [ˈhɒlənd]
- <sup>4</sup> Java [ˈdʒɑːvə]
- <sup>5</sup> Diedrich [ˈdiːdrɪh]
- <sup>6</sup> Cape [keɪp]
- <sup>7</sup> Amsterdam [ˈæmstəˈdæm]

## I. VOCABULARY



**leave** (v) (left) – go away – уходить, покидать, оставлять

- ☐ I hope they'll **leave** soon; I want to go to bed.
- ☐ His brother **has left** home.
- ☐ The postman **left** a letter for us.

**leave alone** – оставить в покое

- ☐ I don't want your help. **Leave me alone.**

**leave a lot to be desired** – оставлять желать лучшего

- ☐ I'm sorry to give you a bad mark, Mary, but your work **leaves a lot to be desired.**

**serve** (v)

1. служить
  - ☐ They **served under** the king.
2. подавать на стол
  - ☐ What time **is breakfast served** in this hotel?

**serve someone right** – получить по заслугам

- ☐ John copied off the test paper. If he fails the test, it **will serve him right.**

**settle** (v)

1. жить, поселиться
  - ☐ They got married and **settled** in the village.
2. уладить дела
  - ☐ They **settled** their quarrel in a friendly way.

**save** (v)

1. спасти
  - ☐ He **saved** his friend from falling.

2. экономить деньги

□ We're **saving for** a new car.

**save for a rainy day** – отложить что-либо на «черный день»

**save someone's skin/neck** – спасти свою шкуру

□ I **saved my skin** by getting the job done in time.

**carry out** (v)

1. fulfil, complete – выполнить

□ **carry out** a promise/plan/threat

2. провести

□ **carry out** an experiment/a test

**learn** (v) (learned or learnt)

1. учить; выучить

□ The child **is learning** quickly.

2. узнать (о чем-то); выяснить что-то

□ His mother **learned** of her son's success in the newspapers.

**learn by heart** – выучить наизусть

□ I went over and over it while I knew my speech **learnt by heart**.

**seize** (v) – хватать, схватить

□ She **seized** the child by the hand.

**seize the opportunity** – воспользоваться возможностью, ухватиться за случай

□ Whenever you have a chance, you should **seize the opportunity**.

**hire** (v) – нанимать (на работу)

□ The fruit is picked by **hired** labourers.

**tie** (v) (tied, tying) – привязать, связать

□ They seized the captain and **tied** him.

**break out** – вспыхивать (о войне, эпидемии и т.д.)

□ A fire **broke out**.

**fight** (v) (fought) – сражаться, воевать, бороться

□ Britain **fought** against the US in the War of Independence.

**spill** (v) (spilled or spilt) – пролить

□ I **spilt** my drink on my skirt.

**land** (v) – приставать к берегу, причаливать, приземляться

□ The ship tried **to land** during the storm.

**drive** (v) (drove, driven) – управлять машиной, водить машину, подвезти

□ I never learnt **to drive** a car.

□ Can you **drive** me to the station?

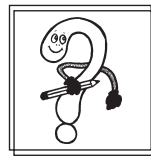
**drive someone crazy/mad** – довести кого-либо до сумасшествия; сводить кого-либо с ума

□ This pain **is driving me crazy**.

**tear** (v) (tore, torn) – рвать

□ She was wearing an old **torn** dress.

## II. COMPREHENSION



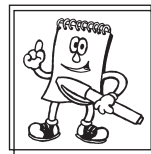
**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. How did Diedrich become rich?
2. Why did Diedrich sell his land and house?
3. What did the captain tell about his life?
4. What were Diedrich's plans for the future?
5. Who overheard what Diedrich told the captain?
6. Of whom did the crew of the ship consist?
7. What did the crew do with Diedrich and the captain?
8. What happened then?
9. Why couldn't the ship land anywhere?

**Ex. 2.** Translate the following words and phrases from the text.

Served as sailors; earn a living; a piece of land; receive money; was friendly with; the only; a trading ship; make voyages; enough money; a great deal; cabins; impossible; alone; criminals; ready for anything; found out; sailed for the nearest port; broke out; fresh water; salt water around; thirst; refused; let them land; steered for the land; drove far out into the sea; mast; deck.

## III. WORD STUDY



**Ex. 3.** Find in the text equivalents to the following words and phrases.

Приставать к берегу; все виды работы; тратить деньги; экономить деньги; забывать трудные времена; думать о ... ; осуществить (выполнить); получать деньги; команда; собираться делать; умный; принести (привести); поздно; узнать о золоте; принадлежать; прошептать; на борту; злой; управлять кораблем; томимый жаждой; ссориться; капля; сухой рот; повернуть назад; затихать (о ветре); разорванные паруса.

**Ex. 4.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. During a war any epidemic can (вспыхнуть). 2. I asked him (подвезти) me to the theatre. 3. Her friend was going to London and she (воспользовалась возможностью) to send a post-card to Mary. 4. Every day he went to the quay and watched how ships (причаливали). 5. When a student he (экономил деньги) for computer games. 6. We (узнали) of the denomination last summer. 7. My friend wants (уладить) his money matters as soon as possible. 8. Usually breakfast (подают) from 8 to 10 in hotels. 9. I couldn't wait for him and (оставил) a message. 10. They would like to buy a little cottage in the South and (поселиться) there. 11. She was so tired of everybody and everything that she asked (оставить ее в покое). 12. Their cat (рвет) all the curtains. 13. The thief wanted to run away but the policeman (схватил его). 14. He (привязал) his horse to a tree. 15. The manager of that company avoids (нанимать) casual workers.

**Ex. 5.** Match the words and phrases in column A with those in column B to form a phrase.

| A             | B                     |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. drive      | a. in town            |
| 2. seize      | b. clothes            |
| 3. fire (n)   | c. a message          |
| 4. save       | d. against conquerors |
| 5. learn      | e. some milk          |
| 6. serve      | f. the opportunity    |
| 7. carry out  | g. for a new car      |
| 8. settle     | h. the King           |
| 9. leave      | i. a car              |
| 10. fight (v) | j. a traitor          |
| 11. torn      | k. broke out          |
| 12. tie (v)   | l. research           |
| 13. spill     | m. by heart           |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |

**Ex. 6.** Choose a phrase from the list below that has the same meaning as the italicized phrase.



*Leave; serve; settle; carry out; steer; learn; seize; hire; break out; spill; land; tear.*

1. Yesterday they *made* an experiment in the laboratory. 2. She *memorizes* a list of the students very quickly. 3. World War II *began suddenly* at 4 o'clock in the morning. 4. The ship *came to* the port late at night. 5. The ship *is going to* New York soon. 6. He *went away from* his wife for a worthless actress. 7. What time *is lunch offered?* 8. We *employed for a time* an advertising company to help us to sell our new product. 9. He *pulled to pieces* his trousers climbing over the wall. 10. He *poured out* some hot milk on the child's hand. 11. She *took hold* of my hand. 12. We'd like to buy a cottage but we *haven't decided* where. 13. She *went to* France and *lived* there. 14. He *directed* his car round the corner. 15. Jane *poured out* some paint on the new carpet.

**Ex. 7.** Translate the following idiomatic expressions. Use them in the translation below.



*Leave alone; leave a lot to be desired; serve someone right; settle; save; save face; save someone's skin; save for a rainy day; learn by heart; seize an opportunity; drive crazy.*

1. Чтобы спасти свою репутацию, ему пришлось сменить работу.
2. Он приводит меня в бешенство, поэтому я стараюсь избегать его.
3. Она воспользовалась случаем поехать за границу.
4. Не мучай кота, оставь его в покое.
5. Эти цены сводят меня с ума.
6. Мой дядя предложил мне интересную работу, и я ухватился за эту возможность.
7. Тебе придется исправить перевод, он оставляет желать лучшего.
8. Спасибо, что дал мне ее адрес. Я воспользуюсь любой возможностью навестить ее.
9. Он много работает, чтобы отложить что-нибудь на черный день.
10. Директор велел выучить речь наизусть.
11. Том, ты не считаешь, что тебе давно пора обзавестись семьей?
12. Он не посещал уроки и не сдал экзамен, подделом ему!
13. Советую тебе быть осторожным (careful), если хочешь спастись.
14. Я до сих пор помню все стихи, которые выучил наизусть в детстве.



**Ex. 8.** Translate the following sentences using words and expressions from the text.

**A**

1. Молодые голландцы поселились в богатых колониях на Яве. 2. У него не было родителей, и он зарабатывал себе на жизнь на плантации. 3. Он мало тратил денег и достаточно накопил, чтобы купить участок земли. 4. Дидрих стал довольно-таки богатым человеком, но никогда не забывал о трудном детстве. 5. Они разговаривали о прежней жизни и о планах на будущее. 6. Капитан сказал, что он собирается купить дом и жить там со своей семьей. 7. Дидрих поинтересовался у капитана, сколько лет его детям. 8. Молодой голландец сказал капитану, что он везет с собой очень много денег, которые он заработал. 9. Дидрих собирался построить большой дом для бедных детей, у которых нет семьи. 10. Морьяк, который управлял кораблем, узнал о золоте. 11. Рулевой шепотом рассказал об этом секрете нескольким морякам. 12. Злые моряки были готовы на все, чтобы достать золото. 13. Моряки схватили капитана и бросили его в море. 14. На борту вспыхнула страшная чума, и у моряков не было ни капли свежей воды для питья. 15. У них были мешки с золотом, но люди не разрешили им приставать к берегу. 16. Наконец затих ветер, но вскоре внезапно начался новый шторм, и ветер снова унес корабль в море. 17. Люди видели сквозь туман и темноту ночи корабль с разорванными парусами.

**B**

1. Он служил в армии, а потом поселился в деревне. 2. Они оставили бедного ребенка одного в доме на всю ночь. 3. Детей необходимо научить экономить деньги. 4. У нас у всех есть определенные обязанности, которые необходимо выполнять. 5. Он пытался выучить французский и нанял учителя. 6. Она хватается за любую возможность заработать себе на жизнь. 7. Твой дедушка воевал во время войны? 8. Он не мог оторваться от компьютера, и это сводило ее с ума. 9. Погода оставляет желать лучшего. 10. Когда он уехал, он оставил деньги в ящике буфета. 11. Он схватил книгу, устроился в кресле и начал учить наизусть стихотворение. 12. Он с трудом управлял машиной в тумане. 13. Она очень хорошо водит машину, поэтому я разрешила ей подвезти детей к школе. 14. Почему ты разорвала ткань вместо того, чтобы разрезать ее ножницами? 15. Они привязали яркую тряпку к мачте, чтобы их обнаружили. 16. Их разговоры о моем будущем и их советы бесят меня. 17. Где вы все были раньше, когда покинули меня в беде? 18. Если вы не успокоитесь, я не смогу сообщить важную новость.

**Ex. 9.** Choose the correct definition for the words in bold type.

**to find out** (to discover something that was lost; to learn something that was hidden; to criticise something)

**to lose one's memory** (to fail to remember; to lose the ability to think logically; to fail to follow or remember the main line or thoughts of a story, etc.)

**Ex. 10.** Write twelve sentences about your plans for the weekend with the constructions “*be going to do smth*”, “*have to do smth*” and “*a great deal of*” according to the models.

**Model 1** “I’m **going to build** a beautiful house and **live** in it.”

**Model 2** “You don’t **have to go** to sea any more.”

**Model 3** I have made **a great deal of** money.

We may say: *a great deal of laughter/noise/reading/writing*.

**Ex. 11.** Translate the sentences into Russian, paying attention to the meaning of the verb “*bring*”. Use a dictionary.

1. *Bring* your friend to the party. 2. The prisoner *was brought* before the judge. 3. The policeman *brought* a charge against the fast driver. 4. He could never *bring himself* to kill an animal or bird. 5. Old age *brings* happiness. 6. Science *has brought about* many changes in our lives. 7. If I go with you in your car, will you be able to *bring me back*? 8. The director *brought forward* a new plan for the company. 9. It was a very difficult job but Ann was able to *bring it off* successfully. 10. That old song certainly *brings back* memories! 11. The beauty of the music *brought tears* to her eyes. 12. You’ve *brought this trouble* on yourself. 13. Bill is very quiet: try to *bring him out*. 14. When you go to the post-office, will you *bring me back* some stamps? 15. It’s time to *bring up* the question of his debt. 16. The election *will be brought forward* to June instead of July. 17. They want to *bring back* some old traditions.

**Ex. 12.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

### know – learn



“*know*” – знать, опознавать (кого-либо), уметь

- ☐ He **knows** the way.
- ☐ I **knew** him by his voice.
- ☐ Do you **know** how to build houses?

“*learn*” – учить (наизусть), узнавать (что-либо)

☐ I **learnt** it from the newspaper.

☐ We **learn** poems by heart.

1. I was surprised to ... that George Washington himself selected the place for the US capital.
2. I've ... Martin for years.
3. I ... from this legend that “The Flying Dutchman” was the name given by sailors to a phantom ship.
4. I ... I had passed the test.
5. Do you ... how to drive?
6. I'm ... how to drive.
7. “Do you ... my brother?” – “No, we've never met”.
8. He doesn't ... how to do it.
9. You'll ... him by the colour of his hair.
10. Do you ... of a good restaurant near here?
11. I ... that it is true.
12. Do you ... that the President of the United States is not elected directly?
13. She's ... all about computers.

### **for – during – within**



We use “*for*” + *period of time* to say *how long* smth goes on – в течение

☐ **For** six years; **for** two hours; **for** a week.

We use “*during*” + *noun* to say *when* smth happens – во время

☐ **During** the war; **during** the film; **during** the night.

“*within*” – in less than; inside – в пределах (течение)

☐ **within** an hour; **within** a mile.

1. She lived in London ... two years.
2. ... the lecture Professor Brown paid no attention to our talks.
3. Our dean will stay in London ... two weeks. ... his stay in London he will contact some Universities.
4. The talks were very difficult and lasted ... four hours.
5. We sailed a lot in the Black Sea ... our holiday in the Crimea.
6. We've been here ... a week.
7. They ran ... ten miles.
8. They lived abroad ... the war.
9. He swims every day ... the summer.
10. He swam every day ... three months.

**Ex. 13.** Fill in the blanks with prepositions and conjunctions where necessary. Retell the story.

One day a stranger came ... the city. It was very early ... the morning and yet there were many people ... the streets. He asked a man where all the people were going to, and the man told the stranger ... Atlanta and the races. The stranger was surprised. "No woman," he said, "will take my life ... me."

The stranger went ... and walked ... long time ... the streets. When he returned ... the gate ... the palace, he was covered ... dust. The porter looked ... his dirty clothes and hesitated. But the stranger said ... him that he was the king's son, and the porter allowed him to go ... the palace.

And the young man entered ... palace, where they gave ... him water to wash himself ..., and new clothes. When Atlanta saw a stranger ... the table that day, she turned ... her eyes, ... she was sure he came to run ... the race ... her ... the next morning. ... first the guests were rather silent, but the stranger talked ... so much humour that soon there was a smile ... the faces ... all ... the table. ... the meal, the king came ... ... the stranger. "Sir," he said, "your name and country are still unknown ... us, but we invite you to stay as long as you like."

"I thank you," answered the stranger, "but I cannot tell ... you my name, and I cannot stay ... the house ... any man ... more than one night. I must start ... dawn. I thank you ... your kindness, and beg you to excuse me. I should like to rest now, ... I have travelled far and must go a long distance yet."

So he left the king and his daughter. But Atlanta could not forget the man who said farewell ... her ... such a light heart. When she asked herself why she was interested ... him, she could find no answer. Yet she decided to speak ... him again ... he left the palace ... the next morning.

**Ex. 14.** Translate the following words and phrases. Use them in the text below.



*Finally; in the end; then; at last; on the very next day; at that time; about this time; next; soon; after some time; eventually; until.*

Little Christopher Columbus<sup>1</sup> was interested in the big ships coming from or leaving for strange and distant lands. (Затем) he learnt how to make maps used by sailors, and he (вскоре) became very clever at this work.

(Наконец) he felt that he could not stay at home any longer. It was (примерно в это время) that astronomers were declaring the earth to be a ball. This theory interested Columbus greatly. He made up his mind to sail to the West (до тех пор, пока) he came to the Indies. The seamen (в то время) did not sail very far. (В конце концов), the Spanish Government offered him

ships and men. Columbus sailed to the West and reached the Canary Islands. These islands were, as people thought, the end of the world. They were afraid to go any further. But, (наконец) the men promised to sail three more days. (Буквально на следующий день) they saw land! (Через некоторое время) Columbus's three ships sailed further and they (потом) came to the large islands; Columbus had no idea that he had (в конечном счете) discovered a new continent.

**Note:**

<sup>1</sup> Christopher Columbus [ˈkrɪstəfə kəˈlɪmbəs]

**Ex. 15.** Translate the following into English using *till*, *until* or *before* according to the sense.

1. Она решила подождать *до* двенадцати часов.
2. Она ушла *до* двенадцати часов.
3. Это случилось задолго *до* моего приезда.
4. *До* этого случая у нас с ним никогда не было споров.
5. Он оставался там *до* конца и ушел одним из последних.
6. Времени *до* отъезда оставалось очень мало.
7. Они успели уйти *до* дождя.
8. Он согласился ждать ответа *до* вечера.
9. Геологи должны были вернуться на базу *до* наступления холодов.
10. Окончательное решение вопроса придется отложить *до* возвращения ректора.



## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 16.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. Can the leopard change his spots? *Горбатого могила исправит.*
2. Ill-gotten gains never prosper. *Чужое добро впрок не идет.*
3. Misfortunes never come alone. *Пришла беда, отворяй ворота.*

**Ex. 17.** Make up a plan of the story and retell it in accordance with your plan.

**Ex. 18.** Ask questions on the text so that the answers bring out the main facts given in it.

**Ex. 19.** Tell the story as if you were the captain.

**Ex. 20.** Quote some sentences from the story which describe:

- a) the steersman's feelings and behaviour;
- b) the plague.

**Ex. 21.** Topics for discussion and essays.

- 1) How Diedrich grew up and made money.
- 2) Diedrich's plan.
- 3) Betrayal (in the legend).
- 4) Have you ever been betrayed?
- 5) How were the thieves punished?
- 6) Should dishonest behaviour be punished?

**Ex. 22.** Give a free translation of the text

(For Degrees of Comparison see V. Grammar Review, p. 238).

Жил-был однажды король по имени Мидас. У него была дочь, которую звали Мэриголд. Больше всего на свете Мидас любил (to be fond of) золото. Но больше золота он любил свою маленькую дочь. Но чем больше Мидас любил свою дочь, тем больше он желал богатства (wealth). Он думал: «Самое лучшее, что я смогу сделать для этого ребенка, – оставить ей огромное количество желтого, сверкающего золота.»

Раньше королю нравились цветы, он любил музыку, но сейчас единственной музыкой для него был звон (chink) золотых монет (coins). Он проводил почти весь день в темной комнате, в подвале (basement) дворца. Здесь он хранил свое богатство (treasure!). Он брал мешок золота и рассматривал его под лучом солнца, который падал из маленького окна. Мидас ценил (to value) солнечный луч только потому, что его сокровище сверкало с его помощью.

Он шептал себе: «О, Мидас, богатый король Мидас, какой ты счастливый человек!» Однажды он, как всегда, наслаждался своими сокровищами. Вдруг на золото упала (to fall over) тень. Мидас посмотрел вверх и увидел фигуру незнакомца (stranger), стоящего в ярком солнечном луче. Он был молод.

Мидас знал, что дверь заперта и подумал, что незнакомец, должно быть, волшебник (a magician). Король совершенно не испугался. У незнакомца был такой добрый взгляд! Незнакомец молча рассматривал комнату. Затем, с солнечной улыбкой (with a beam), он повернулся к Мидасу.

«Ты – богатый человек, Мидас! – сказал он. – Мне кажется, ни у кого нет столько золота, как у тебя.»

«Да, ты прав, но мне понадобилась вся моя жизнь, чтобы скопить (collect) эти сокровища. Если бы я мог жить тысячу лет!»

«Что! – воскликнул незнакомец. – Так ты недоволен (to be satisfied)?»

Мидас покачал головой.

«А что бы тебя удовлетворило? – спросил незнакомец. – Скажи мне свое желание (wish).»

Мидас подумал немного и сказал: «Я устал копить богатства. Я очень стараюсь (to do one's best), но сокровищ все еще недостаточно. Я хотел бы, чтобы все, к чему я прикасаюсь, превращалось в золото.»

«Золотое прикосновение (touch)! – воскликнул он. – Мой друг, а ты уверен, что никогда не пожалеешь (to regret) об этом?»

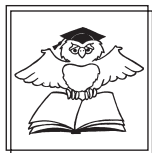
«Конечно, нет!» – ответил Мидас.

«Будь по-твоему,» – сказал незнакомец.

### Note:

<sup>1</sup> treasure ['treʒə]

(to be continued in ex. 39 p. 252-253)



## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs Степени сравнения прилагательных и наречий

Прилагательные и наречия образуют степени сравнения по одному правилу. Часто совпадают даже формы прилагательных и наречий.

|               |   |                 |
|---------------|---|-----------------|
| <i>late</i>   | – | поздний/поздно; |
| <i>early</i>  | – | ранний/рано;    |
| <i>hard</i>   | – | трудный/трудно; |
| <i>little</i> | – | маленький/мало; |
| <i>near</i>   | – | близкий/близко; |
| <i>high</i>   | – | высокий/высоко. |

- ☐ It was **early** spring. (adj)
- ☐ My mother always gets up **early**. (adv)
- ☐ The house is very **high**. (adj)
- ☐ The bird flew very **high**. (adv)

### Degrees of Comparison

|  | <b>Positive degree</b><br><b>Положительная</b>                     | <b>Comparative degree</b><br><b>Сравнительная</b>   | <b>Superlative degree</b><br><b>Превосходная</b>  |
|--|--|---|---|
| односложные, двусложные                          | hot<br>easy (adj)<br>early<br>soon (adv)                           | hotter<br>easier<br>earlier<br>sooner   | the hottest<br>the easiest<br>the earliest<br>the soonest   |
| многосложные                                     | beautiful (adj)<br>comfortable<br>correctly (adv)<br>exactly       | <b>more</b> beautiful<br><b>more</b> comfortable<br><b>more</b> correctly<br><b>more</b> exactly  | the <b>most</b> beautiful<br>the <b>most</b> comfortable<br>the <b>most</b> correctly<br>the <b>most</b> exactly  |
| Смешанные случаи                                 | old (adj)<br><br>often (adv)<br><br>slowly<br><br>quick<br>quickly | older<br>elder <sup>1</sup><br><br>oftener<br><b>more</b> often<br><br>slower<br><b>more</b> slowly<br><br>quicker<br><b>more</b> quickly | the oldest<br>the eldest<br><br>the oftenest<br>the <b>most</b> often<br><br>the slowest<br>the <b>most</b> slowly<br><br>the quickest<br>the <b>most</b> quickly |
| «Неправильные» случаи, которые следует запомнить | far<br><br>well/good (adj)<br>badly/bad<br>much<br>little          | farther<br>further <sup>2</sup><br>better<br>worse<br>more<br>less  | the farthest<br>the furthest<br>the best<br>the worst<br>the most<br>the least  |

<sup>1</sup> elder – для обозначения возрастных отношений в семье (*elder brother*).

<sup>2</sup> further – дальнейший, добавочный.



## Spelling Rules

При прибавлении суффиксов **-er**, **-est** происходят следующие изменения в написании слов:

1. У таких прилагательных, как *hot*, *big*, *fat*, *sad*, *wet*; etc. (1 гласный + 1 согласный) удваивается конечный согласный:

*hot* – **hotter** – **the hottest**

2. У таких прилагательных, как (оканчивающихся на -e) *nice*, *fine*, *large*, *late*, *safe* прибавляется **-r**, **-st**:

*nice* – **nicer** – **the nicest**

3. В таких прилагательных, как *busy* (согласный+y) **-y** (после согласного) переходит в **-i**:

*busy* – **busier** – **the busiest**.

Для сравнения качества предметов используют также следующие формулы:

1. **than**  
чем

- ☐ Moscow is **larger than** St.Petersburg.
- ☐ This book is **less interesting than** that one.

2. **as ... as**  
так(ой) же ... как

- ☐ He is **as** young **as** my brother.
- ☐ He works **as** hard **as** you.

3. **not so ... as**  
не так(ой) ... как

- ☐ She is **not so** beautiful **as** her mother.
- ☐ This train goes **not so** quickly **as** that one.

4. **the + cp. ст. ... the + cp. ст.**  
чем ... тем

- ☐ **The more** you work **the better** you know the language.
- ☐ How much money do you need? **The more the better.**

Используются для усиления сравнительной степени прилагательных и наречий.

5. **much, far**  
намного, гораздо,  
значительно

- ☐ The husband was **much older** than the wife.
- ☐ Could you speak a **bit louder**?

**a bit, a little**  
немного

6. Запомните следующие примеры:

Ваша комната в **два раза больше** моей.

Your room is **twice as large** as mine.

Этот ящик **в три раза тяжелее** того.

This box is **three times as** heavy as that one.

Он **в два раза старше**.

He is **twice as** old.

Моя комната **в два раза меньше** вашей.

My room is **half the size** of yours.

Мой чемодан **в два раза легче** вашего.

My trunk is **half the weight** of yours.

**Ex. 23.** Give the comparative and superlative forms of these adjectives and adverbs.

Equal, tidy, sophisticated, public, amusing, thin, quickly, far, bad, badly, difficult, interesting, tiny, quietly, slowly, little, much, deeply, bitter, highly.

**Ex. 24.** React to your friend's statement as in the model.

**Model**

- This train is fast. That one isn't very fast.
- Yes, *this train is **faster than** that one.*

1. This film is very interesting. That film isn't very interesting. 2. Mary's hair is long. Ann's hair isn't very long. 3. Your jeans are new. My jeans aren't very new. 4. This cottage is expensive. That cottage isn't very expensive. 5. London is big. Manchester isn't very big. 6. This girl is attractive. That girl isn't very attractive.

**Ex. 25.** Rewrite these sentences using double comparatives.

**Model**

- It costs a lot to live in London, and prices are still rising.
- *Life in London is becoming/getting **more and more** expensive.*

1. My dog's already big, and it's still growing. 2. The weather's beautiful, and it's improving. 3. As the party continued, he became increasingly tired. 4. Los Angeles is a big city, and it's growing. 5. I'm very optimistic about the state of my affairs. And my optimism increases. 6. I earn much, and I'm becoming rich.

**Ex. 26.** Change sentences according to the model.

**Model**

- This bridge is narrower than that wide one.
- *You are quite right. It is **not so wide as** that one.*

1. This monument is less impressive than that one. 2. This camera is cheaper than that one. 3. Mary is taller than her sister. 4. Peter is more absent-minded than Jack. 5. Our city is younger than Moscow. 6. My elder brother is older than Jack's elder brother.

**Ex. 27.** Agree with your friend's statement.

**Model**

- George is thoughtful. So is Edith.
- *Edith is **as thoughtful as** George.*

1. Gatchina is a beautiful town. So is Pavlovsk. 2. His pictures are good. So are his poems. 3. She is so busy. So am I. 4. The girls are young. So are the boys. 5. Mary is hardworking. So is Helen. 6. He is happy. So is his wife.

**Ex. 28.** React as in the model.

**Model**

- This task is difficult. (that task).
- *But that task is **more difficult**. It's **the most difficult** task.*

1. Andrew is gloomy. (Philip). 2. The mountains in Scotland are high. (the mountains in the South). 3. The air is clean. (the air in the country). 4. My computer is good. (his computer). 5. Our situation is bad. (their situation). 6. Our kitten is little. (their kitten). 7. Her brother is good-looking. (my brother). 8. This way is very dangerous. (that way).

**Ex. 29.** Make up sentences, using the adverbs given in the chart according to the following model.

**Model**

- Nick speaks French **well**, Ann speaks French **better** than Nick, and Peter speaks French **best** (of all).

**Ex. 30.** Change the sentences according to the model.

**Model**

- Which player is **the best** on the team, John or Joe?
- *They are both **good**, but John is **better than** Joe.*
- Which picture is **the worst** in the gallery, this one or that one?
- *They are both **bad**, but this one is **worse than** that one.*

1. Which team is the best in the league, "Spartak" or "Dinamo"? 2. Which student is the worst in the group, Mike or Andrew? 3. Which shop is the worst in Paris, that expensive one or that small one? 4. Which boy is the best in the party, the tall one or the short one? 5. Which piano is the worst in the shop, a black one or the brown one? 6. Which coffee is the best, Nescafe or Pele? 7. Which market is the worst, the new one or the old one? 8. Which shirt is the worst, the blue one or the white one?

**Ex. 31.** Use superlatives to describe the things below.

**Model** A good film – ***The best film I've ever seen.***

1. an amusing book;
2. a very uncomfortable bed;
3. an exceptionally interesting lecture;
4. a very exciting tennis match;
5. a really awful singer;
6. an extremely cheap computer.

**Ex. 32.** Express your argument.

**Model**

- That woman is not very young, is she?
- *No, she isn't **as young as** she used to be.*
- The city is not very clean, is it?
- *No, it **isn't as clean as** it used to be.*

1. The trains are not very fast, are they? 2. His plays are not very talented, are they? 3. Mary is not very slim, is she? 4. The day is not very short, is it? 5. The air in the room isn't very fresh, is it? 6. He is not very accurate, is he? 7. The watch isn't very slow, is it? 8. The problems are not so great, are they?

**Ex. 33.** Translate the proverbs from English into Russian and memorize them.  
Find Russian equivalents.

1. The more haste, the less speed.
2. The more, the merrier.
3. The more you have, the more you want.
4. The bigger they are, the harder they fall.
5. The nearer the bone, the sweeter the flesh.

**Ex. 34.** Translate the following sentences, using *much, far, a great deal, still* with the adverbs in comparative degree.

1. Мой брат говорит по-французски **намного** лучше, чем по-английски.  
2. Некоторым людям **гораздо** больше нравится путешествовать зимой, чем летом.  
3. По воскресеньям я встаю **намного** позднее обычного.  
4. Перед экзаменами студенты, как правило, **значительно** больше и усерднее занимаются.  
5. Моя сестра **гораздо** чаще меня ходит в театр.  
6. Вчера наши спортсмены играли **еще** быстрее.  
7. Со словарем вы переведете статью **намного** точнее.  
8. Сегодня солнце светит **гораздо** ярче, чем вчера.

**Ex. 35.** Translate the following sentences using the words from the text.

1. Чем больше он работал, тем больше денег он зарабатывал.  
2. Многие молодые люди были беднее датчанина.  
3. Капитан был такой же одинокий, как и его друг.  
4. Это был самый злой человек в команде.  
5. Чем дольше он жил, тем больше наслаждался жизнью.  
6. Капитан был гораздо старше его и знал жизнь лучше.  
7. Я отдам деньги самым бедным людям.  
8. Они боялись подойти ближе.  
9. Они чувствовали себя хуже и хуже.  
10. Он нанял на работу больше моряков, чем прежде.  
11. Он становился богаче.  
12. Чем моложе человек, тем больше у него энергии.  
13. Он был самым добрым человеком на корабле.  
14. Корабль отплыл раньше, чем остальные корабли в порту.  
15. Этот рассказ не такой знаменитый, как тот.  
16. Он выяснил больше об этой болезни, так как прочел больше медицинских справочников.  
17. Это было самое тяжелое время в его жизни.  
18. «Летучий голландец» – самый необычный рассказ, который я когда-либо читал.

**Ex. 36.** Translate the following jokes into English.

**1**

A: Когда должна начаться вечеринка?

B: Чем быстрее, тем лучше.

A: Сколько людей должны прийти?

B: Чем меньше, тем лучше.

A: Но чем больше, тем веселее. Мне кажется, ты не очень радуешься предстоящей вечеринке.

B: Потому что, чем больше ты расспрашиваешь о ней, тем меньше она мне нравится.

2

Прощаясь со своим учителем, одна из учениц сказала: «Учитель, который придет на ваше место, будет уже не таким хорошим.» Господин Льюис был счастлив услышать такие слова. «Что вы, он будет ничуть не хуже, а даже лучше.» «Да нет, – заметила ученица, – я училась до вас у пяти учителей, каждый новый был гораздо хуже прежнего.»

3

*Студент:* Но я не думаю, что я заслуживаю единицы.

*Профессор:* Я тоже так не думаю. Но это – самая низкая оценка, которую я могу поставить (to give).

### The Use of Articles With Some Adjectives and Numerals + Noun

#### Употребление артикля в словосочетаниях: порядковое числительное/прилагательное в превосходной степени + существительное

1. Если определение существительного выражено прилагательным в превосходной степени или порядковым числительным, то оно употребляется с определенным артиклем **the**.

- ☐ This is **the best film** I've ever seen.
- ☐ They live on **the second floor**.

2. Прилагательные в значении существительных употребляются с определенным артиклем **the**: *the old; the rich; the poor; the blind*.

- ☐ There are special schools for **the blind** and **the deaf**.
- ☐ **The wounded** were taken to hospital.

**Ex. 37.** Supply the required articles.

1. On ... second floor the window was open. 2. She was ... laziest woman in the village. 3. I told him that there is a special school for ... blind. 4. ... wounded should be taken care of. 5. I entered the room and saw ... woman. She was ... most beautiful woman among the guests. 6. I ate three bananas; she pressed me to have ... fourth but I couldn't. 7. ... deaf cannot hear the music but they can compose. 8. For ... first term we shared one room in the hostel. 9. He was sick and he behaved as ... sick man. 10. As soon as the curtain came down at ... end of ... third act she was on her feet. 11. That Sunday it was ... highest

temperature in the shade. 12. He became rich and as the majority of ... rich he didn't remember his poor youth. 13. His job is ... most important thing in his life. 14. Our government doesn't pay any attention to ... disabled. 15. This film is ... best at the festival. 16. He is ... most learned person in the family. 17. We should remember ... dead. 18. ... deaf and ... dumb talk to each other with the help of their fingers.

**Ex. 38.** Translate the sentences into English paying special attention to the use of articles.

1. Это было самое важное событие в его жизни, он получил первую зарплату. 2. Богатые тоже имеют проблемы. 3. У нас очень мало санаториев для раненых. 4. Он самый способный ребенок в семье. 5. Бедные должны платить меньше за квартиру. 6. Дума хочет разработать новый закон для пожилых. 7. Сытый никогда не поймет голодного. 8. В Европе я видел много приспособлений для удобства инвалидов. 9. Третья попытка оказалась успешной. 10. 22 декабря – самый короткий день в году. 11. Мы хотим улучшить качество развлекательных телевизионных программ (television entertainment) для молодежи. 12. Глухие обычно громко разговаривают. 13. Лучший выход для нее – купить второй телевизор. 14. Он самый застенчивый юноша, которого я когда-либо знала. 15. Существует специальная азбука для слепых. 16. Невежественные обычно боятся тех, кто интересуется вещами, которые они (сами невежественные) не понимают.

**Ex. 39.** Fill in articles where necessary.

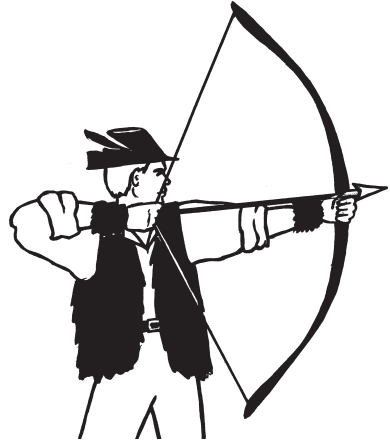
Next morning ... king Midas began to touch ... objects that were near his bed. He wanted to know whether he really had ... Golden Touch. So he laid... finger on ... chair, and on ... other things but they remained ... same as before. Midas was disappointed. Suddenly ... earliest sunbeam shone through ... window. It seemed to Midas that ... bright yellow sunbeam was reflected in rather ... strange way on ... white covering of ... bed. This white covering was now ... brightest gold. ... Golden Touch came to him with ... first sunbeam.

Midas jumped out of ... bed, and ran around ... room, seizing everything. He pulled aside ... window curtain and ... curtain grew heavy in ... hand – ... mass of ... gold. He put on his clothes, and was happy to see himself in ... suit of ... gold cloth. He took out ... handkerchief, made by little Marygold — his daughter. That was also turned into ... gold. ... last transformation did not quite please ... king Midas. He remembered when Marygold climbed on his knee and put ... handkerchief in his hand. It was ... daughter's work, but now he could not use it, – ... handkerchief was so hard.

# WILLIAM TELL<sup>1</sup>

*(A Swiss Legend)*

Long ago the emperor of Austria<sup>2</sup> wanted to make Switzerland<sup>3</sup> a part of his empire, and he sent a man named Gessler<sup>4</sup> to rule the people. Gessler was a tyrant. He ruled the bold Swiss people with a hand of iron. He had many soldiers and did whatever he wished. But there was one thing he could not do, – he could not make the brave, free people of Switzerland bow down to him when he came among them.



He was very angry at this, and tried to think of some way in which to make them feel his power. In those days, as now, every town had a market place. Here the people came to buy and sell goods. The men and women came down from the mountains with milk and cheese, goats and other animals; they sold these in the market and bought goods which they did not have in their mountain homes.

In the market place of Altdorf<sup>5</sup>, a Swiss town, Gessler put up a tall pole. On the top of this pole he placed his hat, and this hat was the sign of Gessler's power. Then his soldiers went about the town shouting an order to the people: "Every man, woman or child who passes by the pole must bow to the hat to show their respect for Gessler."

From one of the mountain homes near Altdorf there came into the market-place one day a tall, strong man by the name of William Tell. He was a famous archer, for it was in the days before the mountain people had guns, and he shot bears and wild goats with his bow and arrows.

He had with him his little son, and they walked across the market place. But when they passed the pole, Tell did not bow to the hat on the pole. There were spies of Gessler in the market place, and they at once went to the tyrant and reported the incident. "Tell refused to bow to Gessler's hat on top of the pole!" Gessler at once commanded his soldiers to bring Tell to him, and Tell came, leading his little son by the hand.

"They tell me you shoot well," said the tyrant. "I shall not punish you, but you must show me your skill. Let your boy stand a hundred steps from here. Place an apple on his head. You stand here and shoot the apple off his head with one of your arrows."



All the people who heard him turned pale with fear, but Tell looked straight at Gessler without any fear, and took out two arrows.

"Go there!" he said to his son. Two of Gessler's soldiers led the boy a hundred steps away from Gessler and then placed an apple on the boy's head. They had some pity for Tell in their hearts, so they made the boy stand with his back to his father.

"Face me!" Tell cried in a clear voice, and the boy immediately turned and faced his father. He stood straight, with his head up. Tell put the arrow in the bow and then bent it slowly ready to shoot. He could look no more and shut his eyes.

The next moment a great shout rose from the crowd. The arrow hit the apple and cut it in two. The people shouted with joy, but Gessler was not pleased, and said in an angry voice to Tell:

"You were not so very sure of your first shot. You put a second arrow in your belt. Why did you do that?"

"The second arrow was for you, tyrant, if I missed my first shot," said Tell.

"Seize him!" shouted the tyrant, and his soldiers rushed forward. But the people also threw themselves upon the soldiers, and Tell, now drawing his bow again, shot the tyrant through the heart. Then, taking his boy by the hand, he fled quickly to the lake, got into a boat standing there, rowed to the other shore, and so escaped to the mountains.

### Notes:

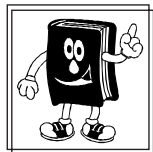
<sup>1</sup> William Tell ['wɪljəm 'tel]

<sup>2</sup> Austria ['ɒstriə]

<sup>3</sup> Switzerland ['swɪtsələnd]

<sup>4</sup> Gessler ['ɡeslə]

<sup>5</sup> Altdorf ['ɑ:ltdɔ:f] – Альтдорф, город, в котором установлен памятник Вильгельму Теллю.



## I. VOCABULARY

**emperor** ['empərə] (n) – император

**empire** ['empaɪə] – империя

**rule** (n)

1. править, руководить

□ The king **ruled** the country for 30 years.

2. rule (v) – правило

□ You should know this **rule**.

**as a rule** – usually, generally – обычно, как правило

□ **As a rule** I have coffee in the morning.

**bold** [bəʊld] (adj) – brave, courageous – смелый

□ He was as **bold (brave)** as a lion.

**bow** [baʊ] (v) – кланяться, опустить голову

□ He stood with a **bowed** head at the funeral.

**bow** (n) – лук, самострел

**way** (n)

1. road, path – дорога, путь

□ I met him on **the way**.

2. direction – направление

□ Which **way** is the house from here?

3. a manner or method – способ, манера, образ действия

□ What's the best **way** to do it?

**be in the way** – мешать, стоять поперек дороги

□ I couldn't get through the gate because your car **was in the way**.

**by the way** – между прочим

□ **By the way** he is always right.

**in a way (in some way(s))** – в некоторой степени; в чем-то

□ **In a way** I can see what you mean though I disagree with you.

**pole** (n) – столб, шест

□ He looked out of the window and saw **a flagpole** in the yard.

**place** (v) put – помещать, ставить, класть

□ He **placed** the book on the shelf.

**shout** [ʃaʊt] (v) – кричать

□ I can hear you, there's no need **to shout**.

**pass** (v)

1. move – миновать, проходить

□ No one is allowed **to pass** the gate of the camp.

2. give by hand – передать, передавать

□ Please, **pass** me the salt.

3. spend time – проводить время

□ How shall we **pass** the evening?

4. succeed in – выдержать экзамен

□ She **passed** her driving test.

**shoot** (v) (shot)

1. стрелять

□ He **shot** at a bird but missed it.

2. снимать фильм

□ The film was **shot** in California.

**respect** (n) admiration, honour – уважение

□ He is held in the greatest **respect** by his friends.

**in all respects** – во всех отношениях; **in some respect** – в какой-то степени

☐ The new job is better paid and more interesting **in all respects**.

**spy** (v) (on smb)

1. шпионить

☐ He **spied** on his neighbour.

2. **spy** (n) – шпион

☐ Believe me, I'm not **a spy**.

**refuse** (v) – отказывать, отказываться

☐ He **refused** to marry her.

**lead** (v) (led) – вести, привести к

☐ This road **leads** to the city.

☐ He **led** the army.

**lead someone to do something** – склонять к чему-либо, заставлять

☐ What **led** you to believe I was ill?

**punish** (v) – наказывать

☐ Motorists should **be punished** severely for dangerous driving.

**face** (v)

1. стоять лицом к кому-либо, чему-либо

☐ The house **faces** the park.

2. встречать смело

☐ She couldn't **face** her problems.

**face music** – держать ответ

☐ After failing the exam he had **to face the music**.

**face to face** – лицом к лицу

☐ A lot of people prefer discussing business matters **face to face**.

**miss** (v)

1. промахнуться, не достичь цели

☐ He shot at me but **missed**.

2. be late – опоздать

☐ Again I **missed** the bus.

3. скучать

☐ Her children have gone to Australia and she **missed** them very much.

**miss the point** – не понимать сути

☐ Will you say it again, I **missed the point**.

**rush** (v) – hurry – мчаться, торопиться

☐ They **rushed** up the stairs.

**rush hour** – «час пик»

☐ I try to get to work before **the rush hour** starts.

**throw** (v) (threw, thrown) – бросать, кидать

☐ She **threw** the ball 50 metres.

**throw a party** – устроить вечеринку

☐ Do you know a place where we could **throw a party**?

**throw dust in someone's eyes** – пускать пыль в глаза

☐ He has a way **of throwing dust in the friends' eyes**.

**throw up one's hands** – сдаваться, признать себя побежденным

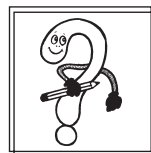
☐ That's the last time I'm trying, and then I'll **throw up my hands**.

**escape** [is'keɪp] (v) – бежать

☐ The criminals **escaped** to London.

**flee** (v) (fled) – (литер.) бежать, спастись бегством

## II. COMPREHENSION



**Ex. 1.** Answer the questions.

1. Who ruled over the people of Switzerland?
2. Why were their lives unhappy?
3. What did the people do in the market place?
4. What orders did the tyrant give?
5. What did William Tell do when he saw the hat on the pole?
6. Who was in the town with William Tell?
7. How did the tyrant decide to punish the brave archer?
8. What did William Tell do before he let the arrow fly?
9. How did the boy stand?
10. What did Tell mean to do with the second arrow if he had hurt his child?

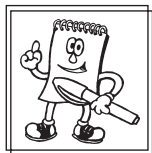
**Ex. 2.** Agree or disagree with the following using the phrases: *I agree; That's right/correct; I disagree; That's not right/true; That's wrong.*

1. Long ago the emperor of Austria wanted to make Switzerland a part of his empire. 2. He sent William Tell to rule the people. 3. Gessler had no soldiers. 4. Gessler did whatever he wished. 5. Gessler could make the Swiss people bow down to him. 6. The people came to the market to buy and sell a lot of goods. 7. Gessler put up a tall pole. 8. On the top of the pole he placed an apple. 9. William Tell was a short, weak man. 10. William's home was by the river and he was a famous fisherman. 11. William Tell and his little son walked across the market-place. 12. Tell did not bow to the hat on the pole. 13. Tell refused to catch fish for the tyrant's dinner. 14. When the tyrant heard what William had done he didn't get angry. 15. The tyrant wanted the archer to show his skill. 16. He was ordered to place an apple on the boy's head. 17. All the people who heard the tyrant's order turned red with confusion. 18. Tell

looked at Gessler without fear. 19. The soldiers had no pity for Tell in their hearts. 20. Tell ordered his son not to face him. 21. When the arrow hit the apple the people shouted with fear. 22. Gessler was pleased and said in a clear voice that Tell was sure of his first shot. 23. Tell decided to shoot the tyrant if he missed his first shot. 24. After Tell had shot the tyrant he didn't manage to escape to the mountains.

**Ex. 3.** Find Russian equivalents to the following phrases.

A hand of iron; bow down to him; think of some way; mountain; put up; went about; an order; an archer; bow and arrows; incident; lead by hand; pass the pole; to place; looked straight; faced the father; turn; say in a clear voice; say in an angry voice; rushed forward; threw upon; fled quickly; rowed to the other shore; escape.



### III. WORD STUDY

**Ex. 4.** Find in the text the English equivalents to the following words and phrases.

Смелый; свободные люди; сердиться; чувствовать власть; товары; продавать; покупать; шест; знаменитый; докладывать; кланяться; привести; наказывать; мастерство/умение; побледнеть; бесстрашно; промахнуться; выстрелить; взять за руку; броситься вперед; схватить; натягивать лук.

**Ex. 5.** Translate the words in brackets.

1. He (опоздал на) the 8 o'clock train. 2. I refuse to accept the responsibility for your error just (чтобы спасти репутацию). 3. They (провели) several weeks in the country. 4. I'd like to meet him (лицом к лицу). 5. He was arrested as (шпион). 6. He (не понял сути) because he wasn't listening. 7. He's got a funny (манера) of talking. 8. The enemy (стрелял) at us. 9. She took the child by the hand and (повел) him across the road. 10. Calm down and stop (кричать) at each other. 11. (Между прочим) did you know he was getting married? 12. You will (скучать) your friends when you go to live abroad. 13. The child had to (держат ответ) after being rude to his grandparents. 14. He (бросил) his old clothes on the floor. 15. The Queen (правила) the people wisely. 16. Which (дорога) shall we go? 17. The procession (проходила) along the street. 18. When I asked him to leave, he (отказался). 19. He (был наказан)

за) disobedience. 20. I feel sorry for him (в некоторой степени). 21. He (торопился войти) into room.

**Ex. 6.** Match the words and phrases from column A with those from column B to form a phrase.

| A                     | B                          |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. punish             | a. face                    |
| 2. the shortest way   | b. the plane               |
| 3. shoot              | c. to the doctor           |
| 4. succeed in passing | d. from prison             |
| 5. show no respect    | e. a stone                 |
| 6. industrial         | f. an album on the table   |
| 7. beautiful          | g. country                 |
| 8. miss               | h. at ducks                |
| 9. a path             | i. one's fate              |
| 10. lead              | j. for stealing the money  |
| 11. throw             | k. spies                   |
| 12. place             | l. to get somewhere        |
| 13. escape            | m. for parents             |
| 14. rush a child      | n. leads through the woods |
| 15. face              | o. exams                   |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |

**Ex. 7.** Choose a word from the list below that has the same meaning as the italicized phrase. Translate the sentences into Russian.



*Miss, shoot, refuse, escape, fear, pass, famous, rush, put up, bow, respect, lead, sign, face.*

1. He was a *well-known* archer and *killed* wild animals with his bow and arrows.  
 2. When he understood that he had lost the last hope he *bent* his head in despair.  
 3. She didn't *care for* his feelings.  
 4. They *didn't accept* his offer to get to the centre of the city *through* the old park.  
 5. *In some degree* I can guess why you don't remember this incident.  
 6. He *succeeded in* his exam.  
 7. This highway *runs* to Hollywood.  
 8. He *raised* the flag as a symbol of their victory.  
 9. Robin Hood<sup>1</sup> *commanded* the fight for freedom.  
 10. Let me think

about it and don't *hurry* me. 11. His apartment is large and *overlooks* the garden. 12. The children planned to go sailing alone but mother *was afraid* to let them go. 13. The boy was sure that his father would *kill* the tiger. 14. The prisoners *ran away* from their guards.

**Ex. 8.** Translate the following idiomatic expressions. Use them in the translation below.



*be in the way; by the way; in a way;  
face; save face; face to face; face the music;  
miss; miss the point; in all respects; in some respect;  
throw some light on; throw up hands; throw a party.*

1. Поперек дороги стоял огромный грузовик. 2. В какой-то степени он прав, но я не могу согласиться с ним. 3. Он скучает по работе, но боится сказать об этом. 4. Его объяснение внесло ясность в проблему. 5. Мэри собирается уезжать из нашего города, и мы решили устроить для нее вечеринку. 6. Вы можете добраться до Брюсселя через Голландию. 7. Он смело смотрит в лицо трудностям. 8. Он разбил окно в столовой и должен отвечать за это. 9. Я предпочитаю говорить об этом лицом к лицу. 10. Боюсь, ты не уловила суть рассказа. Позволь мне снова повторить его. 11. Этот холодильник, между прочим, дороже, но лучше во всех отношениях. 12. Его рассказ пролил свет на это дело. 13. Они заставили противника сдаться.

**Ex. 9.** Translate the following sentences using the words and expressions from the text and Vocabulary.



1. Жестокий человек управлял страной. 2. Он хотел заставить свободных людей кланяться ему. 3. Он придумал способ заставить их покориться. 4. Люди спускались с гор, чтобы купить и продать различные товары в городе. 5. Правитель приказал положить свою шляпу на верх шеста. 6. Шест был воздвигнут на рыночной площади. 7. Кто бы ни проходил мимо шеста, должен был кланяться. 8. Вильгельм Телль был знаменитым стрелком из лука. 9. Он охотился в горах на медведей и диких коз. 10. Вильгельм Телль отказался поклониться шляпе на шесте. 11. Шпионы доложили правителю о случившемся. 12. Правитель придумал жестокое наказание. 13. Все побледнели от страха, когда услышали приказ тирана. 14. Сын был уверен, что отец не промахнется. 15. Люди закричали от радости, когда увидели, что стрела попала в яблоко.

16. Солдаты бросились вперед, чтобы схватить Вильгельма Телля.  
 17. Вильгельм Телль натянул лук и выстрелил тирану прямо в сердце.

**B**

1. Все знали, что Робин Гуд был смелым, как лев. 2. Виновный опустил голову от стыда. 3. Этот режиссер знаменит тем, что всегда снимает хорошие фильмы. 4. Я хотел бы переговорить об этом при нашей встрече (лицом к лицу). 5. Прошлой ночью преступники убежали из тюрьмы. 6. Он всегда пускает пыль в глаза, рассказывая о своих путешествиях. 7. У нас много времени до отхода поезда, нам не следует торопиться. 8. Он пришел слишком поздно и опоздал на поезд. 9. Эта улица приведет вас в центр города. 10. Превышение скорости должно строго наказываться. 11. Он попросил передать ему книгу, которая была на столе далеко от него. 12. Никому не разрешается проходить в здание без пропуска. 13. Строительные работы по замене труб в центре города в полном разгаре. 14. В чем-то он прав; вот почему он говорит таким сердитым голосом. 15. Был час пик, и дорога была заполнена транспортом. 16. В каком направлении надо идти к Британскому музею? 17. У него всегда есть правильный ответ на любой вопрос. 18. В детстве она любила шпионить за старшей сестрой. 19. Окна моей комнаты в загородном доме выходят на озеро.

**Note:**

<sup>1</sup> Robin Hood [ˈrɒbɪn ˈhʊd]

**Ex. 10.** Write twelve sentences about your vacations in the country using the constructions *make smb do smth*, *let smb do smth*.

**Model 1**

“He could not **make** the brave, free people of Switzerland **bow down** to him.”

После глагола “**to make**” инфинитив употребляется без частицы “**to**”. В этом случае глагол “**to make**” переводится как “**заставлять (делать что-либо)**”.

**Model 2**

“**Let** your boy **stand** a hundred steps from here.”

Команда, адресованная третьему лицу ед. и мн. числа, обычно выражается с помощью глагола “**to let**”. В этом случае после глагола “**to let**” инфинитив употребляется без частицы “**to**”, а глагол “**to let**” переводится как “**пусть**”.



**Ex. 11.** Translate the sentences into Russian, paying attention to the meaning of the word *free* in the following contexts. Use the dictionary.

1. She felt *free* when she left the farm. 2. The prisoner will be set *free* next week. 3. You are *free* to do as you wish. This is a *free* country. 4. Anyone who buys this breakfast food gets a *free* gift. 5. He has little *free* time. 6. Is this seat *free*? – Yes, no one is using it. 7. She is very *free* with her money. 8. Babies are allowed to travel *free* on buses. 9. She *freed* the bird from its cage. 10. The doctor will be *free* in 10 minutes. Can you wait that long? 11. She picked the basket up with her *free* hand? 12. You are not allowed to give a *free* translation of the text. 13. “Are the drinks *free*?” “No, you have to pay for them”. 14. People with certain diseases have to eat *salt-free* foods. 15. Two of the screws in this old wooden door have worked themselves *free*. 16. She leads a *free* and easy sort of life and never troubles much about anything.

**Ex. 12.** Choose the right word and insert it in the proper form.

### lay – put



“*lay*” – put in certain position or place – положить, проложить

- ☐ Who will **lay** the carpet?
- ☐ He **laid** his hand on my shoulder.
- ☐ A new cable line **was laid** between the cities.

“*put*” – move so as to be in a certain position or place – положить, поставить

- ☐ He **put** the book on the table.
- ☐ He **put** his hands into his pockets.
- ☐ Did you **put** milk into my tea?
- ☐ It's time to **put** the baby to bed.

1. The old woman carefully ... the vase on the table and arranged the flowers. 2. Where shall I ... these cups and saucers? In the cupboard? 3. She ... the crying baby on the bed. 4. You ... too much salt in this food. 5. He ... his book in order. 6. We've bought a new carpet and ... it in the bedroom. 7. ... your name at the top of the page. 8. Usually birds ... eggs in spring. 9. He ... on his glasses to read the letter.

### last – latest



“*last*” – coming after all others in time or order – последний, прошлый

- ☐ He was the **last** to come.
- ☐ **last** month of the year, **last** Sunday

"*latest*" – recent – последний (самый новый/свежий)

□ The **latest** news/fashions; Mr Green's **latest** novel

**Compare:** Mr Green said that his **latest** novel will be his **last** (he isn't going to write any more).

1. When does the ... train leave for London? 2. Have you heard the ... news? 3. What did you discuss with the director during the ... meeting? 4. Some days ago we went to the shop and bought the ... model of the computer. 5. The shop-assistant said it was the ... computer of this model. 6. Would you show me the ... catalogue of this company? 7. I can't give you this catalogue because it's the ... one. 8. The ... performance at this cinema starts at 9 p.m.

**Ex. 13.** Fill in prepositions where necessary.

One fine morning, soon ... the proud sheriff had been given a good lesson, Robin Hood and Little John walked ... a path ... the wood. It was not far ... the Footbridge where they had fought ... their first meeting, and they turned ... the stream to rest ... the cool bushes. The morning gave promise ... a hot day. The road even ... the stream was dusty, so the cooling water was very pleasing ... their senses.

It was a day so full ... quiet joy that the two friends lay still ... their backs, looking ... the passing clouds, and keeping silent. Suddenly they heard someone coming ... the road whistling gaily; ... time ... time, he sang a merry song. ... a minute appeared a stranger dressed ... scarlet and silk and ... an elegant hat ... his head. His whole costume was of scarlet, ... head ... foot. A fine sword hung ... his side. His hair was long and yellow, and hung ... his shoulders like a schoolgirl's.

**Ex. 14.**



Translate the following words and phrases. Use them in the sentences below.



*Eventually; meanwhile; afterwards; as a result of; until now; next; in the end; initially; first; some time later; finally.*

1. He told me (впоследствии) that he had not enjoyed the film. 2. The child had gone home. (Тем временем), his mother was looking for him in the street. 3. This project will cost a lot of money (первоначально) but (в конечном счете) will be profitable. 4. I thought he would never ask her to marry him, but (некоторое время спустя) he did. 5. He had to work very hard but he passed

his exam (в конце концов). 6. (Сначала) John arrived and Jane came (после). 7. He went deaf (в результате) the blow. 8. She paid no attention to her work (до сих пор). 9. (В заключение) he expressed his thanks to everybody.

**B** Translate the following into English using the phrases from the text.



*After some time; for a short time; next time; until that time; at times; from time to time; in a short time; some time later; all this time.*

1. *Время от времени* люди продавали на рынке молоко и сыр. 2. *В скором времени* солдаты установили высокий шест посреди рынка. 3. *Временами* он приказывал шпионить за слугами. 4. Он вернулся в город *ненадолго*. 5. Солдаты *чуть позже* сообщили правителю о происшествии. 6. *Все это время* мальчик стоял спиной к отцу. 7. *Через некоторое время* он приказал привести Вильгельма Телля вместе с сыном. 8. *В следующий раз* он пообещал убить тирана. 9. *До того времени* никто не мог покорить этот храбрый народ.



## IV. SPEECH PRACTICE

**Ex. 15.** Memorize the proverbs and use them in retelling and discussing the text.

1. Better a glorious death than a shameful life. *Лучше смерть славная, чем жизнь позорная.*
2. Better die standing than live kneeling. *Лучше умереть стоя, чем жить на коленях.*
3. Faint heart never won a fair lady. *Смелость города берет. Кто смел, тот и съел.*

**Ex. 16.** Make up a plan of the story and retell it in accordance with your plan.

**Ex. 17.** Tell the story as if you were William Tell's son. Speak about your family's life in the mountains, about your mother and father, etc.

**Ex. 18.** Ask questions about the text so that the answers bring out the main facts given in it.

**Ex. 19.** Write out words and expressions pertaining to: **a)** the Swiss people; **b)** Gessler. Speak about them.

**Ex. 20.** Topics for discussion and essays.

1. The tyrant's punishment.
2. The Swiss people's life under the tyrant's rule.
3. Tell a story about one of the following heroes: Robin Hood, Till Eulenspiegel, Emelian Pugachov.
4. What do you know about the geography of Switzerland?

**Ex. 21.** Give a free translation of the text.

Во времена (in the days) Генриха II, короля Англии, были специальные леса для королевской охоты. Убивать оленей (deer) в тех лесах людям запрещалось под страхом смерти (under penalty of death). Эти леса охранялись (to guard) королевскими лесничими. Одним из самых больших лесов был Шервудский<sup>1</sup> лес недалеко от города Ноттингема<sup>2</sup>. Его главный лесничий жил там вместе с женой и маленьким сыном Робертом уже несколько лет. Роберт<sup>3</sup>, или Роб (как его часто называли), очень любил ходить с отцом в лес. Это доставляло ему большую радость. Когда его руки стали сильными, он смог натягивать лук и стрелять настоящими (true) стрелами. Его мать была благородного происхождения (of gentle birth) и учила сына читать и писать, быть вежливым, добрым и честным. Но мальчик был больше счастлив, когда он бродил по лесу с луком в руке. У отца Робина были враги, которые хотели избавиться (to get rid of) от него. Вскоре его сняли (to remove) с должности королевского лесничего из-за ложного обвинения в предательстве (false accusation of treason). Шериф арестовал лесничего. Через два месяца умерла мать Робина, а весной в тюрьме скончался отец, не дождавшись суда (the trial).

Прошло два года. Робин был очень одинок, хотя его дядя, сквайр (squire)<sup>4</sup> Джордж, заботился о нем. Старый сквайр был очень добр к Робину, но не мог помочь бедному парню. Дело в том, что Робин скучал по прежней жизни в лесу не меньше, чем по доброте матери и дружбе отца. Каждый раз, когда он натягивал свой длинный лук и пускал меткую (straight) стрелу, – это напоминало ему о тех счастливых днях.

Однажды утром, во время завтрака, дядя посмотрел на него, улыбался, и сказал:

- Мальчик, у меня есть для тебя новость.
- Какая? – спросил юноша.

– У тебя есть возможность натянуть свой замечательный лук и выиграть прекрасный приз. В Ноттингеме сейчас ярмарка (to be on), и шериф объявил о состязании (contest) лучников. Лучник, который будет самым

метким среди всех, выиграет замечательный приз – золотую стрелу и станет королевским лесничим.

– Это действительно хороший приз, – сказал Робин. – А должность лесничего – это именно то, о чем я так долго мечтал.

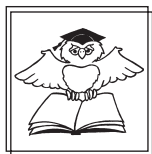
### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Sherwood [ˈʃə:wud]

<sup>2</sup> Nottingham [ˈnɒtɪŋəm]

<sup>3</sup> Robert [ˈrɒbət]

<sup>4</sup> squire [ˈskwaɪə]



## V. GRAMMAR REVIEW

### Pronouns *many/much, few/little* Местоимения *many/much, few/little*

| Тип существительного<br>Русский язык | Исчисляемые  | Неисчисляемые   |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>Много</b>                         | <p><b><i>many</i></b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Did <b>many people</b> attend the meeting yesterday?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Has he got <b>many friends</b> in Moscow?</p>       | <p><b><i>much</i></b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Do you spend <b>much time</b> on your homework?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I haven't <b>much work</b> to do today.</p> |
| <b>Мало</b>                          | <p><b><i>few</i></b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> There are very <b>few books</b> in our library.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Few visitors</b> came to our house in the evening.</p> | <p><b><i>little</i></b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> We've made <b>little progress</b>.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I had very <b>little money</b> left.</p>               |
| <b>Немного<br/>Несколько</b>         | <p><b><i>a few</i></b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I have to see <b>a few people</b> this afternoon.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I've got <b>a few ideas</b>.</p>                      | <p><b><i>a little</i></b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Could you give me <b>a little help</b>?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Would you like <b>a little cake</b>?</p>        |

Обычно *much/many* используется в отрицательных и вопросительных предложениях.<sup>1</sup> В утвердительных предложениях это же значение передается **a lot of, plenty of**, которые употребляются как с исчисляемыми, так и с неисчисляемыми существительными.

- ☐ He **didn't** speak **much** English.
- ☐ Why **haven't** I given **much** attention to this problem?
- ☐ She demanded **a lot of** attention.
- ☐ I make **a lot of** mistakes.
- ☐ He has got **plenty of** money.
- ☐ There were **so many** people in the hall **that** I couldn't see her.

**Ex. 22.** Insert *much, many* or *a lot of*.

**Model**

I haven't got *much* money, but I have got *a lot of* friends.  
Every week I buy *a lot of* newspapers but I do not buy *many* books or magazines.

1. I do not want ... potatoes but I want ... meat.
2. I know ... French people but I do not know ... German people.
3. I can drink ... milk but I cannot drink ... whisky.
4. He does not eat ... fish but he eats ... vegetables.
5. She has got ... dresses but she has not got ... skirts.
6. They do not buy ... perfume but they buy ... clothes.

**Ex. 23.** Insert *few* or *little*.

1. Is there so ... butter left?
2. I'm delighted. I have made very ... mistakes in the test.
3. – How many cans of pepsy have you bought?  
– Sorry, very ...
4. There is ... milk in the glass.
5. There are ... glasses of milk on the table.
6. Is there really so ... money left?

**Ex. 24.** Insert *a lot of, a few, or a little*.

**Model**

I have only *a few* dresses and only *a little* money.

1. I only spent ... time and I bought ... things.

\* *Much/many* используются в утвердительных предложениях в выражениях  
**as much/many as**                      **so much/many that**

2. I only spend ... money and I buy ... books.
3. She is expecting ... letters but she has only received ... cards.
4. He only drinks ... wine but he drinks ... gin.
5. I eat ... vegetables but I only eat ... oranges.
6. They want a cottage with ... rooms but they only want ... blankets and pillows.

**Ex. 25.** Choose between *much* and *many*, *little* and *few* to use them in the following sentences.

1. Yesterday there was so ... snow that he was not able to go out of the cottage. 2. We were late and saw ... of our old friends. 3. Tom has eaten so ... that he can't move. 4. I slept ... last night and I have a headache. 5. I was glad to see her because she was English and I knew ... English people. 6. We don't read ... books on management. 7. I am busy and I have ... time for watching TV. 8. I have not ... news but still there are ... things I should like to tell you. 9. She had so ... things to do that didn't know which to do first. 10. My sister spends so ... money on her clothes but buys so ... nice things. 11. We had ... time before the train left. We were in a hurry. But we missed it. 12. He drove along the road. There were not ... cars about. 13. They were so absorbed in the building of their summer house that events outside it affected them ... .

**Ex. 26.** Translate the sentences into English.

1. У тирана было много солдат, и они выполняли его приказы. 2. Он мало говорил, но много знал. 3. В горах у крестьян было много молока, много сыра, много коз и других животных. 4. Он знал немного о простом народе. 5. В городе было немного рынков. 6. По воскресеньям на рынках всегда много народу. 7. Есть маленькая надежда, что он опоздает ненамного. 8. В его глазах было мало страха и много отваги. 9. Я встретил много хороших людей во время поездки. 10. Когда я был в Англии, там было мало дождливых дней и много солнечных дней. 11. Врач посоветовал ей есть больше фруктов. 12. У меня сегодня мало времени, но через несколько дней я снова приеду. 13. Мы проведем вместе много счастливых дней во время рождественских каникул. 14. Он мало занимался и поэтому мало знает. 15. У нас много экзаменов, и мы немного волнуемся.

## The Use of the Definite Article with Some Nouns

### Определенный артикль с некоторыми существительными

Определенный артикль **the** употребляется:

1. с рядом существительных:

*the cinema, the theatre, the radio, the television, the army, the police, the firebrigade, the post office, the bank, the doctor, the dentist, the country, the mountains, the sea, the seaside, the weekend.*

- ☐ You can change your money at **the bank**.
- ☐ **The police** were called and they came immediately.
- ☐ We spend **the weekend** in **the country**/**the mountains**/**at the seaside**.

2. с существительными, уникальными и единственными в своем роде:

*the Sun, the Moon, the Galaxy, the Earth, the Universe, the Solar System, etc.; the President, the Government, the capital, the captain, the monitor, the director, the manager, etc.*

- ☐ **The Earth** moves round **the Sun**.
- ☐ What is **the capital** of Spain?
- ☐ He is **the manager** of this company.

3. с названиями музыкальных инструментов:

*the violin, the piano, the guitar, etc.*

- ☐ He played **the violin** beautifully.

**Ex. 27.** Supply the required articles for the nouns in the following sentences and explain the use of all the articles.

1. Glasgo<sup>1</sup> is ... capital of Scotland<sup>2</sup>. 2. I prefer spending my holidays in ... mountains. 3. Every summer she goes to ... seaside. 4. Where are you going for ... weekend? 5. ... manager of this company is rather young but he directs the company successfully. 6. What is ... capital of Switzerland<sup>3</sup>? 7. Do you often listen to ... radio? 8. I wish I could go to ... theatre every week! 9. ... firebrigade arrived in no time. 10. I like reading in ... garden. 11. If you go to ... dentist immediately, you will save your tooth. 12. ... President was re-elected for the next term. 13. They tried to rob ... bank but they were a failure – ... police arrested them. 14. Usually ... capital is ... biggest city in ... country.

#### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> Glasgo ['glɑ:sɡou]

<sup>2</sup> Scotland ['skɒtlənd]

<sup>3</sup> Switzerland ['switsələnd]



**Ex. 28.** Translate the sentences into English, paying attention to the use of articles.

1. Он в больнице. Он упал в горах и сломал ногу. 2. Армия освободила город. Жители начали восстанавливать электростанцию. 3. Его назначили (appoint) капитаном корабля. 4. Император хотел завоевать Австрию. 5. Люди спускались с гор с молоком и сыром. 6. Крестьяне продавали продукты на рынке. 7. Где почта? Мне надо отправить письмо в полицию. 8. Каждый день после уроков он ходит в кино. 9. Он руководит страной семь лет. 10. Мой брат никогда не ходит к зубному врачу. У него очень хорошие зубы. 11. Он пустил стрелу в шерифа. 12. Она стояла и ждала, когда придет скорая помощь. 13. Президент произнес речь по радио. 14. Он хранит деньги в банке. 15. После театра они пошли к Джону и устроили вечеринку. 16. Я никогда не был на побережье Адриатического моря. 17. Люди сейчас редко ходят в кино, они смотрят телевизор. 18. Звук в телевизоре был такой громкий, что я попросил Мэри уменьшить его.

**Ex. 29.** Fill in articles where necessary.

One morning in ... early autumn Robin was walking along ... edge of ... small open glade, thinking as usual about Marian. Suddenly ... wild and furious deer rushed from among ... trees and attacked him. So sudden was ... attack that Robin had no time to draw his bow. He sprang behind ... tree, seized his bow and prepared ... arrow.

But ... moment later ... beast turned about and looked at ... bushes to ... left side of ... glade. There appeared ... small figure. It was Maid Marian.

She advanced and was directly in ... line with ... deer, so that Robin could not shoot ... arrow. ... furious beast rushed at ... new target – rushed so quickly and from such ... short distance that she could not defend herself. She sprang to one side as ... beast attacked her, but ... side blow from his horns sent her to ground. Surprised by ... sudden attack, she was trying to rise and draw her sword.

“Down, Marian!” cried Robin, and ... girl instinctively obeyed, just as ... arrow from Robin’s bow went above her head, and struck with ... terrible strength in ... centre of ... beast’s forehead. ... beast fell dead across ... body of ... fainting maid.

## REVIEW OF TENSES

Read the stories, put the verbs in brackets into the right tense form.

**1**

From the back of the house came the sound of the vacuum-cleaner.

– Hey! Mum! – Andrew screamed.

She turned off the machine and looked up to him.

– What's the matter?

– I (try) to sleep, – he said.

– Why (not/you/sleep)?

– The vacuum-cleaner. It (shake) the house.

His mother stood up, she looked tired.

– I've got to clean the house, haven't I?

– Why (have to) clean the house while I (try) to sleep?

His mother bent down again.

– I can't use it while you (work). I can't use it while you (read). I can't use it until 10 o'clock in the morning because you (sleep).

She started the machine.

– Why (not/sleep) at night like everybody else?

*(after I. Shaw)*

**2**

### At the Art Dealers

The little bell on the front door (jingle). A stranger (walk) in. "That picture (I can/see) in the window?" he said. "That still life. Who (be) it by?" "Paul Cezanne."

"Cezanne? I (never/hear) of him. Is it for sale?" "Air, no, alas, (it/already/sell)."

Madam Tanguy (see) her chance. A little woman with hard, thin face and bitter eyes, she quickly (rise) from the chair, (throw) off her apron, (push) Pore Tanguy out of the way, and (run) up to the man eagerly.

"But of course it is for sale. It is a beautiful still life. Is it not, Monsieur? ... you (ever/see) such apples before? We (sell) it to you cheap, if you admire it." "How much?" "How much, Tanguy?" (ask) Madame Tanguy raising her voice.

Tanguy (swallow) hard. "Three hundred..."

"Tanguy!"

"Then, one hundred francs!"

"A hundred francs? I wonder..." said the stranger. "For an unknown painter... I'm afraid that's too expensive. I (not/think) I can afford it. I only (prepare) to spend about twenty-five."

The canvas immediately (take) out of the window and (put) before the customer.

"See. Monsieur, it (be) a big picture. There (be) four apples. Four apples (be) a hundred francs. You only want to spend twenty-five." Madam Tanguy (break) off. Suddenly she (suggest): "Then you (can/not/take) one apple? The price is only twenty-five francs."

When the price (mention), the man (begin/to study) the canvas with new interest. "Yes, I could do that. It's a fair offer. Just (cut) this apple the full length of the canvas and I (take) it."

Madame (hurry) to her apartment and (return) with a pair of scissors. The end apple (cut) off, (wrap) in a piece of paper and hand to the man. He (pay) the money and (walk) out with the canvas under his arm. The spoiled masterpiece lay on the counter.

"My favourite Cezanne!" (cry) Tanguy unhappily. "I (miss) it so! I put it in the window. I (want) people to see it for a moment and go away happy."

Madam Tanguy (interrupt) him. "Next time someone (want) a Cezanne and (have/not) much money, sell him an apple. Take anything you can get for it. They (be) worthless anyway, he paints so many of them."

### 3

Mr Sellyer's bookshop is across the street from my house. It (be) in a tall modern building and it is quite famous. It is always full of people.

I often (go) there to (look) through new books. In fact, there's nothing I (like) better than to (look) through the various books he (have) on his shelves. When I (go) to Mr Sellyer's shop I usually (spend) there several hours.

On that day while I (look) through the books I (watch) Mr Sellyer at work. I (describe) some of his methods to you. A lady (come) into the shop and (ask) for a book.

"Any book or something special?" said Mr Sellyer showing her "Golden Dreams". "Mr Slush is a famous author and this is his latest book. It is interesting enough to read. The readers (like) his books."

Another lady (enter) the shop. She was in black. Mr Sellyer also (give) her "Golden Dreams". "It's a beautiful book," he said, "A love story, very simple, but sad, of course. When my wife (read) it she (cry) all the time."

"You (have) any good light reading for vacation time?" asked the next customer. Mr Sellyer (recommend) "Golden Dreams" again. "The most

humorous book of the season,” he said. “My wife (begin) laughing the minute she (take) it. It’s her favourite book now.”

Every customer who (enter) the shop (go) away with “Golden Dreams”. To one lady he (describe) it as the reading for a holiday, to another as a book to read on a rainy day and to a fourth as the right book for a fine day.

It was about four o’clock and time to go home. But before I (leave) the shop I (come) up to Mr Sellyer. I (want) to (discuss) “Golden Dreams” with him.

“You (like) the book yourself?” I asked.

“I have no time to read every book in my shop.”

“But your wife (like) the book?”

“I’m not married, sir,” answered Mr Sellyer smiling.

*(After Stephen Leacock)*

**4**

### Food And Talk

Last week at a dinner party the hostess (ask) me to sit next to Mrs Rumbold. She (be) a large unsmiling lady in a tight black dress. She (not look) up when I (take) my seat beside her. Her eyes (be fixed) on her plate and in a short time she (be) busy eating. I (try) to make conversation.

“A new play is coming to the Globe soon,” I said, “Will you be seeing it?”

“No,” she answered.

“Will you be spending your holidays abroad this year?”

“No,” she said.

“Will you be staying in England?” I asked.

“No,” she answered.

In despair I (ask) her whether she (enjoy) her dinner. “Young man,” she answered, “if you eat more and talk less, we shall both enjoy our dinner.”

*(After “An Elementary Course” by L. G. Alexander)*

**5**

### Use Active and Passive Tense Forms

Until a few years ago, you (cannot enter) Nepal except on foot. There (be) no roads into Nepal, and no airfields. Anyone who (want) to visit the country (walk) across the mountains, or (carry) by porters. All goods, too, (take) into the country in the same way, along narrow and difficult mountain paths. Sometimes they (lose) on the way.

After people and goods (carry) into and out of Nepal in this way for hundreds of years, the airplane (arrive). An airfield (build) near Katmandu,

the capital of Nepal, where small planes (can land) when the weather (allow) it. Passengers and important goods (begin) (take) into and out of Nepal by air. Today, there (be) a regular air-service between Nepal and India, but, of course, heavy or very big goods (cannot put) in the small airplanes which alone (can use) the airfield near Katmandu; and the weather often (make) flying impossible.

Now a road (build) from India to Nepal. It (finish) a few years ago. It (cannot use) by trucks or big cars, but jeeps (can drive) along it if they (go) carefully. In the next few years, the road probably (make) wider and better.

Of course, this road (run) through very beautiful country a lot of which (cover) with thick forest. Great mountains and rushing rivers (cross) as the road (turn) its way up on to the "Roof of the World", as it (call).

*(After "An Intermediate Refresher Course" by L.A. Hill)*

**6** Retell the following text, using the Past Indefinite or Past Continuous Tense

Yesterday, as I (walk) down the street, I (meet) George, an old friend of mine. He (recognize) me at once, though I (wear) a scarf round my face as I (suffer) from toothache. He (tell) me how sorry he was to see me in such a poor way and (add): "I (come) to see you a fortnight ago but unfortunately we (prepare) the annual accounts and as one of my colleagues (be) ill, I couldn't find time to get round to you." All the time he (say) this I (try to remember) something I (want) to tell him. Eventually I (remember) and (say) to him: "Just before I (come) out, I (receive) a letter from Smith, in which he (say) that he (hope) you would call on him soon. He last (see) you at Marion's birthday party but you (talk) so animatedly to one of her guests that he (not dare) interrupt!" Just then I (see) another friend of mine; he (wave) to me from the other side of the road. I (say) goodbye to George and (start) to cross the road; while I (cross), a car (rush) out from nowhere and (knock) me down. Luckily, I (fall) into an open crate of bananas, which a barrow-boy (sell) so I (sustain) no great injury – though the bananas (do)!

**7**

Miles Wakefield (hurry) to get to the house of this Arnold Blair. Blair's advertisement (publish) in all the daily papers and he (be sure) that others (see) it too. Blair had a Balzzarini for sale, and he (sell) the picture cheap. The price was only \$75. Miles (not/can/afford) such a wonderful chance. He knew he could (sell) it later much more expensive.

Balzzarini, of course, was no great master, but many people (admire) his sunny landscapes.

He had to ring at least three times before the door (open) by a boy of about sixteen. There was something strange about this boy. He looked upset. Miles (have) the feeling the boy (want) to tell him something, but (can/not/make) himself do so.

Before the boy could bring himself say a word, a deep voice (hear) from somewhere in the house: "Who is it, Davey?"

Miles (follow) the boy into a small living room. A tall, white-haired man (rise) from his chair as Miles and Davey (enter). Miles (see) at once that the man was blind.

"I (suppose) you want to talk business?"

"I (not/mind). I hear you have a Balzzarini."

"All right, Davey, we (not/need) you for some time."

It (be) clear that the old man (not want) the boy to hear them discuss the deal.

"It's my last hope," said the old man. "I (refuse/sell) picture many times, until now. I (miss) it. But I (need) the money. Come, it's in the next room."

Miles (follow) the old man into the next room. A second later Davey (join) them.

"There!" said the old man. "My Balzzarini!"

He (show) to the opposite wall. Hanging there was a plain black frame. There was nothing behind the glass.

Miles (catch) the boy's look. It was full of sadness.

"A beautiful canvas, isn't it," (continue) the old man. "You'll buy it."

Miles swallowed hard. "Why... I don't think I (can/afford/buy) it. I'm afraid it's too expensive. I (suppose/pay) about fifty."

The empty frame (take) down, (wrap) in a piece of paper and (hand) to Miles.

When Miles (go) with the empty frame under his arm, the boy and the grandfather (return) to the room where the frame (hang).

The boy (go) to a box in the corner, (take out) another empty frame, and (hang) it where the first (be).

Then the old man and the boy (sit) down and (begin) to wait. They were quite ready for the next art dealer.

*(After "The Last Treasure" by R. Cenedella)*

- 8** Supply the missing parts of the questions in the blank spaces.

### **I Still Feel Very Well**

*Our journalist has taken an interview. Here is what she says:*

The other day I saw a white-haired man sitting on a bench in the park. The man seemed old but well-preserved. I have always been interested in the secrets of longevity<sup>1</sup>, so I decided to interview the man. The man said he had lived a full and active life without a moment's rest.

*J.* ... if I smoked a cigarette?

*Man:* Not at all.

*J.* I'd offer you one, but I suppose you probably don't smoke, or drink ...

*Man:* On the contrary! I've always smoked my head off. And until a little while ago I went dancing every night. As for alcoholic drinks...

*J.* ... these things all your life?

*Man:* Of course. ... surprise you so much?

*J.* I've always been told that doing those things is bad for health.

*Man:* Ridiculous!

*J.* I suppose that you have another secret: a lot of fruit, vegetables, a lot of exercise in the fresh air?

*Man:* ... I hate exercise in the fresh air, and I don't like any kind of vegetables.

*J.* This is incredible!

*Man:* ... "incredible"? ... you talking about?

*J.* It's just that I don't understand how you've been able to live that long. Tell me, ... secret?

*Man:* Me? I'm thirty-seven. Why ...

#### **Note:**

<sup>1</sup> longevity – большая продолжительность жизни.

- 9** Give a free translation of the stories.

### **Строится дом**

Смотри-ка, несколько рабочих появились на строительной площадке. Они стоят и разговаривают. Я подхожу к ним.

– Что вы здесь будете строить?

– Жилой дом, – отвечают они и продолжают беседовать.

«Ну, думаю я, – если они будут так строить, дом никогда не будет готов.»

Через несколько дней я вижу на площадке пустой грузовик. Шофер беседует с человеком в плаще, потом грузовик уезжает. Я продолжаю наблюдать. Ага, вот он и вернулся, но опять пустой. Возмутительно! Как можно так построить дом?

Прошло уже две недели с тех пор, как я там был. Пойду-ка посмотрю, чем они там занимались все это время. Подумать только! Они уже заложили фундамент. Но сейчас экскаватор ничего не делает. Почему он простаивает? Водитель курит и что-то изучает. Может быть, это план, а может быть, газета. Вокруг него стоят рабочие и тоже курят. Они уже давно так стоят. Ну, что это за работа?

Ну, вот я и опять пришел. Два этажа они уже все-таки построили. Как это они ухитряются? А какие красивые девушки здесь работают! Вон та блондинка, которая красит губы, просто прелесть. Рабочие тоже так думают. Трое стоят около нее, смеются и разговаривают. Вон тот грузовик привез кирпич полчаса назад. Никто до сих пор не обратил на него внимания. Я не могу этого выдержать и ухожу.

Давно я здесь не был. Они уже пять этажей построили. Когда они это сделали? Теперь они его красят. Во всяком случае, пять или шесть малюров ходят вокруг дома и что-то разглядывают. Кто-то кричит:

– Ян! Где Ян?

Но Ян куда-то ушел и, я уверен, не вернется до обеда. Никто ничего не делает. Этот дом никогда не будет готов.

Смотри-ка, а в доме уже живут!

## 10

Летом я поехал отдыхать в Скарборо. Когда я прибыл туда, был поздний вечер. После обеда я надел плащ, так как было прохладно и собирался дождь, и пошел погулять.

Медленно продвигаясь по улице (move), я заметил странного человека. Сначала он прошел мимо (pass by), а затем остановился и сказал: «Это ты, старик? Как я счастлив тебя видеть.» Это был Джонз.

Я спросил, что он делает в этом городке, и он объяснил, что приехал сюда отдыхать с женой. Он был одет в брюки и тонкую рубашку, и я поинтересовался, не холодно ли ему и почему он бродит (wander) здесь один.

Он объяснил, что не может идти домой, т. к. забыл название отеля, где остановился. Он попросил взять его с собой и накормить. Я удивился, что он без денег. Джонз объяснил мне, что они приехали днем, остано-



лись в отеле (check in). Пока жена распаковывала (unpack) вещи, он пошел погулять. Было тепло, светило солнце, и он вышел в одной рубашке. Он был так счастлив, что забыл взять с собой адрес.

Я очень хотел помочь ему и спросил, может ли он описать улицу, на которой стоит отель. Он подумал и сказал, что не может. Я заверил (assure) его, что мы обязательно найдем его отель, но только после того, как пообедаем. Мы начали звонить по всем отелям Скарборо и к следующему полудню нашли отель и жену Джонза.

## REVIEW OF ARTICLES

Read the stories; insert articles where necessary.

### Why Was She Angry?

... young man was in love with with ... beautiful girl. One day she said to him: "It is my birthday tomorrow." "Oh," said ... young man, "I'll send you fresh roses, one rose for each year of your life."

... same evening he went to ... florist's. As he knew that ... girl was twenty-two years old, he paid for twenty-two roses and asked ... florist to send them to ... girl ... next day.

... florist knew ... young man very well as he had often bought flowers in his shop before. When ... young man left ... shop, ... florist thought:

"This young man is ... very good customer. I think that my price was too high, I'll send him ten more roses."

He did so. ... next morning thirty-two roses were sent to ... girl. When ... young man came to see her she didn't want to speak to him. And he never knew why she was so angry with him.

### The Macbeth Murder Mystery

"It was ... stupid mistake to make," said ... American woman I had met at my hotel, "but it was on ... counter with ... other books and I supposed of course it was ... detective story. All ... others were detective stories. I'd read all ... others so I bought this one without really looking at it carefully. You can imagine how mad I was when I found it was a Shakespeare. Anyway, I got into bed all ready to read ... good mystery story and here I had ... tragedy of "Macbeth". And I was just crazy for a *good Agatha Christie*<sup>1</sup>. *Hercule Poirot*<sup>2</sup> is my favourite detective." "Tell me," I said. "Did you read "Macbeth"?" "I had to read it," she said. "There wasn't anything else to read in ... whole room." "Did you like it?" "No, I didn't," she said. "In ... first place I don't think for ... moment that Macbeth did it." I looked at her blankly<sup>3</sup>. "Did what?" "I don't think for ... moment that he killed ... king," she said. "I don't think ... Macbeth woman was mixed up in it either. You suspect<sup>4</sup> them ... most, of course, but those are ... ones that are never guilty<sup>5</sup>." "I'm afraid," I began, "that I –" "But don't you see," said ... American lady, "it would spoil things if you could figure out<sup>6</sup> (догадаться) right away who did it. Shakespeare was too *smart*<sup>7</sup> for that. I've read that people have never figured out Hamlet, so I don't believe

Shakespeare had made ... Macbeth as simple as it seems." I thought this over. "Who do you suspect?" I asked suddenly. "Macduff," she said. "Good God!" I whispered.

*(After James Thurber)*

### **Notes:**

<sup>1</sup> a good Agatha Christie – a book by Agatha Christie

<sup>2</sup> Hercule Poirot – a detective in Christie's stories

<sup>3</sup> blankly – недоуменно

<sup>4</sup> suspect – подозревать

<sup>5</sup> guilty – виновный

<sup>6</sup> figure out – догадаться

<sup>7</sup> smart (v) Am.E. = clever

## **An Englishman in Japan**

Once ... Englishman went to Japan. He had ... Japanese servant who was very polite. ... Englishman wanted to get up early one morning and said to ... servant, "Wake me at six o'clock, please. Don't forget to do it."

At six o'clock ... servant came into ... Englishman's room very quietly.

When he saw that ... Englishman was sleeping, he took ... piece of paper and wrote some words on it. Then he quietly left ... room.

... Englishman woke up at eleven o'clock, jumped out of bed, looked at his watch and then saw ... piece of paper on ... table. It said: "Dear Sir, it is six o'clock now. Please get up."

## **Thank You, I Feel Much Better**

... doctor whose medical skill was much better than his handwriting, sent ... invitation to ... patient who was his friend to spend ... evening with him. He said that there would be music and other things.

... friend did not come, and did not send any explanation. When they met ... following day, ... doctor asked whether he had received ... note.

"Yes, thank you," replied ... other. "I took it to ... chemist, he made up medicine and I feel much better already."

## **A Bad Customer**

... man went into ... shop and asked for ... pound of apples which cost one shilling. ... shopkeeper gave them to him. Then ... man asked: "Can I exchange ... apples for ... pound of plums? ... price is ... same." ... shopkeeper agreed,

took back apples and gave him plums. ... man took them and was going to leave ... shop. ... shopkeeper asked him for ... money.

"... money for what?" asked ... man.

"... money for ... plums," said ... shopkeeper.

"But I gave you ... apples for ... plums," answered ... man.

"Well, then, ... money for ... apples."

"But you still have your apples," said ... man and walked out of ... shop.

\* \* \*

One day late in ... autumn ... long time ago, ... great many blackbirds gathered on ... rocky sides of ... mountains. As you know, these birds gather in ... autumn, when ... harvests are ripe, to make ... great feast before they go ... south for ... winter. Then they fly on ... strong and swift wings to ... land where there is ... summer all ... time.

It was early in ... morning. They made ... great noise; they chattered and danced and fluttered ... wings. ... older birds were in ... front as ... leaders, and ... younger ones were behind, and they fluttered and sang on ... sides of ... mountain. Then they flew up and up into ... air, and then they flew down again and bathed in ... clear stream at ... foot, of ... mountain. After that they again returned to ... rocky sides of ... mountain and danced and sang.

\* \* \*

After ... time Alice heard ... little pattering (топот) of ... feet in ... distance, and she hastily dried her eyes to see what was coming. It was ... White Rabbit returning, splendidly dressed, with ... pair of ... white kid-gloves (лайковые перчатки) in one hand and ... large fan (вееп) in ... other: he came trotting along in ... great hurry. When he came near her, she began, in ... low, timid voice, "If you please, Sir –" ... Rabbit started violently, dropped ... white kid-gloves and ... fan, and scurried away (исчез) into ... darkness as hard as he could go.

Alice took up ... fan and gloves and, as ... hall was very hot, she kept fanning herself all ... time she went on talking. "Dear, dear! How queer (странно) everything is to-day! And yesterday ... things went on just as usual. I wonder if I've changed in ... night? Let me think: was I ... same when I got up this morning? If I'm not ... same, ... next question is 'Who in ... world am I?' Ah, that's ... great puzzle!" And she began thinking over all ... children she knew that were of ... same age as herself, to see if she could have been changed for any of them (может она превратилась в одного из них).

\* \* \*

1. Most Englishmen have ... lunch about one o'clock, and ... dinner at ... half past seven, or later. 2. ... hotel charges 5 pounds – for ... bed and ... breakfast. 3. What is she doing in ... kitchen? She is getting ... vegetables ready for ... lunch. 4. ... Englishmen have afternoon ... tea about five o'clock. 5. We have ... supper about seven or eight o'clock. 6. ... dinner was very nice. 7. In ... dining-room we have our meals: ... breakfast in ... morning, ... lunch in ... middle of ... day, tea in ... afternoon, and ... supper or ... dinner in ... evening. 8. I had ... meat with ... vegetables for ... lunch. 9. Meals in England are much ... same as in other countries, with the exception of ... breakfast. 10. I expect you've heard about ... English breakfast, with its ... porridge or ... cereal, ... bacon and ... eggs, ... toast, ... marmalade, ... tea or ... coffee.

\* \* \*

1. I hope to go to the Black Sea again ... next summer. 2. Where were you this time ... last year, Anne? 3. We shall be in St. Petersburg during the first week of March and ... next week we shall be in Riga. 4. During the ... last week of their holiday in England, the Wesleys stayed for a few days with the Wards. 5. I ought to go to the hairdresser's this week, but I've no time to spare. I really must make an appointment for ... next week. 6. I'm going abroad ... next year. 7. My brother's getting married ... next month. 8. We were staying at this hotel ... last month.

\* \* \*

1. I dislike ... towns but I love ... countryside. 2. We like to spend our holidays in ... country. 3. John was a little boy from ... town who went to spend a holiday in ... country. 4. The water is brought underground from a spring many miles outside ... city. 6. I like to spend weekends out of ... town. 7. ... Browns have left London. 8. Come and meet ... Parkers. 9. I'll ask ... Howards to take our dog, while we are away. 10. I'm sure they will, they are such obliging people. 11. I must have come downstairs ... dozen times to open the door. 12. ... lot of students go to college every year. 13. ... first meal of the day is called breakfast, ... second one is called lunch.

Give a free translation of the stories.

### **Умная лошадь**

*По рассказу С. Баруздина*

Однажды мы с Андреем ехали на велосипедах в деревню Озерки. По дороге мы увидели лошадь.

– Вот удивительно, – сказал я, – лошадь одна бежит, без человека.

Мы остановились, и лошадь остановилась. Мы увидели на лошади сумку почтальона. А в сумке – газеты, журналы, письма.

– Удивительно, – сказал Андрей. – А где же почтальон?

Лошадь побежала вперед, и мы поехали, чтобы узнать, что случилось с почтальоном.

До деревни мы ехали тридцать минут. Лошадь бежала не очень быстро и все время смотрела на нас. Но вот мы приехали в деревню. Лошадь остановилась около второго дома, и мы тоже остановились. Из дома вышел мужчина, подошел к лошади и взял сумку.

Потом посмотрел на нас и спросил:

– Удивляетесь?

– Да, удивляемся. Может быть, случилось что-нибудь с почтальоном?

– Ничего не случилось, – засмеялся мужчина. – Лошадь – наш почтальон. Наша Красавица! Дорога у нас хорошая, лошадь ее знает. Вот она и бежит от станции до деревни: работает почтальоном.

### **Как мы покупали собаку**

Мы с папой хотели купить собаку. Мама говорила, что надо купить маленькую собаку, а я хотел большую.

Однажды к папе пришел его друг и сказал: «Я знаю, кто продает собаку. Вот адрес.» Мы прочитали: «Продаю большую собаку. Деревня Подлипки, улица Новая, дом № 8. Спросить Виктора Ивановича.»

На другой день мы приехали на машине в деревню Подлипки. Около дома № 8 стоял мужчина.

– Здесь живет Виктор Иванович? – спросил я.

– Да, это я, – ответил он.

– Вы продаете собаку?

– Да, продаю.

– Мы хотим посмотреть ее.

– Пожалуйста.

И он показал нам собаку. Собака была белая, большая и красивая. Она сидела, смотрела на нас и слушала, о чем мы говорим.

– Как ее зовут?

– Белка.

– Сколько ей лет?

– 3 года.

– А сколько она стоит?

– 15 рублей.

Папа дал Виктору Ивановичу деньги, мы взяли собаку и сели в машину.

Когда мы приехали домой, я пошел на кухню, взял пирожок и дал Белке, но она не стала есть.

Я дал Белке воду, но она не стала пить.

Два дня Белка не пила и не ела. Мы не знали, что делать. Мама сказала: – Белка не будет у нас жить. Надо написать открытку Виктору Ивановичу.

Через день приехал Виктор Иванович. Белка была рада. А Виктор Иванович сказал нам:

– Вот 15 рублей. Нельзя продавать друга.

– Да, – сказал папа, – нельзя продавать друга и нельзя покупать друга.

### **Как я воспитывал волю**

Мне всегда нравились люди, у которых сильная воля.

И вот с прошлого понедельника я решил воспитывать свою волю. Надо сделать ее железной.

Во-первых, каждое утро я стал вставать в 6.00 (без будильника); во-вторых, я решил целый месяц не есть мороженого. И в-третьих, мне удалось выполнить главную задачу: я десять дней не звонил Майке, с которой давно дружил. А когда она мне звонила, я брал трубку и говорил, что меня нет дома.

На самом деле мне очень хотелось ее увидеть, но я ведь воспитывал волю. Я продолжал ставить перед собой все новые трудности. Стал, например, в мороз ходить без шапки, на девятый этаж подниматься без лифта и стал заниматься по системе йогов.

На этом первый этап воспитания воли кончился. Я решил сделать перерыв на три дня. Теперь я мог встретиться с Майкой. И когда у меня появилась свободная минута, я позвонил ей.

Майка обрадовалась моему звонку, но все же удивленно спросила:

– Вадим, где же ты был столько времени?

Я важно объяснил ей, что все это время воспитывал волю.

– И тебе совсем не хотелось меня увидеть все эти дни? – обиженно спросила Майка.

Я ответил, что в жизни всегда надо чем-то жертвовать, но зато теперь у меня железная воля. Затем я стал договариваться о встрече. Майка согласилась, но сказала:

– Я может быть, опоздаю, но ты подожди меня.

В семь часов я уже стоял на месте, где мы должны были встретиться. Прошло десять минут – Майки не было. Прошло полчаса. Ее все не было. Был сильный мороз. Ноги очень замерзли, уши тоже. И неудивительно – я был без шапки. Теперь я ругал себя.

Часы показывали уже половину десятого, я пошел домой. На следующий день я заболел.

Когда я выздоровел, позвонил Майке. На мой вопрос, почему она не пришла на свидание, Майка сказала:

– А я как раз в тот день по твоему примеру начала воспитывать волю. А при этом, как ты сам сказал, надо чем-то жертвовать.

Я больше не стал тренировать волю в надежде, что Майка по моему примеру сделает то же самое.

\* \* \*

Было воскресенье. Поезда были заполнены. Человек искал место в вагоне. Вдруг он увидел свободное место.

На этом месте лежал портфель, а рядом сидел человек.

– Это место свободно? – спросил мужчина.

– Нет, – ответил другой мужчина. – Здесь сидит мой друг. Он вышел купить сигареты. Он скоро придет.

– Хорошо, – сказал человек. – Я посижу здесь, пока придет ваш друг.

Поезд тронулся, но никто не пришел.

– Ваш друг опоздал, – сказал человек. Он схватил портфель и выбросил его в окно.

Мужчина попытался поймать портфель, но было поздно. Это был его портфель, он занял место, чтобы ему было удобнее сидеть.

## **Моряк и обезьяны**

Однажды моряк пошел на рынок. У него на продажу (for sale) были красные шапки. По дороге на рынок он должен был проходить через лес. Моряк устал. Он лег отдохнуть (lay down) и вскоре уснул. Когда он проснулся, то увидел, что красные шапки пропали (disappear). Он поднял голову и увидел, что на деревьях сидят обезьяны, у каждой на голове красная шерстяная шапочка. Он пытался заставить (make smb do smth) их отдать шапки обратно, но они не слушались (obey). Наконец, раздосадованный (be worked up), он сорвал свою красную шапку, швырнул (throw) ее на землю и закричал: «Вы, маленькие проказницы (rogues), если вы забрали у меня все мои красные шапки, возьмите и эту.» К его огромному удивлению, каждая обезьяна сорвала с головы шапку и тоже бросила ее на землю. Моряк собрал (pick up) свой товар (goods) и ушел на рынок продавать их.



## Приятное путешествие

Англичанин, который приехал во Францию на короткое время, хотел уехать обратно в Англию. У него оставались деньги только на билет. Так как он знал, что путешествие займет только два дня, он решил, что сможет прожить без еды. Он купил билет и сел на корабль (get on the ship).

Когда подошло время обеда, он был очень голоден. Вечером он страшно проголодался, но когда подошел официант и спросил, будет ли он ужинать, он сказал, что у него морская болезнь (sea sick) и он не голоден. Он отправился спать голодным.

На следующее утро он уже умирал от голода. «Я буду сегодня есть, даже если они вышвырнут меня за борт за то, что я не могу заплатить за еду,» – сказал он себе. Итак, когда подошло время обеда, он пошел в столовую и наелся досыта. Когда обед закончился, он быстро встал и ушел в свою каюту (cabin). Вечером, когда они уже приближались к Лондону, он поужинал и сказал официанту: «Принесите мне счет (bill) за еду.»

«Какой счет?» – удивился официант.

«За обед и ужин, которые я съел.»

«Но вы заплатили за еду, когда покупали билет,» – сказал официант.

## Без церемоний, но остроумно

Вольтер работал над новой книгой и велел прислуге никого не пускать. И вот в двери его замка постучался какой-то толстяк, судя по разговору, англичанин.

– Господина Вольтера нет дома. Будет поздно! – отрезал слуга.

– Я подожду, – ответил англичанин и на самом деле остался у ворот.

Услышав, что гость не уходит, Вольтер подал голос:

– Я болен!

– Я поставлю вас на ноги, – ответил гость, – ведь я изучал в молодости медицину!

– Я умер! – крикнул Вольтер.

– Тогда я поклонюсь вашему праху, отслужу панихиду и, с вашего позволения, похороню вас, – ответил находчивый гость.

Тогда Вольтер уже с любопытством выглянул из-за двери, пораженный не только находчивостью, но и остроумием гостя.

– Входите, – проворчал он и добавил, желая оставить за собой последнее слово:

– За вход в мой дом я беру 6 су.

– Вот 12, – ответил гость, – я приду и завтра.

Вольтер расхохотался и протянул англичанину руку. С тех пор они стали друзьями – Вольтер и знаменитый историк, умнейший из людей той эпохи – Гиббон.

## Персики

*по О.Генри*

Это был их медовый месяц (honeymoon).

Молодая жена сидела в кресле в своей уютной квартирке и думала, что, вероятно, сейчас все только и говорят об их свадьбе.

Свадьба Малыша Мак-Гарри – лучшего боксера Нью-Йорка – была, возможно, самым замечательным событием в жизни их соседей.

«Милый, – сказала она, – я бы, пожалуй (I'd rather), съела персик.»

Разве мог Малыш отказать (refuse) ей? Он даже и не подумал о том, где он может достать персик в самом начале весны. Он должен был найти его. Он, вероятно, забыл, что персик – это дар (gift) золотого лета.

Он начал с лавки итальянца на углу, но там были только горы (pile) золотых апельсинов. Затем он побежал к своему другу в ночной ресторан. Они, должно быть, едят такие фрукты круглый год (all year round). Но ему опять не повезло (be unlucky). Правда, его друг предложил (offer) заменить персики на замечательные апельсины из Испании, но Мак-Гарри не хотел об этом и слышать (wouldn't hear).

«Не может быть, чтобы на Бродвее был недостаток (the shortage of) персиков,» – подумал Малыш. Неужели чемпион Нью-Йорка не может забыть о сезонах, календарях и климатах?

План родился мгновенно. Персики, несомненно, есть в клубе у его врага – Денвера Дика, – и он добудет их любой ценой (at any price). Не может быть, чтобы Дик отказал своим богатым клиентам (visitors) в персиках в марте.

Малыш ворвался в клуб вместе с полицейскими, которые давно мечтали заполучить (get hold of) Денвера Дика и его клиентов. Как только Дик увидел Малыша, они начали драться (fight), но Малыш должен был победить: ведь его ждала самая красивая девушка в мире.

И он победил.

Но нашел только один случайно оставшийся персик. Счастливый Малыш помчался домой.

Он заскочил в аптеку почистить костюм. Аптекарь испугался:

– Вы, должно быть, упали с небоскреба (skyscraper), – сказал он.

Она ждала его. А он, довольный победой (victory), вкладывает в ее руку персик.

– Разве я просила персик? Я бы гораздо охотнее съела апельсин.

## SUPPLEMENTARY READING

### Text 1

#### Communication

What is communication? The dictionary defines it: “giving or exchanging information or news by speaking or writing.” In today’s world, long-distance communication is easy. We can call people on the telephone, send them telegrams, faxes, electronic messages or write them letters. We receive news and other information on radio or television every day. Our modern inventions allow us to communicate with people in every part of our planet.

In early times, how did people communicate over long distances? How did they tell other people about a storm that was coming or an enemy who was planning to attack?

At first, people probably used their feet. When the people of one village wanted to send a message to someone who was far away, they gave the news to a runner. This messenger ran to the nearest village and gave the message to another runner. Then the second runner took it to a third runner, and so on. This was a very slow method of communication, and the message didn’t always reach its destination. The messengers had to run through forests and fields, cross rivers, and climb mountains. Sometimes they met wild animals and never arrived at the next village. And the messages frequently became mixed up, because each person who received the information changed it a little.

People used other methods of communication, too. Cyrus the Great, who founded the Persian Empire, built a series of towers. A man with a very strong voice stood on each tower. When the king wanted to send a message, he gave it to the man on the first tower, who shouted it to the man on the second tower, who relayed it to the man on the third tower. These messengers usually used megaphones, which made their voices louder.

The use of the fire and smoke was another primitive way of communication. People used blankets or leafy branches to control the puffs of smoke that came from a fire. The number and size of the puffs made a kind of code. This method wasn’t very efficient on rainy days or at night, and little wind could mix up the message very badly.

A few old methods of communication are still in use today. One of these methods is the use of drums. Some drums are made of hollow logs and animal skins. When the drummer hits the drum, it makes a noise that sounds a little like human speech. Drumbeats travel quickly, but they can travel only a little way.

In 1790, a man in France invented the semaphore, which was a tall pole with “arms” at the top. Ropes moved the arms up and down to form letters of the alphabet. Semaphore operators were able to relay messages very quickly. A kind of semaphore is still in use on railroads. But efficient long-distance communication had to wait for the discovery of electricity.

*(From “English for a Changing World”)*

Text 2

## Effective Business Communications

(abridged)

### Facing a World of Change and Choice

*(Peter Howarth, Managing Director, Royal Mail, advises to put some questions before using any way of communication)*

Business success in the nineties, is dependent more than before on partnership – partnership with employees, shareholders, customers and suppliers. And, no doubt, partnership demands good communication.

We now have a vast number of ways to communicate – and the choice is growing rapidly. Directors of companies face with<sup>1</sup> a wide range of communication options. It is difficult to choose one of them when sending and collecting information, both internally and externally.

To this days when speed seems to be the principal requirement, it is easy to be attracted by instantaneous<sup>2</sup> electronic media.

Electronic media may be suitable but it is important to take into account one crucial<sup>3</sup> question. It is the question which should determine the choice of communication – is it the most suitable and cost-effective<sup>4</sup> method available?

Few companies ask this question. This means that resources are often wasted. Distribution<sup>5</sup> costs should not be taken lightly. These costs can account for five percent of company turnover<sup>6</sup>.

Directors should ask themselves simple questions. For example, is the use of fax really reasonable for every urgent communication? After all, First class post delivers nine out of ten items<sup>7</sup> by mid-day the next day. It is as effective as other distribution methods – and only 25p per item!

Or, how effective is a verbal<sup>8</sup> agreement if it is subsequently disputed? Most companies still do business confirming a business deal by letter.

So, before choosing one or another communication, every business needs to ask itself some searching questions.

*(from “A Director’s Guide”)*

### Notes:

- <sup>1</sup> face with (v) = meet
- <sup>2</sup> instantaneous [ɪnstən'teɪniəs] = done, acting very quickly
- <sup>3</sup> crucial [ˈkruːʃəl] = of the greatest importance
- <sup>4</sup> cost-effective – с минимальными затратами
- <sup>5</sup> distribution – распространение, способ коммуникации
- <sup>6</sup> turnover – (эк.) оборот
- <sup>7</sup> item = a separate object
- <sup>8</sup> verbal = consisting of spoken words – устный

### Text 3

## Is It Urgent?

*(Naomi Caine, business writer, takes a critical look  
at the cult of urgency)*

The business community is an avid follower<sup>1</sup> of the cult of urgency. The cult of urgency might be good news for the communications industries, but is it good news for companies and their costs?

### 1 Modern technology

Modern technology allows even the smallest company to communicate with the speed that was impossible 25 years ago. A fax in the office, rather like a video in the home, is now a necessity not a luxury. And electronic and voice mail are increasingly the norm. But technology is misused<sup>2</sup> for two reasons. One, it is often easier to send a message by electronic mail than by post. Two, without proper training<sup>3</sup>, staff may only feel comfortable with one communication system. So, you may ask your secretary to send a message urgently because you do not have the time to sit down and compose a letter. He or she may choose a more expensive form of distribution because of ignorance.

### Notes:

- <sup>1</sup> avid follower – страстный последователь
- <sup>2</sup> misuse (v) = use wrongly
- <sup>3</sup> proper training – правильное, надлежащее обучение  
contrary to... = opposite to  
deadline – крайний срок

## 2 Define urgency

Company directors need to start defining urgency. According to Royal Mail, when asked to send something urgently, two thirds of companies head for<sup>1</sup> the fax machine. Yet 61 percent define urgent as delivery by noon the next day. Royal Mail delivers nine out of ten First class letters the next working day. Special delivery and registered letters<sup>2</sup> are guaranteed to arrive by 12.30 p.m. the following working day. If a First class stamp costs J0,25 and a five-page, long distance fax sent at peak time costs J1.50 and it is obvious to make some savings.

So, a company must select a suitable distribution method, according to cost and other criteria such as durability and presentation. A letter, for example, has a longer “shelf life” than an electronic message and a corporate brochure is smarter than a fax.

Nowadays, it is difficult not to be mesmerised<sup>3</sup> by the modern cult of urgency. But in the interests of cost savings – and possibly our health – we should stop asking how we can communicate faster and start to question whether we can communicate better.

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> head for (v) – move towards

<sup>2</sup> registered letters – заказные письма

<sup>3</sup> mesmerise [ˈmezməraɪz] – гипнотизировать, зачаровывать

sender = one who sends

draw a blank = be unsuccessful in a search, inquiry, etc.

recipient = one who receives

## Text 4

### Some Communication Options

## 1 Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN)

For some time it has been possible to conduct meetings by video with colleagues across town or across the world. Now, with the development of equipment that can exploit the integrated services digital network (ISDN), it is possible to talk to someone by telephone, see a video image of them and share a computer screen. Both parties can amend the screen, even if the applications software is used and only available on one of the computers. This is known as desktop conferencing.

ISDN is highly complex and opens up a whole array of services. Computer integrated telephony (CIT), for example, has great implications for telephone

banking. It means that banks can use calling line identification (CLI) to access customers banking records before the telephone itself is even answered, saving time and improving customer service.

## **2 Fax**

Fax machines work by converting text and graphics into a series of electronic pulses. Fax machines transmit these pulses over the telephone lines and reconstruct them into a duplicate or “faximile” of the original at the receiving machine.

Fax is the ideal medium for rapid and informal messaging and it has become an important part of business communications.

Fax has the advantage of speed.

The cost of using fax is difficult to evaluate<sup>1</sup>. A very short fax can be cheaper than the post.

An alternative to using a standalone<sup>2</sup> fax machine, is to install a PC-fax card in the back of your PC. This enables you to generate a fax on your computer and send it over the telephone lines without printing it out first and feeding<sup>3</sup> it into a fax machine.

If you work at a PC and prepared to generate and to send your own faxes, PC-fax is ideal for sending messages to the outside world. A word of warning, however: it is not as good at receiving them.

## **3 Electronic mail**

Companies with computer network<sup>4</sup> can use electronic mail, or E-mail as it is known, to communicate both internally and with the outside world.

Electronic mail is exactly as it sounds. Instead of writing a letter on paper, addressing it and putting it in the post, you generate it on your PC, give it an electronic destination and send it over your computer network.

Despite the advantages of fax and E-mail, they pale in comparison to the current telecommunications revolution. Telephone and computer technologies<sup>5</sup> are converging<sup>6</sup> and change radically the way businesses<sup>7</sup> communicate, both nationally and internationally.

### **Notes:**

<sup>1</sup> evaluate – оценивать, оценить

<sup>2</sup> standalone – автономный

<sup>3</sup> feed – подавать, вводить в устройство

<sup>4</sup> computer network(s) – сеть ЭВМ

<sup>5</sup> computer technology – вычислительная техника

<sup>6</sup> converge – come together towards a common point

<sup>7</sup> businesses = companies

media – средства информации и коммуникации  
competing – конкурирующие

**Text 5****Advances in Electronic Communications**

*(David Tebbutt, technology writer, looks at the impact of innovation on business communications)*

**1 The telephone**

Telephone callers increasingly find themselves talking to answering machines. The callers lose the traditional immediacy<sup>1</sup> of a telephone call. Many companies have instituted<sup>2</sup> electronic voice messaging for all their stuff. This system is convenient for the user but frustrates the caller. Many stuff hide behind this, then filter the messages they want to deal with. On the one hand, it may make more efficient their daily work, but on the other hand, it could ultimately<sup>3</sup> work against their company.

**2 Electronic mail**

At least with electronic mail, no one expects immediacy. A message is sent in the knowledge that the recipient will reply at the earliest convenient moment, if he or she considers the message worth reading. Either the sender has to be important to the recipient or he has to be very creative when he gives the message a title. "Urgent" simply doesn't work any more.

Many users are introducing intelligent "agents" into their computer systems to read and filter the mail for them. This is a dangerous practice but, as computer networks proliferate<sup>4</sup>, users have to do something not to be overwhelmed<sup>5</sup>.

Electronic mail is becoming an increasing part of the executive's<sup>6</sup> day and it's easy to see where the time goes. Many computer company executives think nothing of spending two or three hours a day dealing with various kinds of electronic communication.

**3 Telephone and videoconferencing**

Telephone conferencing and video conferencing can save a great deal of money by eliminating travel and accommodation expenses<sup>7</sup>. Providing<sup>8</sup> all parties are prepared to hook up<sup>9</sup> at the same time, this is a most effective way of conducting meetings between geographically dispersed people, especially if they know each other well. As computer power becomes cheaper and the



telephone networks become more capacious<sup>10</sup>, video conferencing at the desktop computer will become more viable. This has the added advantage – it allows users to share<sup>11</sup> screen displays and filed information. A number of “whiteboard”<sup>12</sup> systems exist which allow several users to contribute to the same document while it is displayed on the computer screen. An engineering drawing, for example, could be displayed and then each participant could add their own remarks.

#### **4 Video mail**

Video mail, the next stop on from voice mail, has advantage of sincerity. If you can see the sender as they speak a message, you can get a good feeling for their mood. “I’m sorry” said with a shrug, somehow means more than a cold “I’m sorry” in electronic mail or voice mail. The other advantage of video is that objects and documents can be held up to the camera, to illustrate a point.

#### **Notes:**

<sup>1</sup> immediacy = urgency

<sup>2</sup> institute (v) = set up

<sup>3</sup> ultimately = in the end = finally

<sup>4</sup> proliferate [prəˈlɪfəreɪt] = increase rapidly in numbers

<sup>5</sup> not to be overwhelmed – чтобы их не завалили/забросали почтой

<sup>6</sup> executive [ɪgˈzekjʊtɪv] – (зд.) руководитель, администратор

<sup>7</sup> accomodation expenses – расходы на проживание

<sup>8</sup> providing = provided – при условии, если только

<sup>9</sup> hook up = connect (places) by telephone, video, etc

<sup>10</sup> capacious [kəˈpeɪʃəs] – имеющий емкость, объем

<sup>11</sup> share – пользоваться вместе

<sup>12</sup> “whiteboard” – «пустая доска» (для информации)

#### **Text 6**

### **Personal Communicators**

Within ten years, hand communicators will be commonplace<sup>1</sup>. They will contain all the important information relating to our lives. Anything else will be delivered to our communicator simply by asking for it. Communications with friends, colleagues and business associates<sup>2</sup> will take place instantly and with almost no effort on the part of<sup>3</sup> the owner of one of these marvellous devices.

We have already seen the first of these arrive in the guise<sup>4</sup> of “Personal Digital Assistant”, or PDAs. Until they can communicate, they are little more

than expensive personal organisers. Give them the ability to communicate and life is transformed.

A company called General Magic has invented two technologies that will drive<sup>5</sup> the uptake<sup>6</sup> of these new machines. The first is called "Magic Cap" which presents the user with a graphical view of their world divided into the Desktop, the Hallway and Downtown. The desktop contains things like stationery<sup>7</sup>, in-tray<sup>8</sup>, out-tray<sup>9</sup>, address cards and calculator. The Hallway<sup>10</sup> shows a corridor with doors leading into different application areas – games, library and so on. Downtown<sup>11</sup> is just like a town containing all the user's favourite electronic stores, from newsagents to bank, from travel agent to post office. We will be able to visit all these places electronically and conduct our business from our personal communicators.

The general Magic Technology which underpins Downtown is called Telescript. With Telescript-equipped programs, your own electronic agents will go off into the world's networks to do your order. It takes you just a second to receive information from them. The rest of the time your electronic agents act alone, gathering news, putting together parties and so on. In other words, they do everything you want them to do.

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> commonplace = ordinary

<sup>2</sup> business associate – деловые союзники, партнеры

<sup>3</sup> on the part of someone = by someone; of someone – с чьей-либо стороны

<sup>4</sup> in the guise [gaiz] of ... – под видом; в виде

<sup>5</sup> drive = advance violently or strongly

<sup>6</sup> uptake = understanding

<sup>7</sup> stationery – бумага для печатающих устройств

<sup>8</sup> in-tray = for incoming information (for example, mail)

<sup>9</sup> out-tray = for information to send

<sup>10</sup> hallway – коридор

<sup>11</sup> downtown – деловая часть города

bidding = command; order

### Text 7

## The Bermuda Triangle

### *A Mystery of the Ocean*

Ever since man started to explore outer space we have thought of Earth as a place which has no more mysteries for us to explain. But there is one part of the Western Atlantic Ocean that has a very strange history. It lies

between Florida and Bermuda. In this area, over 100 ships and planes have vanished since 1945! “The Hoodoo Sea”, “the Graveyard of the Atlantic” and “the Devil’s Triangle” – this area has many names, but it is best known as “the Bermuda Triangle”...

The three points of the triangle known as “the Bermuda Triangle” are Bermuda, Florida and Puerto Rico. From 1945 until the present day over 1,000 lives have been lost in this area without trace – no bodies have been found!

Many small boats and light aircraft have vanished, in this area. But so have large ships. One of these was the *Marine Sulphur Queen* which was 150 metres long. Another was the *USA Cyclops* which disappeared along with all the 309 people she was carrying.

What makes these losses even more mysterious is the fact that hardly any S.O.S. signals are ever received from the ships and boats which disappear. Also, these things happen in good weather and without warning. Ships just seem to vanish into thin air. This fact has led some people to suggest all sorts of strange explanations. For example, some people believe that the planes fly into a “hole in the sky” from which they are unable to escape. Others think that the ships that have disappeared have been the victims of beings from outer space who have snatched them from the surface of the sea and taken them to some unknown world!

Some people point out that the Bermuda Triangle is one of the two places on Earth where a magnetic compass does not point towards the magnetic north and that because of this navigators often find themselves off course and in danger.

Some people believe that the Bermuda Triangle does not exist and that all the accidents that have happened there are simply coincidence.

*Hugh Corrigan*

## Text 8

### UFOs

On 24th June, 1947, Kenneth Arnold, a young American businessman, was flying his private aeroplane above the Cascade Mountains in Washington. As he drew near Mount Rainier he saw nine circular objects moving at high speed pass twenty-five miles away. There was a Douglas DC-4 airliner in the sky at the same time, and Arnold thought that each of the objects was slightly smaller than his aircraft. The objects flew “as if they were linked together”.

On landing, Arnold described what he had seen. He told a newspaper reporter that the objects “flew like a saucer would if you skipped it across the

water.” His words provided a name for the objects he had seen. Kenneth Arnold was the first observer reported to have seen flying saucers.

Within a few weeks of the report of what Arnold had seen, reports of similar sightings came from various parts of the world – from Canada, Australia, England and Iran.

From the start, there was a great deal of guessing about what the flying saucers might be. An American newspaper reporter stated that the saucers were, in fact, a new secret type of aircraft, “a combination of helicopter and fast jet plane”. This proved to be incorrect. In 1947, a so-called “cold war” was in progress between the United States and the Soviet Union and one famous newspaper writer suggested that the saucers were a new type of spy aircraft sent out from Russia. Another idea was that the flying saucers came from outer space, sent by beings from another world.

In time, the term “flying saucer” has given way to the more scientific one “unidentified flying object”, and for over two decades from 1947 a great deal of investigation was carried out into UFOs in the United States.

Sightings of UFOs were not new. Reports of such objects date back three thousand years. Some people include among these reports of fiery chariots, glowing lights and strange clouds which are mentioned in the Bible.

In the early days of the Roman Empire, a round object that looked like a globe or a shield was said to have been seen moving across the sky. On another occasion a fiery globe, brighter than the sun, was reported to have been seen, first falling towards the earth and then rising again.

Similar stories were told in the Middle Ages. Medieval writers described bright lights, balls, discs and strange shapes that were seen in the sky.

In 1742, a large brightly-lighted object shaped like a cylinder was reported to have been seen over London.

On 1st August, 1871, an astronomer named Coggia saw a strange red object in the sky over Marseilles, France.

In January and February 1913, “unknown airships” were seen at various times over many different places in Britain.

In July 1938 a UFO flew over New York. It shone brilliantly and gave forth a sound described as “a great swish”, “a persistent hiss” and “a faraway roar”. It was lost to sight when it fell below the horizon, possibly falling into the sea. Experts declared that the object was a large meteorite but not everyone who saw it agreed.

In the years before World War Two there were frequent reports of aircraft crashing into the sea without leaving a trace and without any known aircraft being missing.

Over the years many photographs of objects said to be flying saucers have been produced by various people. Some of them have been shown to

be fakes. The others have not been accepted as genuine pictures of UFOs beyond a reasonable doubt.

What are these UFOs? Are they sent from outer space? Do they contain beings from other worlds? Some people think so. Gabriel Green, president of the Amalgamated Flying Saucer Clubs of America is one of them. He has said: "Inhabitants of other worlds are holding off their visitation to the troubled earth because they feel that they would either be worshipped as gods or feared as conquerors".

Perhaps we will have to wait for an explanation of UFOs until we receive it from someone from another world.

### Text 9

## How Einstein Discovered the Law of Relativity

(adapted)

*by Ch. Chaplin*

I first met Einstein in 1926. The great scientist had been invited to California to lecture. I received a telephone call from Universal studios, saying that Professor Einstein would like to meet me. I was so thrilled I gladly accepted the invitation. So we met at the Universal studios for lunch, the Professor, his wife, his secretary and his Assistant Professor. Mrs Einstein spoke English very well, in fact better than the Professor. She was extremely proud of him and frankly enjoyed being the wife of the great physicist. She did not even try to hide the fact.

After lunch, while Einstein was being shown around the studio, Mrs Einstein took me aside and whispered: "Why don't you invite the Professor to your house? I know he will be delighted to have a nice quiet chat with just ourselves." It was to be a small affair, and I invited only two other friends. At dinner she told me the story of the morning when the theory of relativity first came to his mind.

"The Doctor came down in his dressing-gown as usual for breakfast but he hardly touched a thing. I thought something was wrong, so I asked what was troubling him.

'Darling!' he said, 'I have a wonderful idea.' And after drinking his coffee, he went to the piano and started playing. Now and again he stopped, reached for his pencil, made a few notes, then repeated: 'I've got a wonderful idea, a marvellous idea!'

I said: 'What's the matter with you? Why don't you tell me what it is?'

He said, 'I can't tell you yet. I still have to work it out.'

She told me he continued playing the piano and making notes for half an hour, then he went upstairs to his study, telling her that he did not want anyone to disturb him, and remained there for two weeks.

"Each day I sent him up his meals," she said, "and in the evening he walked a little for exercise, then returned to his work again."

"At last," she said, "he appeared looking very pale and tired. In his hand he held two sheets of paper. 'That's it!' he told me, putting the sheets of paper on the table. And that was his theory of relativity."

|         |
|---------|
| Text 10 |
|---------|

### **Alfred Nobel – a Man of Contrasts**

Alfred Nobel, the great Swedish inventor and industrialist, was a man of many contrasts. He was a son of a bankrupt, but became a millionaire, a scientist who cared for literature, an industrialist who managed to remain an idealist. He made a fortune but lived a simple life, and although cheerful in company he was often sad when remained alone. A lover of mankind, never had a wife or family to love him: a patriotic son of his native land, he died alone in a foreign country. He invented a new explosive, dynamite, to improve the peacetime industries of mining, and road building, but saw it used as a weapon of war to kill and injure people. During his useful life he often felt he was useless. World-famous for his works, he was never personally well-known, for while avoided publicity. He never expected any reward for what he had done. He once said that he did not see that he had deserved any fame and that he had no taste for it. However, since his death, his name has brought fame and glory to others.

He was born in Stockholm on October 21, 1833 but moved to Russia with his parents in 1842, where his father, Immanuel, made a strong position for himself in the engineering industry. Immanuel Nobel invented the landmine<sup>1</sup> and got plenty of money for it from government orders during the Crimean War, but then, quite suddenly went bankrupt. Most of the family went back to Sweden in 1859. Four years later Alfred returned there too, beginning his own study of explosives in his father's laboratory. It so occurred that he had never been to school or University but had studied privately and by the time he was twenty was a skilful chemist and excellent linguist having mastered Swedish, Russian, German, and English. Like his father, Alfred Nobel was imaginative and inventive, but he had better luck in business and showed more financial sense. He was quick to see industrial openings for his scientific inventions and built up over 80 companies in 20 different countries. Indeed

his greatness lay in his outstanding ability to combine the qualities of an original scientist with those of a forward-looking industrialist.

But Nobel was never really concerned about making money or even making scientific discoveries.

Seldom happy, he was always searching for a meaning to life, and from his youth had taken a serious interest<sup>2</sup> in literature and philosophy. Probably because he could not find ordinary human love – he never married – he began to care deeply about the whole mankind. He took every opportunity to help the poor: he used to say that he would rather take care of the stomachs of the living than the glory of the dead in the form of stone memorials. His greatest wish, however, was to see an end to wars, and thus peace between nations; and he spent much time and money working for the cause until his death in Italy in 1896. His famous will, in which he left money to provide prizes for outstanding work in Physics, Chemistry, Physiology, Medicine, Literature and Peace, is a memorial to his interests and ideals. And so the man who often believed that he was useless and has done little to justify his life is remembered and respected long after his death. Nobel's ideals which he expressed long before the threat of nuclear war have become the ideals of all progressive people of the world.

According to Nobel's will the capital was to be safely invested to form a fund. The interest on this fund is to be distributed annually in the form of prizes to those who, during the previous year has done work of the greatest use to mankind. This interest is to be divided into five parts and distributed as follows: one part to the person who has made the most important discovery or invention within the field of physics; one part to the person who has made the most important chemical discovery or improvement; one part to the person who has made the most important discovery within the field of physiology or medicine; one part to the person who has produced the most outstanding work within the field of literature; and one part to the person who has done the most for brotherhood between nations, for the abolition or reduction of permanent armies and for the organization and encouragement of peace conferences.

In his will Nobel wrote that it was his wish that in choosing the prize winner no consideration should be given to the nationality of the candidates, but that the most worthy should receive the prize, whether he be a Scandinavian or not. This will was written in Paris, on November 27, 1895.

Since Nobel's death many outstanding scientists, writers and public figures from different countries have become Nobel Prize Winners.

### **Notes:**

<sup>1</sup> landmine – мина, фугас

<sup>2</sup> interest – (зд.) проценты

## Text 11

**Michael Faraday**

Michael Faraday was born in London in 1791 of a poor family, and as a boy he did not learn much.

In 1804, when he was thirteen, he got some work in a book-seller's shop. He lived among books, and he began to read some of them. The boy could not read every book in the shop because he was busy and had not much time. So he began to choose the books which he liked best. He soon found out that his main interest was in science, and especially in electricity. As any true scientist Faraday wanted to make experiments, but he had too little money.

Faraday heard of talks on science which were being given by one of the greatest scientists of the time, Sir Humphry Davy. As he sat and listened to the great man he made notes. Faraday wanted to give his life to science, so he wrote a letter to Sir Humphry Davy and asked for his help.

Sir Humphry invited Faraday to come to see him, and gave him some research to do. Faraday was delighted. His work at first was only to wash and prepare all the things which Davy and his fellow-scientists were to use in their experiments, but he spent a lot of time with scientists and could listen to what they said, and he could watch their work.

Sir Humphry sometimes travelled in Europe, where he went to meet the great scientists of other countries, and one day he decided to make another of these trips. He asked Faraday if he wanted to come with him.

Faraday, of course, was thrilled and accepted the invitation. He had never been more than a few miles from London in his life.

Faraday greatly enjoyed his time in Europe, but he was not really sorry at the end of the journey because he was now able to continue his own work and experiments in England.

He was wondering whether a magnet could be made to give an electric current. Faraday was absolutely certain that a current could be made, but he had very little time for experiments. His outside work took all his time. He could stop his outside work, of course, but if he did so, he would lose most of the £1,200 a year which he got. He had to choose between science and money, and he choose science.

At first he was quite unable to make an electric current with his magnets. But one day a wonderful idea occurred to him. He moved the magnet near the wire. And then he got what he wanted: an electric current in the wire. Of course, he still had to develop the idea.

After several experiments of this kind he made a machine. It was the beginning of all the great machines that make electricity today. All modern



turbines are made on the principles that were developed by Faraday. His discovery was the beginning of the electrical age, which changed the face of the earth.

*(After "Who Did It First" by G. C. Thornley)*

|         |
|---------|
| Text 12 |
|---------|

### **The Discovery of the X-ray**

Scientists working on a problem do not know and sometimes can't even guess what the final result will be. Professor Röntgen was a physicist at the University of Würzburg in Germany. Late on Friday, 8 November, 1895, he was doing an experiment in his laboratory when he noticed something extraordinary. He had covered an electric bulb with black cardboard, and when he switched on the current he saw little dancing lights on his table. Now the bulb was completely covered; how then could any ray penetrate? On the table there were some pieces of paper which had been covered with metal salts. It was on this paper that the lights were shining. Professor Röntgen took a piece of this paper and held it at a distance from the lamp. Between it and the lamp he placed a number of objects, a book, a pack of cards, a piece of wood and a doorkey. The ray penetrated every one of them except the key. This mysterious ray could shine through everything except the metal. He called his wife into the laboratory and asked her to hold her hand between the lamp and the photographic plate. She was very surprised by this request, but she obediently held up her hand for a quarter of an hour, and when the plate was developed there was a picture of the bones of her hand and of the ring on one finger. The ray could pass through the flesh and not through the bone or the ring.

At a scientific meeting where he described what happened Professor Röntgen called this new ray "the Unknown", the X-ray. Doctors quickly saw how this could be used, and soon there were X-ray machines in all the big hospitals.

At first the doctors did not understand how powerful the rays were and many of them were injured, losing a finger or an arm through the exposure to X-rays when they were using the machines. The most obvious use for this discovery was to make it possible for doctors and surgeons to see exactly how a bone was fractured.

Other uses came later. It was found that these rays could be used to destroy cancer cells, just as they destroyed the healthy cells of the doctors who first used the machine. Methods were found later by which ulcers in the stomach

could be located, the lungs could be X-rayed to show if there was any tuberculosis present. “Mass X-ray” units are sent round to factories and detect early signs of trouble in the lungs.

Unfortunately for Professor Röntgen, whose discovery did so much for medical science, envious colleagues spread the story that he had stolen his discovery from a laboratory assistant who worked for him. He died, poor and forgotten, in 1923.

*(After “Britain in the Modern World, The Twentieth Century”  
by E. N. Nash and A. M. Newth)*

## English Tenses (Active)

### Времена английского глагола

|         | Indefinite   | Continuous   | Perfect   | Perfect Continuous   |
|---------|--|--|---|--|
| Present | <div>... verb</div> <p><b>ask(s)</b></p> <p>– Регулярное повторяющееся действие.<br/><i>usually/generally always/never often/seldom sometimes</i></p> <p>– Факт.</p> <p>– Будущее действие (по расписанию, графику).</p> | <div>be + -ing</div> <p><b>am is are asking</b></p> <p>– Длительное действие (процесс), протекающее <b>в</b> данный момент.<br/><i>now, at present, at the moment</i></p> <p>– Будущее запланированное действие.</p>                             | <div>have + III форма</div> <p><b>have has asked</b></p> <p>– Действие закончилось <b>к</b> определенному моменту в настоящем.</p> <p>– Результат.<br/><i>already/yet ever/never lately/recently this week/today by now</i></p> | <div>have been + -ing</div> <p><b>have has been asking</b></p> <p>– Длительное действие, которое началось в прошлом и все еще протекает в данный момент.<br/><i>for a month/a long time since 5 o'clock how long/since when..?</i></p> |
|         | <p><b>asked took</b></p> <p>– Действие <b>в прошлом</b>.<br/><i>yesterday last week 3 days ago</i></p>   | <p><b>was were asking</b></p> <p>– Длительное действие (процесс), совершавшееся <b>в</b> момент или период в прошлом.<br/><i>at 5 yesterday from 5 to 6 yesterday for 3 days last week all day long/the whole day when we came</i></p>           | <p><b>had asked</b></p> <p>– Действие закончилось <b>к</b> определенному моменту в прошлом.<br/><i>by 5 o'clock yesterday before he came by the end of the last year</i></p> <p>– При согласовании времен.</p>                  | <p><b>had been asking</b></p> <p>– Длительное прошедшее действие, которое началось до определенного момента в прошлом и еще продолжалось в тот момент.<br/><i>He had been working for 2 hours, when my brother came.</i></p>           |
| Future  | <p><b>will ask</b></p> <p>– Действие <b>в будущем</b><br/><i>tomorrow next week in 3 days in 2017</i></p>  | <p><b>will be asking</b></p> <p>– Длительное действие (процесс) которое будет совершаться в определенный момент или период в будущем.<br/><i>at 5 tomorrow from 5 to 6 tomorrow for 3 days next week all day long tomorrow when he comes</i></p> | <p><b>will have asked</b></p> <p>– Действие закончится <b>к</b> определенному моменту в будущем.<br/><i>by 5 o'clock tomorrow when he comes by next summer</i></p>  | <p><b>will have been asking</b></p> <p>– Длительное будущее действие, которое начнется ранее момента в будущем и будет еще совершаться в этот момент.<br/><i>When you come I'll have been working for 2 hours.</i></p>                 |

## Regular Verbs: Spelling Rules

Правильные глаголы:  
правила правописания

| Базовая форма  | 3-е лицо<br>ед. число<br>Present<br>Simple | Формы с <b>-ing</b>                                | Формы с <b>-ed</b> | Исклю-<br>чения<br>(см. след.<br>стр.) |
|--|--|--|--------------------|--|
|  | + -s                                       | + -ing   | + -ed              |  |
| <i>join</i>  | <i>joins</i>                               | <i>joining</i>                                     | <i>joined</i>      |  |
| Оканчивается на  | + -es                                      |  |                    |  |
| <b>-sh</b> <i>finish</i>   | <i>finishes</i>                            | <i>finishing</i>                                   | <i>finished</i>    |  |
| <b>-ch</b> <i>reach</i>  | <i>reaches</i>                             | <i>reaching</i>                                    | <i>reached</i>     |  |
| <b>-ss</b> <i>pass</i>   | <i>passes</i>                              | <i>passing</i>                                     | <i>passed</i>      |  |
| <b>-x</b> <i>mix</i>   | <i>mixes</i>                               | <i>mixing</i>                                      | <i>mixed</i>       |  |
| <b>-z</b> <i>buzz</i>  | <i>buzzes</i>                              | <i>buzzing</i>                                     | <i>buzzed</i>      |  |
| <b>-o</b> <i>echo</i>  | <i>echoes</i>                              | <i>echoing</i>                                     | <i>echoed</i>      |  |
| Оканчивается<br>на <b>-e</b>   |  | -е опускается перед<br>-ing или -ed                |                    | 1                                      |
| <i>dance</i>   | <i>dances</i>                              | <i>dancing</i>                                     | <i>danced</i>      |  |
| Оканчивается<br>на <b>-ie</b>  |  | -ie ⇔ -y<br>перед -ing                             | <i>tied</i>        |  |
| <i>tie</i>   | <i>ties</i>                                | <i>tying</i>                                       |                    |  |
| Оканчивается на<br>согласную + <b>y</b>                                      | -y ⇔ -ies                                  | <i>crying</i>                                      | -y ⇔ -ied          |  |
| <i>cry</i>   | <i>cries</i>                               |  | <i>cried</i>       |  |
| Односложный<br>глагол, оканчи-<br>вающийся на<br>одну гласную +<br>согласная |  | удвоение последней согласной<br>перед -ing или -ed |                    | 2                                      |
| <i>dip</i>   | <i>dips</i>                                | <i>dipping</i>                                     | <i>dipped</i>      |  |
| Двусложный<br>глагол, оканчи-<br>вающийся на<br>одну гласную<br>+ <b>l</b>   |  |  |                    | 3                                      |
| <i>travel</i>  | <i>travels</i>                             | <i>travelling</i>                                  | <i>travelled</i>   |  |

|   |               |                  |                 |  |
|---|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|
| Следующие глаголы: equip, handicap, hiccup, kidnap, program, refer, worship<br><i>equip</i> | <i>equips</i> | <i>equipping</i> | <i>equipped</i> |  |
|---|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|

### Исключения:

1. *age, agree, disagree, dye, free, knee, singe, referee, tiptoe*
2. кроме -w, -x, -y: *rowing, boxing, playing*.
3. В AmE допускается: *traveling, traveled*.

## Appendix 3

### Irregular Verbs Неправильные глаголы

| Infinitive | Past Indefinite | Past Participle | Translation         |
|------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| awake      | awoke           | awoke           | будить; просыпаться |
|            | awaked          | awaked          |                     |
| be         | was             | been            | быть                |
|            | were            |                 |                     |
| bear       | bore            | borne           | носить, выносить    |
| beat       | beat            | beaten          | бить                |
| become     | became          | become          | становиться         |
| begin      | began           | begun           | начинать, -ся       |
| bite       | bit             | bitten          | кусать              |
| blow       | blew            | blown           | дуть                |
| break      | broke           | broken          | ломать              |
| bring      | brought         | brought         | приносить           |
| build      | built           | built           | строить             |
| burn       | burnt           | burnt           | гореть, жечь        |
| buy        | bought          | bought          | покупать            |
| catch      | caught          | caught          | ловить, схватывать  |
| choose     | chose           | chosen          | выбирать            |
| come       | came            | come            | приходить           |
| cost       | cost            | cost            | стоить              |
| cut        | cut             | cut             | резать              |
| do         | did             | done            | делать              |

| Infinitive | Past Indefinite   | Past Participle   | Translation                 |
|------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| draw       | drew              | drawn             | тащить; рисовать            |
| drink      | drank             | drunk             | пить                        |
| drive      | drove             | driven            | гнать; везти; ехать         |
| eat        | ate               | eaten             | есть (принимать пищу)       |
| fall       | fell              | fallen            | падать                      |
| feel       | felt              | felt              | чувствовать                 |
| fight      | fought            | fought            | бороться, сражаться         |
| find       | found             | found             | находить                    |
| fly        | flew              | flown             | летать                      |
| forbid     | forbade           | forbidden         | запрещать                   |
| forget     | forgot            | forgotten         | забывать                    |
| forgive    | forgave           | forgiven          | прощать                     |
| freeze     | froze             | frozen            | замерзать, замораживать     |
| get        | got               | got               | получать; становиться       |
| give       | gave              | given             | давать                      |
| go         | went              | gone              | идти, ехать                 |
| grow       | grew              | grown             | расти, выращивать           |
| hang       | hung/hanged       | hung/hanged       | висеть, вешать              |
| have       | had               | had               | иметь                       |
| hear       | heard             | heard             | слышать                     |
| hide       | hid               | hid<br>hidden     | прятать                     |
| hit        | hit               | hit               | ударять; поражать           |
| hold       | held              | held              | держать                     |
| hurt       | hurt              | hurt              | повредить, ушибить; обидеть |
| keep       | kept              | kept              | держать, хранить            |
| know       | knew              | known             | знать                       |
| lay        | laid              | laid              | класть                      |
| lead       | led               | led               | вести                       |
| learn      | learnt<br>learned | learnt<br>learned | учить(ся)                   |
| leave      | left              | left              | оставлять, уезжать          |
| lie        | lay               | lain              | лежать                      |
| light      | lit<br>lighted    | lit<br>lighted    | зажигать, освещать          |
| lose       | lost              | lost              | терять                      |
| make       | made              | made              | делать; заставлять          |
| meet       | met               | met               | встречать                   |

| Infinitive | Past Indefinite | Past Participle | Translation         |
|------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| pay        | paid            | paid            | платить             |
| put        | put             | put             | класть              |
| read       | read            | read            | читать              |
| ride       | rode            | ridden          | ездить верхом       |
| ring       | rang            | rung            | звонить; звенеть    |
| rise       | rose            | risen           | подниматься         |
| run        | ran             | run             | бежать              |
| saw        | sawed           | sawn            | пилить              |
| say        | said            | said            | говорить, сказать   |
| see        | saw             | seen            | видеть              |
| sell       | sold            | sold            | продавать           |
| send       | sent            | sent            | посылать            |
| shine      | shone           | shone           | сиять, светить      |
| show       | showed          | shown           | показывать          |
| shut       | shut            | shut            | закрывать           |
| sit        | sat             | sat             | сидеть              |
| sleep      | slept           | slept           | спать               |
| speak      | spoke           | spoken          | говорить            |
| speed      | sped            | sped            | спешить; ускорять   |
| stand      | stood           | stood           | стоять              |
| sweep      | swept           | swept           | мести               |
| swim       | swam            | swum            | плавать             |
| take       | took            | taken           | брать               |
| teach      | taught          | taught          | обучать, учить      |
| tell       | told            | told            | рассказывать        |
| think      | thought         | thought         | думать              |
| throw      | threw           | thrown          | бросать             |
| understand | understood      | understood      | понимать            |
| wake       | woke            | woken           | будить; просыпаться |
|            | waked           | waked           |                     |
| wear       | wore            | worn            | носить              |
| win        | won             | won             | выигрывать          |
| write      | wrote           | written         | писать              |

## Talking About the Future

### Способы выражения действия в будущем

Имеется несколько способов выражения действия в будущем:

#### I. The Present Continuous (I *am doing*)

Мы используем the Present Continuous (I **am doing**), когда говорим о запланированном действии (договоренности).

- ☐ We **are spending** next winter in Australia.
- ☐ What time **is** he **arriving** tomorrow?

В подобных случаях можно также использовать выражение **be going to ...** (*собираться, намереваться*).

- ☐ I'm **going to** read this book (=I want to..., I intend to ...)
- ☐ There is a new film on TV tonight. **Are** you **going to** watch it?  
– No, I'm too tired, I'm going to bed early.

#### II. The Present Indefinite (Simple) (I *do*).

Мы используем the Present Indefinite (Simple) (I **do**), когда говорим о расписании, графике и т. п.

- ☐ The train **leaves** at 10.
- ☐ The lessons **start** at 9 p.m.
- ☐ What time **does** the film **begin**?

#### III. The Future Indefinite (Simple) (I *will do*).

Мы используем the Future Indefinite (Simple) (I **will do**):

а) принимая решение о действии в будущем;

- ☐ Did you speak to Ann?  
– Oh, no, I forgot. I'll **do** it now. (tomorrow)
- ☐ I'm too tired, I think, I'll **get** a taxi.

б) предлагая свою помощь или обещая что-либо.

- ☐ (Somebody is knocking at the door). Mike: I'll **open** the door.
- ☐ It's hot here. I'll **open** the window.
- ☐ I **won't tell** anybody, I promise.



## Expressions with the Verb “to be”

### Распространенные выражения с глаголом “to be”

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| to be glad (pleased)     | – быть радостным (довольным)            |
| to be happy (delighted)  | – быть счастливым                       |
| to be hungry             | – быть голодным (хотеть есть)           |
| to be thirsty            | – хотеть пить                           |
| to be ill (sick)         | – быть больным (здоровым)               |
| to be ready for smth     | – быть готовым к чему-л.                |
| to be late for smth      | – опаздывать куда-л.                    |
| to be 5 minutes late     | – опаздывать на 5 минут                 |
| to be sorry              | – сожалеть                              |
| to be (un)comfortable    | – чувствовать себя (не)удобно           |
| to be out of place       | – чувствовать себя неуютно (не к месту) |
| to be proud of smth/smb  | – гордиться чем-л./кем-л.               |
| to be sure of smth       | – быть уверенным в чем-л.               |
| to be certain of smth    | – быть уверенным в чем-л.               |
| to be mistaken           | – ошибиться                             |
| to be surprised at smth  | – удивиться кому-л.                     |
| to be angry with smth    | – быть сердитым на кого-л.              |
| to be busy with smth     | – быть занятым чем-л.                   |
| to be to blame           | – быть виноватым                        |
| (Who’s to blame?)        | – (Кто виноват?)                        |
| to be for (against) smth | – быть за (против) чего-л.              |
| to be present            | – присутствовать                        |
| to be absent             | – отсутствовать                         |
| to be right              | – быть правым                           |
| to be wrong              | – ошибаться, быть неправым              |
| to be afraid             | – бояться                               |
| to be tired              | – быть уставшим                         |
| to be situated           | – быть расположенным                    |

## Adjectives for Appearance and Character Description

### Внешность – Appearance

|                      |   |                          |
|----------------------|---|--------------------------|
| высокий              | – | tall                     |
| красивый (о женщине) | – | beautiful                |
| низкий               | – | short                    |
| очаровательный       | – | charming                 |
| привлекательный      | – | attractive, good-looking |
| симпатичный          | – | pretty                   |
| стройный             | – | slim, slender            |
| толстый              | – | fat, stout               |
| уродливый            | – | ugly                     |
| худой                | – | thin                     |

### Характер – Character Description

|                  |   |               |
|------------------|---|---------------|
| бездельник       | – | idle          |
| быстрый          | – | quick         |
| веселый          | – | cheerful      |
| волевой          | – | strong-willed |
| внимательный     | – | attentive     |
| глупый           | – | foolish       |
| гордый           | – | proud         |
| добрый           | – | kind          |
| жадный           | – | greedy        |
| зануда (скучный) | – | bore          |
| злодей, негодяй  | – | villain       |
| злой             | – | wicked        |
| копуша           | – | slowpoke      |
| ленивый          | – | lazy          |
| мужественный     | – | courageous    |
| нечестный        | – | dishonest     |
| надежный         | – | reliable      |
| ненадежный       | – | unreliable    |
| непреклонный     | – | firm          |
| несправедливый   | – | unjust        |
| неуклюжий        | – | awkward       |

|                     |   |             |
|---------------------|---|-------------|
| открытый, искренний | – | frank       |
| слабый              | – | weak        |
| смелый              | – | bold        |
| справедливый        | – | just        |
| сообразительный     | – | bright      |
| трудолюбивый        | – | hardworking |
| трусливый           | – | coward      |
| тупой               | – | dull        |
| упрямый             | – | obstinate   |
| умный               | – | clever      |
| хвастливый          | – | boastful    |
| честный             | – | honest      |
| щедрый              | – | generous    |

### **Эмоциональное состояние – Emotional States**

|                     |   |                              |
|---------------------|---|------------------------------|
| в плохом настроении | – | in a bad mood/in low spirits |
| грустный, печальный | – | sad                          |
| несчастный          | – | unhappy                      |
| радостный           | – | glad                         |
| расстроенный        | – | upset                        |
| спокойный           | – | calm                         |
| счастливый          | – | happy                        |
| тихий               | – | quiet                        |
| угрюмый             | – | grim                         |

## Connectives and Transitional Phrases for Sentence Openings

### Соединительные и переходные слова

#### Temporal (временные)

after a while – вскоре, немного погодя  
 after some time – через некоторое время  
 afterwards – впоследствии, потом, позже  
 all this time – все это время  
 as a result – в результате  
 at last – наконец  
 at present – сейчас, в настоящий момент  
 at that time – в то время, тогда  
 at this time – сейчас, теперь  
 by and by – вскоре  
 eventually – в конце концов  
 finally – в конце концов, в конечном счете  
 firstly – во-первых  
 from the very beginning – с самого начала  
 from then on – с того времени  
 in a while – вскоре  
 in the end – в конце концов  
 initially – вначале  
 later – позднее  
 meanwhile – тем временем, между тем  
 next – потом, затем  
 now – сейчас, теперь  
 now and then – время от времени, иногда  
 presently – вскоре, теперь, сейчас  
 some time later – через некоторое время  
 soon – вскоре  
 then – тогда  
 until then – до того времени  
 until that time – до того времени

#### Spatial (пространственные)

above – над, выше  
 adjacent (to) – примыкающий, смежный, соседний  
 around – вокруг, кругом  
 below – ниже, внизу, под  
 close (to) – около  
 further – дальше, далее  
 here – здесь  
 here and there – там и сям, туда и сюда  
 in front of/behind – напротив/позади  
 in the distance – в отдалении, вдали, вдалеке  
 near (to) – возле, у, около  
 nearby – неподалеку, поблизости, недалеко, по соседству  
 next (to) – рядом с, около  
 on the left/right – справа/слева  
 on top of – сверх, вдобавок  
 opposite (to) – напротив  
 over – над  
 there – там  
 under – под, ниже

## General Transitions

(выражения общего характера)

*Opposition* – противопоставление

but – о, а, тем не менее, однако  
yet – но, однако, все же, тем не менее  
nevertheless – все же  
however – однако, тем не менее  
nor (with inversion) – также, тоже не

*Addition* – дополнение

and – и  
also – также, тоже, к тому же  
in addition (to it) – вдобавок, к тому же, кроме того  
furthermore – кроме того, более того  
moreover – более/сверх/кроме того

*Comparison* – сравнение

similarly (to) – подобно, так же  
unlike – в отличие от  
by contrast – в противоположность  
on the one hand – с одной стороны  
on the other hand – с другой стороны

*Generalization* – обобщение

generally – обычно, как правило  
in general – вообще  
on the whole – в целом, в итоге, в общем  
for the most part – большей частью

*Affirmation* – подтверждение

certainly – конечно, непременно      of course – конечно, разумеется

## Appendix 8

### Some Useful Verbs

### Слова и выражения, полезные в процессе общения

*For Statements:*

|                              |   |                                  |
|------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| to add                       | – | добавлять                        |
| to admit smth                | – | признавать что-либо              |
| to agree                     | – | соглашаться                      |
| to announce (smth to smb)    | – | объявлять (кому-либо о чем-либо) |
| to answer in the affirmative | – | дать утвердительный ответ        |
| to answer in the negative    | – | дать отрицательный ответ         |
| to approve of smth           | – | одобрять что-либо                |
| to argue                     | – | спорить                          |
| to assure                    | – | уверять, заверять                |
| to claim                     | – | заявлять                         |
| to come to a decision        | – | решать                           |

|                         |   |                              |
|-------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| to come to a conclusion | – | решать, прийти к выводу      |
| to complain             | – | жаловаться                   |
| to convince smb         | – | убеждать                     |
| to decide               | – | решать                       |
| to declare              | – | заявлять                     |
| to deny smth            | – | отрицать что-либо            |
| to determine            | – | решать, принимать решение    |
| to exclaim              | – | воскликнуть                  |
| to explain smth to smb  | – | объяснять что-либо кому-либо |
| to inform               | – | информировать, сообщать      |
| to insist               | – | настаивать                   |
| to make up one's mind   | – | решаться, принимать решение  |
| to mention              | – | упоминать                    |
| to notice               | – | замечать, отмечать           |
| to object (to smth)     | – | возражать (чему-либо)        |
| to observe              | – | замечать                     |
| to persuade smb         | – | убеждать кого-либо           |
| to promise              | – | обещать                      |
| to refuse               | – | отказываться                 |
| to remark               | – | замечать                     |
| to remind               | – | напоминать                   |
| to reply                | – | отвечать                     |
| to respond              | – | отвечать                     |
| to warn                 | – | предупреждать                |

*For Questions:*

|                          |   |                              |
|--------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| to ask smb's permission  | – | просить разрешения           |
| to be interested to know | – | интересоваться               |
| to inquire               | – | осведомляться                |
| to want to know/wonder   | – | хотеть знать, интересоваться |

*For Orders and Commands:*

|                          |   |                              |
|--------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| to advise                | – | советовать                   |
| to allow                 | – | разрешать, позволять         |
| to beg                   | – | просить серьезно, настойчиво |
| to command               | – | приказывать                  |
| to forbid                | – | запрещать                    |
| to implore               | – | умолять                      |
| to invite                | – | приглашать                   |
| to offer (help, a book)* | – | предлагать (что-то)*         |

|                    |   |                                   |
|--------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| to order           | – | приказывать                       |
| to permit          | – | разрешать, позволять              |
| to request         | – | просить подчеркнуто вежливо       |
| to suggest*        | – | предлагать (вносить предложение)* |
| to tell to do smth | – | приказывать сделать что-л.        |

**\* Note:**

Mind the difference between the use of the verbs **to offer** and **to suggest**:

Он **предложил** два билета в театр. –

He **offered** them *two tickets* to the theatre.

Он **предложил** им *помочь*. –

He **offered** *to help* them.

Он **предложил** *поехать* за город. –

He **suggested** *going* to the country.

Он **предложил** им *поехать* за город. –

He **suggested** *that they should go* to the country.

## Appendix 9

### Numbers Cardinal and Ordinal

#### Количественные и порядковые числительные

| Cardinal    | Ordinal         | Cardinal      | Ordinal            |
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 one       | 1st first       | 16 sixteen    | 16th sixteenth     |
| 2 two       | 2nd second      | 17 seventeen  | 17th seventeenth   |
| 3 three     | 3rd third       | 18 eighteen   | 18th eighteenth    |
| 4 four      | 4th fourth      | 19 nineteen   | 19th nineteenth    |
| 5 five      | 5th fifth       | 20 twenty     | 20th twentieth     |
| 6 six       | 6th sixth       | 21 twenty-one | 21th twenty-first  |
| 7 seven     | 7th seventh     | 22 twenty-two | 22nd twenty-second |
| 8 eight     | 8th eighth      | 30 thirty     | 30th thirtieth     |
| 9 nine      | 9th ninth       | 40 forty      | 40th fortieth      |
| 10 ten      | 10th tenth      | 50 fifty      | 50th fiftieth      |
| 11 eleven   | 11th eleventh   | 60 sixty      | 60th sixtieth      |
| 12 twelve   | 12th twelfth    | 70 seventy    | 70th seventieth    |
| 13 thirteen | 13th thirteenth | 80 eighty     | 80th eightieth     |
| 14 fourteen | 14th fourteenth | 90 ninety     | 90th ninetieth     |
| 15 fifteen  | 15th fifteenth  | 100 a hundred | 100th hundredth    |

## Large Numbers

|                   |                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1,000             | a thousand                   |
| 1,000,000         | a million                    |
| 1,000,000,000     | a billion (American English) |
| 1,000,000,000,000 | a billion (British English)  |

*In the past, American and British billions were not the same. But British companies and newspapers often use American billions now.*

## Decimals

Write the decimal point sign as a dot, not a comma:

|      |                       |
|------|-----------------------|
| 0.5  | nought point five     |
| 0.25 | nought point two five |

Pronounce numbers individually after a decimal point:

|       |                              |
|-------|------------------------------|
| 10.06 | ten point oh six             |
| 27.27 | twenty-seven point two seven |

0 is pronounced *nought* before a decimal point and *oh* after a point in British English.

|      |                      |
|------|----------------------|
| 0.05 | nought point oh five |
|------|----------------------|

It can be pronounced *zero* in American English.

|      |                 |
|------|-----------------|
| 0.05 | point zero five |
|------|-----------------|

## Time

| DAYS      |          | MONTHS   |           | SEASONS |
|-----------|----------|----------|-----------|---------|
| Monday    | Friday   | January  | July      | spring  |
| Tuesday   | Saturday | February | August    | summer  |
| Wednesday | Sunday   | March    | September | autumn* |
| Thursday  |          | April    | October   | winter  |
|           |          | May      | November  |         |
|           |          | June     | December  |         |

*\*(American English: fall)*

## Years

|                        |               |                      |
|------------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| <i>Written English</i> | 1066          | 1999                 |
| <i>Spoken English</i>  | ten sixty-six | nineteen ninety-nine |



## Dates

|                        | <i>British English</i>                                | <i>American English</i>                    |
|------------------------|---|--|
| <i>Written English</i> | 16(th) September<br>16/9/98                           | September 16<br>9/16/98                    |
| <i>Spoken English</i>  | The sixteenth of September<br>September the sixteenth | Sixteenth September<br>September sixteenth |

## Telling the Time

A simple way to tell the time is to say the numbers.

*10.20 ten twenty      11.15 eleven fifteen      4.45 four forty-five*

You can say the hours in two ways: *nine/nine o'clock*

But don't make this common mistake: ~~nine-thirty o'clock~~

You can also tell the time this way:

|                       |                           |                            |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>one o'clock</i>    | <i>ten past three</i>     | <i>a quarter past four</i> |
| <i>half past five</i> | <i>twenty-five to six</i> | <i>a quarter to seven</i>  |

In American English you can use different prepositions.

*Ten past three* or *Ten after three*

*Quarter to seven* or *Quarter of seven*

British and American speakers do not usually use the twenty-four-hour clock, except in military usage.

*11.00 eleven o'clock* (not *23.00 o'clock*)

To be more exact they say:

*eleven a.m.* or *eleven in the morning* and *eleven p.m.* or *eleven at night*

But they do use the twenty-four-hour clock to talk about train and plane timetables.

*19.30 The train leaves at nineteen thirty.*

## РУССКО-АНГЛИЙСКИЙ СЛОВАРЬ

### Б

**барашек** – lamb [læm]

**бассейн** – swimming-pool

**беспорядок** – disorder; (о комнате, столе, волосах) make untidy [ʌn'taɪdɪ];  
в беспорядке – untidy

**болото** – bog

**бревно** – log

**бросать** (кидать) – throw (threw, thrown)

**буфет** – a sideboard

### В

**вежливый** – polite

**везти** (ему везет) – he is lucky

**венчаться** – be married, get married (in church)

**вечность** – eternity [ɪ'tɜ:nɪtɪ]

**взгляд** – a look; с первого взгляда – at first sight [saɪt]

**виновный** – guilty ['gɪltɪ]

**витрина** – shop window

**владеть** (иметь) – own; have; possess [pə'zes]

**волноваться** (беспокоиться) – be worried ['wʌrɪd]; (нервничать) be nervous;  
be excited; get excited [ɪk'saɪtɪd]

**воспаление** (легких) – pneumonia [nju:'mɒnjə]

**восхищаться** – admire [əd'maɪə]

**вскричать** – cry out, exclaim [ɪks'kleɪm]

**выбирать** – choose

**выбор (отбор)** – selection

**выключить** – switch off

**выносить** (терпеть) – stand, bear

### Г

**гараж** – garage ['gærɑ:ʒ]

**говорить** – say

**гордость** – pride [praɪd]; гордиться – be proud of

**государство** – state

**гость** – guest [gest]

**грипп** – flu [flu:]

**грустный** – sad

**грубость** – roughness ['rʌfnɪs]; (невежливость) rudeness ['rudnɪs]

### Д

**дарить** – give a present

**движение (транспорт)** – traffic

**деликатный** – delicate [ˈdelɪkɪt]  
**делиться** (поделиться чем-л. с кем-л.) – share [ʃɛə] (smth with smb)  
**деловой (визит)** – business (visit)  
**дешевый (о цене)** – cheap [tʃi:p]  
**длиться** – last  
**довольный** (испытывающий удовольствие) – pleased (with)  
**договориться** – agree; come to agreement  
**долг** – debt [det]  
**должность** – post  
**дорогой** (дорогостоящий) – expensive [ɪksˈpensɪv]  
**доставлять** – deliver  
**древний** – ancient [ˈeɪnfənt]  
**думать** – think  
**дуть** – blow

## **Ж**

**ждать** – wait

## **Е**

**единственный** – the only  
**ездить** (за границу) – go abroad

## **З**

**заболевать** – fall ill (with), be taken ill (with)  
**задача** (математическая) – problem  
**заканчивать** (кончаться) – come to an end  
**замечание** – remark  
**запах** – smell  
**запирать** – lock  
**заполнять** (людьми, транспортом) – fill (up)  
**зарабатывать** – earn  
**заранее** – beforehand; (своевременно) – in good time  
**заслужить** – deserve [dɪˈzɜ:v]  
**защищать** – defend; ~ честь – uphold the honour [ˈɒnə]  
**зеркало** – mirror; looking-glass  
**злой** – wicked [ˈwɪkɪd]  
**знаменитый** – famous; well-known

## **И**

**избегать** – avoid  
**изобретение** – invention  
**иностранец** – foreigner  
**интерес** – interest  
**искать** – look for  
**испуг** – fear  
**исчезать** – disappear [ˌdɪsəˈpiə]

## К

**клерк** – clerk

**контора** – office

**кричать** (друг на друга) – shout (at each other)

**кулак** – fist

**кумир** – idol [ˈaɪdəl]

## Л

**лепесток** – petal

**лесничий** – forester

**лестница** – stairs (pl.)

**лечение** – treatment

**лично** – personally

**лягушка** – frog

## М

**мазня** – daub [dɔ:b]

**мастер** (своего дела) – be a good hand (at), be an expert (at)

**математика** – mathematics [ˌmæθɪˈmætɪks]

**мебель** – furniture [ˈfɜːnɪʃə]

**менять** – change

**место** – 1. (в разн. знач.) place; 2. (в театре и т. п.) seat; 3. (свободное пространство) space, room; 4. (должность) post

**молчать** – keep silence [ˈsaɪləns]; be silent

**мост** – bridge [brɪdʒ]

**мышка/под ~ой** – under (one's) arm

## Н

**наблюдать** (за; следить) – watch smb

**наполнять** – см. заполнять

**направление** – direction [dɪˈrekʃn]

**настойчивый** – persistent [pəˈsɪstənt]

**наступать** (наставать) – come; ~ила тишина – silence fell

**наука** – science [ˈsaɪəns]

**находить** – find

**невежественный** – ignorant

**недалеко** – not far

**незнакомец** – stranger

**ненавидеть** – hate

**ножницы** – scissors [ˈsiːzəz]

**нуждаться** – need

## О

**обедать** – have dinner

**обещать** – promise; ~ние – promise [ˈprɒmɪs]

**обижать** – offend smb

**обитать** – dwell (in a place)  
**обожать** – adore  
**обращать** (внимание) – pay attention (to smb)  
**обсудить** – discuss [dis'kʌs]  
**одевать** (носить одежду) – dress (wear)  
**одеяло** – blanket  
**один** – 1. (без других) alone; 2. (тот же, одинаковый) the same; 3. (только) only  
**одинок** – lonely  
**окончание** (университета) – graduation  
**опаздывать** – be late  
**осмотр** (медицинский) – medical examination  
**осознавать** (осознать) – realize ['rɪəlaɪz]  
**оставаться** – remain; (задерживаться) stay  
**оставить, оставлять** 1. leave; ~в покое leave alone; 2. (сохранять) reserve, keep; 3. (отказываться) give up; ~ляет желать (много) лучшего – leaves much to be desired  
**отказать(ся)** (наотрез) – refuse point-blank  
**отказывать, отказать** – (в чем-либо кому-либо) refuse (smth to smb), deny (smth to smb)  
**открывать** – (о секрете, тайне и т.п.) reveal [rɪ'vi:l]; (делать открытие) discover  
**отношения** – relations  
**отопление** – heating  
**отпуск** – leave, holiday  
**отход** (о поезде) – departure [dɪ'pɑ:tʃə]  
**охота** – hunting  
**оценка** – mark; получить хорошую/плохую оценку – get a good/bad mark  
**ошибаться** – make a mistake; be mistaken

## П

**переживать** (претерпевать) – suffer; тяжело ~что-л. take smth to heart  
**переполнять** – overfill (with); (о помещении, транспорте) overcrowd; ~ся, переполниться 1. overfill; (о помещении) be overcrowded  
**печатник** – printer  
**платить** (за что-то) – pay (for smth)  
**плоский** (о поверхности) – flat  
**плыть** (о судне, корабле) – sail  
**побеждать** – win (won [wʌn])  
**поведение** – behaviour [bɪ'heɪvjə]  
**подарок** – gift; present  
**подвезти** – give a lift  
**поднимать** (о глазах, руках) – uplift  
**подобный** – similar  
**подробно** – in detail ['di:teɪl]  
**подходить** (к лицу) – suit  
**подходить** (по размеру) – fit  
**подходить** (по цвету, форме, стилю) – match  
**поесть** – have a meal

**поздно** – late  
**познакомиться** – be acquainted (with) [ə'kweɪntɪd]  
**показ** – show  
**получить** (оценку) – get a mark/grade  
**помнить** – remember  
**помогать** – help  
**поступать** (в учебное заведение) – enter  
**почва** – soil  
**превышение** (скорости) – excess [ɪk'ses]  
**предлагать** – offer  
**предложение** – offer, suggestion [sə'dʒestʃn]  
**предполагать** – suppose [sə'pəʊs]; think  
**предпочитать** – prefer [prɪ'fɜ:]  
**председатель** – chairman  
**представлять** (кого-то кому-то) – introduce smb to smb  
**презирать** – despise [dɪs'paɪz]  
**преобладать** – prevail [prɪ'veɪl]  
**преступление** – crime [kraɪm]; преступник – criminal ['krɪmɪnəl]  
**приготовить** (еду) – prepare; cook  
**приказ** – order; отдать приказ – to give an order  
**прилавок** – counter ['kaʊntə]  
**проводить** – 1. (урок) conduct (a lesson); 2. (домой, на станцию и т.п.) see off  
**продавать** – sell  
**проект** (о законе) – draft  
**просить** – ask  
**просматривать** – look through [θru:]  
**против** (в разных значениях) – against  
**простудиться** – catch (caught [kɔ:t]) cold

## Р

**радость** – joy  
**разговор** – talk  
**разумный** – reasonable; wise; clever  
**район** – district; area  
**раненый** – wounded ['wʊndɪd]  
**рассердиться** – get angry; become angry  
**рассеянный** – absent-minded  
**расстраивать** – 1. (о музыкальном инструменте) untune; become, get out of tune; 2. (огорчаться) feel upset, be upset (over); be disappointed (at)  
**реклама** – advertisement; рекламное агентство – advertising agency ['eɪdʒənsɪ]  
**ремонтировать** – repair [rɪ'peə]  
**ресторан** – restaurant  
**решение** – 1. decision [dɪ'sɪʒən]; принимать ~ make up one's mind, make/take a decision; 2. (разрешение задачи, вопроса и т. п.) solution; (ответ) answer ['ɑ:nsə]  
**родители** – parents  
**розовый** – pink

## С

**сбережения** – savings

**светить** – shine

**сирень** – lilac [ˈlaɪlɪk]

**служить** – serve; ~ в армии – ~ in the army

**случай** (на всякий случай, как бы чего не вышло) – to be on the safe side

**случайно** (встретиться) – happen to meet

**снимать** – 1. (нанимать – о квартире и т. п.) rent, take; ~ в аренду – lease [li:z] 2. (о фильме) shoot [ʃu:t]

**снимать** (шляпу) – take off

**событие** – event [ɪˈvent]

**совершенно** – quite

**советовать** – advise [-z]; give an advice [-s]

**современный** – contemporary; (соответствующий эпохе) modern; up-to-date

**соглашаться** (с кем-то) – agree with; (с чем-то) agree to

**сопровождать** – accompany [əˈkʌmpəni]

**соревнование** – competition [ˌkɒmpɪˈtɪʃn]

**сорт** (разновидность) – kind [kaɪnd]

**сослуживец** – colleague [ˈkɒli:g]

**спешить** – hurry [ˈhʌri]

**спокойный** – quiet, calm

**справочник** – reference [ˈrefrəns] book

**сражаться** – fight [faɪt] (fought [fɔ:t])

**средства** (материальный достаток) – means [mi:nz]

**срочно** – urgently [ˈə:dʒəntli]

**ссориться** – quarrel [ˈkwɔrəl]

**статья** – article

**стих** – poem

**страх** – fear

**стричься** – cut one's hair; (у парикмахера) have one's hair cut

**строительство** – construction

**стыдиться** – be ashamed (of)

**сумка** (женская) – purse [pə:s]; handbag

**сходить** – 1. (с автобуса) get off; 2. (с ума) go mad, go crazy

**сырой** – damp

## Т

**тактичный** – tactful

**типография** – press

**точно** (наверняка) – exactly [ɪgˈzæktli]

**тратить** – spend (money, time)

**трудолюбивый** – hardworking

**туман** – fog

**тщательно** – thoroughly [ˈθʌrəli]

**тюрьма** – jail [dʒeɪl]

## У

**убирать** (приводить в порядок комнату) – do a room, tidy up a room [ˈtaɪdɪ]

**уважать** – respect

**уволить** – fire for [ˈfaɪə]; ~ за грубость – ~ being rude

**угроза** – threat [θret]

**удовольствие** – pleasure [ˈpleʒə]

**узнавать** – 1. (признавать) recognize [ˈrekəɡnaɪz]; 2. (о новостях и т. п.) learn;  
3. (справляться) find out

**уменьшаться** – decrease [diːˈkriːs]; (о цене и т. п.) reduce; (о расходах) cut  
down; (о звуке, ценах и т. п.) lower [ˈlouə]

**упоминать** – mention [ˈmenʃən]

**успевать** (успеть на поезд) – be in time for the train

**учиться** – 1. learn, study; 2. в школе go to school; в университете study at the  
University, attend the University

## Ф

**фасон** – fashion

## Х

**хозяин** (владелец) – owner [ˈoʊnə]

## Ц

**цена** – price

**цепочка, цепь** – chain

**церковь** – church [tʃəːtʃ]

## Ч

**часы** (наручные) – watch

**честный** – honest

**чувство** – feeling

**чуткий** – sensitive

## Ш

**шевелить** – move; ~ (рукой, ногой) stir a hand, a foot

**шнурки** – shoelaces

**шумный** – noisy

## Э

**эндшпиль** – end-game

## Я

**ясный** – clear



## LITERATURE

- Carpenter Edwin. "Confusable Words"/Harper Collins Publishers, 1993
- Courtney R. "Longman Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs"/M.: Русский язык, 1991
- "Effective Business Communication. A Director's Guide"/Royal Mail, 1996, April
- "English Grammar Through Practice"/Moscow: Higher School, 1975
- Hartley B. "Streamline English III"/Oxford University Press, 1975
- Hayakawa S. J. "The Penguin Guide to Synonyms and Related Words"/Penguin Books, 1994
- Hornby A.S., Gatenby E.V., Wakefield H. "The Advanced Learners Dictionary of Current English"/Oxford University Press, 1963
- Matyushkina-Guerke T.I., Kuzmichova T.N., Ivanova L.I. "Practical Grammar in Patterns"/Moscow: Higher School, 1974
- Molver N. "Follow Through"/Budapest: RTV-Minerva, 1988
- "Myths and Legends"./(Составитель А.П. Якобсон)/M.: Просвещение, 1973
- Prokhorova G.P. "English Through Dialogue"/M.: Высшая школа, 1998
- Seide J., McMordie W. "English Idioms and How to Use Them"/ M.: Высшая школа, 1983, I-VI
- Shevtsova S.V. "Modern Reading"/M.: Международные отношения, 1972
- Shevtsova S.V. "The Intermediate Modern English Course (first year)"/ Moscow: Higher School, 1982
- Spears A. "American Idioms Dictionary"/M.: Русский язык, 1991
- Stories and Dialogues/M.: Высшая школа, 1964
- Todd L., Dragunova E., Tsvetkova T., Koff E. "Advanced English"/M.: Издательство литературы на иностранных языках, 1947
- «500 английских пословиц и поговорок»/M.: Издательство литературы на иностранных языках, 1959
- Бармина Л.А., Верховская И.П. «Учимся употреблять артикли»/M.: Высшая школа, 1989
- Дудкина Г.А., Павлова М.В., Рей З.Г., Хвальнова А.Т. «Учебник английского языка для делового общения (в 6 частях)»/M.: Аверс, 1991
- Зверева Е.Н., Эбер И.Г. «Повторим грамматику»/ M.: Просвещение, 1965
- Кунин А.В. «Англо-русский фразеологический словарь»/M.: Русский язык, 1984
- Пароятникова А.Д., Полевая М.Ю. «Английский язык для гуманитарных факультетов университетов»/M.: Высшая школа, 1990
- «Почитай летом»/M.: Просвещение, 1991
- Цветкова И.В., Клепальченко И.А., Мыльцева Н.А. «Английский язык для школьников и поступающих в ВУЗы»/M.: Глосса, 1996
- «Читаем о России по-русски»/СПб: Златоуст, 1994